

AUTHORIZED BY THE MINISTER OF EDUCATION FOR ONTARIO.

MODERN  
**SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY**  
AND  
**ATLAS**

*Prepared for the use of Schools in the British Provinces.*



TORONTO:  
JAMES CAMPBELL & SON.

1879

The Old Testament contains 2,728,100 letters, 602,493 words, 23,214 verses, 929 chapters, and 39 books. The New Testament contains 838,380 letters, 131,253 words, 7,959 verses, 280 chapters, and 27 books. Total for Old and New Testaments: 3,566,480 letters, 773,746 words, 81,173 verses, 1,189 chapters, and 66 books.

### THE SEVEN WONDERS OF THE WORLD.

PYRAMIDS OF EGYPT.

HANGING GARDENS OF BABYLON, Tower, Walls and Terrace.

STATUE OF JUPITER OLYMPUS, on the Capitoline Hill, at Rome.

TEMPLE OF DIANA, at Ephesus.

COLOSSUS OF RHODES, a statue 105 feet high, overthrown by an earthquake 224 B.C.

MAUSOLEUM AT HALICARNASSUS, a Grecian-Per-sian city in Asia-Minor.

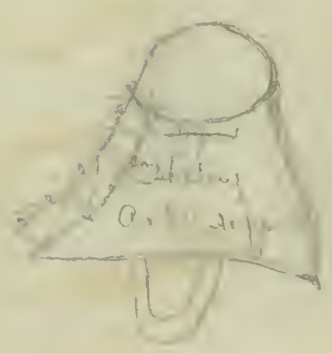
PHAROS, OR WATCH TOWER, at Alexandria, Egypt.

### RESULTS OF SAVING SMALL AMOUNTS OF MONEY.

The following shows how easy it is to accumulate a fortune, provided proper steps are taken. The table shows what would be the result at the end of fifty years by saving a certain amount each day and putting it at interest at the rate of six per cent. :

| Daily Savings.     | The Result. | Daily Savings.      | The Result. |
|--------------------|-------------|---------------------|-------------|
| One cent. ....     | \$954       | Sixty cents. ....   | \$57,024    |
| Ten cents. ....    | 9,506       | Seventy cents. .... | 66,528      |
| Twenty cents. .... | 19,000      | Eighty cents. ....  | 70,032      |
| Thirty cents. .... | 28,512      | Ninety cents. ....  | 85,537      |
| Forty cents. ....  | 38,015      | One dollar. ....    | 95,041      |
| Fifty cents. ....  | 47,520      | Five dollars. ....  | 475,208     |

Nearly every person wastes enough in twenty or thirty years, which, if saved and carefully invested, would make a family quite independent, but the principle of small savings has been lost sight of in the general desire to become wealthy.



My dear Mr. ...

I am writing to you ...  
about the ...  
of the ...

I am ...  
...  
...

Yours ...  
...



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2009 with funding from  
Ontario Council of University Libraries



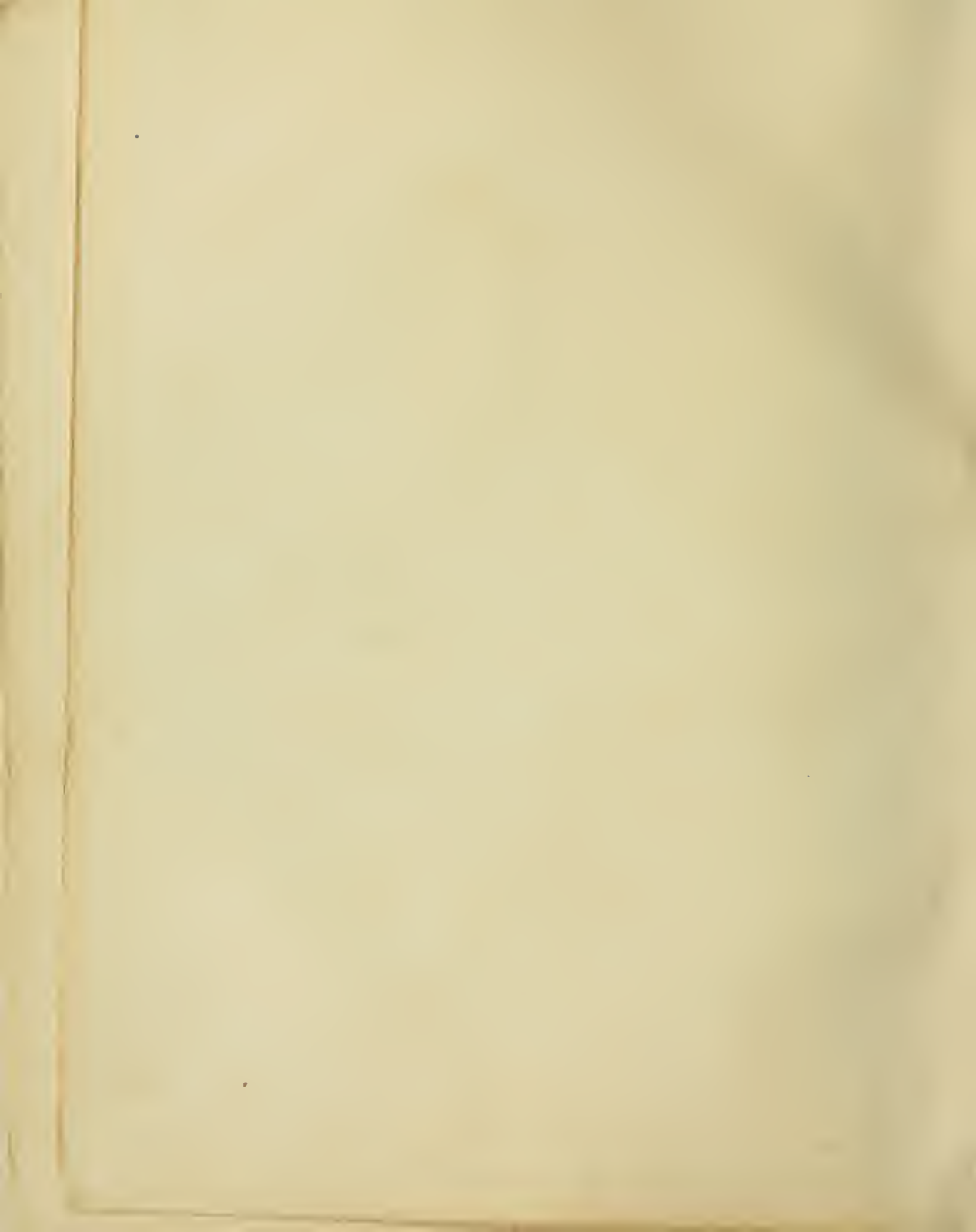


## WESTERN HEMISPHERE



## EASTERN HEMISPHERE





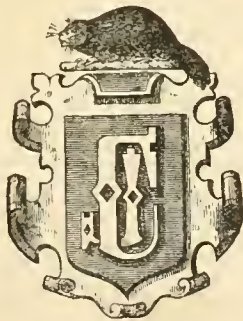
Canadian Series of School-Books.

---

MODERN  
SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY  
AND  
ATLAS.

AUTHORIZED BY THE COUNCILS OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION FOR THE PROVINCES OF ONTARIO,  
QUEBEC, NEW BRUNSWICK, AND PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

*FIFTH EDITION.*



TORONTO:  
JAMES CAMPBELL AND SON.

1879.

Price 75 cents.



*Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-six, by JAMES CAMPBELL & SON, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.*

## PREFACE TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

THE success which has followed the issue of the previous editions of this Geography has fully shown the necessity that existed for a book of the kind, and has proved that it has been acceptable as a reliable and useful Text-Book.

The present edition has been thoroughly revised up to the latest dates, many parts have been entirely re-written, a large number of questions have been added, and new maps inserted. Any errors in the first edition have been corrected, and the accuracy of all information now given may be relied upon. While this edition is entirely new, and printed from new stereotype plates, the same arrangement and system has been continued as in the first, the chief improvements being the addition of exercises on the various maps, and the insertion of new maps, valuable for teaching more thoroughly the geography of our own country.

Our own Dominion occupies the foremost place, while, from our connection with Great Britain and our proximity to the United States, these countries have also been fully treated.

The style will be found to be simple, so as to be acceptable to the largest number of scholars; and yet sufficiently full and explicit to give a thorough general knowledge of the Geography of the world. The latest authorities have been consulted for statistics; and each part of the Dominion has been revised by gentlemen resident in the various Provinces, whose intimate knowledge of the different countries renders them well qualified to undertake the task; and to whom the author is under great obligations for the care and attention which they have bestowed upon the work.

The plan which has been followed throughout is to impress upon the memory the great physical features, form, and appearance of a continent or country, so that the scholar may have imprinted on his mind a view of the country, where the mountains, the rivers, and general slope and appearance of the country stand prominently out; leaving the minor details, such as subdivisions, towns, products, government, &c., to be filled in upon the foundation of the first and most important part.

To each section or country, questions have been attached, with a view to assist the scholar in learning, and Exercises on the Maps are also given to prove his knowledge of what he has learned, before coming up to his teacher. These questions may, of course, be increased to any extent, according as the teacher may desire. It is, however, recommended that full exercises and questions should be given on the maps; and as every place and name mentioned in the text will be found on them, it will stimulate the scholar to greater accuracy and observation, should questions be asked the answers to which are not to be found in the printed text.

This book is now offered to the public of the Dominion, in the hope that, as one step towards a united nationality is a thorough and intimate knowledge of the whole by the different countries united, it may enable not only the scholars, but others also, to form a more true and correct idea of the sister Provinces than they have hitherto had; and assist also in producing, even if in a small degree, that good feeling and pleasant intercourse which ought to exist between the different parts of the same union.



# MODERN SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

## INTRODUCTION.

### FORM OF THE EARTH.

GEOGRAPHY is a description of the Earth, its surface, divisions, and inhabitants. The Earth is round, like an orange, being slightly flattened at the two poles, and bulging out a little round the middle. To prove that the Earth is round, although it appears to us to be flat : we know that we can only see the surface of the ground about three miles on a level plain ; and at sea the view, not being interrupted by mountains or any great inequalities in the surface, is bounded on all sides by the horizon. When a vessel appears in sight, the masts are always seen before the hull ; so also, a vessel can sail round the world, and come back to her starting-point without changing the direction of her course.

About one-quarter of the Earth's surface is land, and three-quarters water.

The Earth is nearly 25,000 miles in circumference, and about 8000 miles in diameter.

The *circumference* is a line drawn round the Earth, having the centre of the Earth for its centre.

The *diameter* is a straight line drawn through the centre of the earth, and terminated by its surface at each end.

What is geography? Describe the form of the earth? How do you prove that the earth is round? What is the surface of the earth composed of? To what proportions?

What length is the circumference of the earth? What length is the diameter? What are the circumference and diameter of the earth?

### MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.

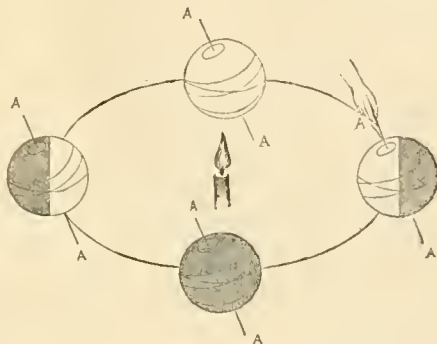
Although appearing to us to be perfectly still, the Earth is continually moving with great velocity. It has two motions :—

1. The *Diurnal*, or Daily. Every twenty-four hours it revolves once on its axis, causing alternate day and night, according as the portion we live on is turned to or from the sun. The axis of the Earth is an imaginary line passing through its centre, terminating in what are called the North and South Poles.

2. The *Annual*, or Yearly. Every year it moves once round the Sun, producing the Seasons, according as the North or South Pole inclines towards the Sun. Thus, when the North Pole, or the northern portion of the Earth upon which we live, is inclined towards the Sun, it is Summer with us, and Winter with the southern portion of the Earth, or to all south of the equator. And also, when the South Pole inclines towards the Sun, it is Winter with us, and Summer south of the equator.

[In order to understand this, it is necessary for the teacher to explain, that the axis of the earth is not perpendicular to the plane of its orbit, but is inclined to it at an angle of  $66\frac{1}{2}$  degrees. And as the axis of the Earth always points to the same part of the Heavens, the North or Polar

Star, it is evident that, as the Earth moves round the Sun, each pole gradually changes its relative position to the Sun ; and so, during one-half of the year, inclines towards the Sun, and the other half from it, as may be seen from the accompanying diagram, where AA represents the axis of the Earth, and the globes the position of the Earth, at Midsummer, Midwinter, and the Equinoxes.]



Does the earth move? How many motions has it? What are they called? How are day and night caused? How is the part of the earth we live on situated with regard to the sun at night? What is the axis of the earth? What are the poles? What causes the seasons? When is it summer with us? When winter? Are the seasons the same both north and south of the equator?

### THE HEAVENLY BODIES.

The Sun is the centre of the system in which the Earth is placed, and round it the Planets and Comets move at various distances, each one having its own course, and shewing forth the beautiful regularity with which the Creator has arranged the universe.

The Sun is 883,000 miles in diameter, and 1,350,000 times larger than the Earth, from which it is distant ninety-five millions of miles.

The names of the other planets, their relative sizes compared with the Earth, and their distances from the Sun, are :—

|   | Times the size of the Earth. | Miles distant from the Sun. |
|---|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| MERCURY, . . .  | 1-19th . . .                 | 37 millions.                |
| VENUS, . . .  | 1 . . .                      | 69 "                        |
| MARS, . . .   | 3-16ths . . .                | 144 "                       |
| ASTEROIDS, small ; situated between Mars and Jupiter. |                              |                             |
| JUPITER, . . .  | 1438 . . .                   | 494 millions.               |
| SATURN, . . .   | 932 . . .                    | 906 "                       |
| URANUS, . . .   | 87 . . .                     | 1787 "                      |
| NEPTUNE, . . .  | 60 . . .                     | 2870 "                      |

The *Planets* are supposed to be bodies somewhat similar to the Earth, although as yet little, besides their dimensions and orbits, is definitely known. Neither is it known whether they are inhabited or not, although they move on the same plane

as the Earth, and like it rotate on their axes, and have alternate day and night, and probably seasons more or less varied. According as they are nearer or more distant than the Earth from the Sun, they require less or more time to move round the Sun.

*Comets* are luminous bodies which move round the Sun with immense velocity. They generally move on a different plane from the Earth and the other Planets, and have an erratic course, not in a circle, like the planets, but at one time comparatively near, and at another very far from the Sun, so that we may lose sight of them for hundreds of years.

The *Moon* is the attendant of the Earth. Were the Earth to remain still, the Moon would revolve round it in  $27\frac{1}{2}$  days; but as it is continually moving, the Moon requires  $29\frac{1}{2}$  days to complete its revolution. The Moon is about one forty-ninth part the size of the Earth, and is distant from it 37,000 miles.

The Moon derives its light from the Sun; and as the Earth sometimes intervenes directly between the Sun and the Moon, it then casts a shadow on the Moon's surface. This is called an *Eclipse* of the Moon, or a *lunar eclipse*.

The Moon also, in its course round the Earth, sometimes intervenes directly between the Sun and the Earth, and hides for a time the whole or part of the surface of the Sun from our sight. This is called an *Eclipse* of the Sun, or a *solar eclipse*.

As the Moon does not move round the Earth on the same plane as the Earth does round the Sun, eclipses happen comparatively seldom. There are from two to five solar eclipses in the course of a year; there may be three lunar eclipses, and sometimes none. As, however, lunar eclipses are visible to a whole hemisphere at once, and solar eclipses only to a part, the latter, though happening oftener, are less frequently seen.

Besides the Planets, there are multitudes of *Fixed Stars*, far beyond the system of which our Sun is the centre, and powerful telescopes reveal many more which are invisible to the naked eye. These shine by their own light, and are supposed to be suns, perhaps the centres of other systems as extensive as that in which the Earth is placed. The nearest of these *Fixed Stars* is 211,000 times more distant than the Sun.

What position does the sun occupy in the solar system? What bodies revolve round the sun? What is the size of the sun compared with the earth? How far distant is it? What gives light to the moon? What causes eclipses? How many kinds of eclipses are there? How often do they happen? Which do we see most frequently? What other heavenly bodies do we see? What are they supposed to be? How far distant are they? Describe their motion. What is the moon? How long does it take to move round the earth? What is its comparative size? How far distant is it? What gives light to the moon? What causes eclipses? How many kinds of eclipses are there? How often do they happen? Which do we see most frequently? What other heavenly bodies do we see? What are they supposed to be? How far distant are they?

### DIVISIONS OF THE LAND.

About one-quarter of the Earth's surface consists of land, the different parts of which are known by the following names:—

**EXERCISES ON THE MAP—THE WORLD.**—Which hemisphere contains most land? Which most water? Name a continent in the Western Hemisphere. What is that portion of land called which connects North and South America? What large island is there in the Eastern Hemisphere?

A *Continent* is a large extent of land comprising several countries.

An *Island* is a smaller extent of land wholly surrounded by water.

A *Peninsula* is a portion of land almost surrounded by water.

An *Isthmus* is a narrow neck of land connecting two larger portions of land.

A *Cape* is a point of land projecting into the sea; and if high or mountainous, is called a *Promontory*.

A *Shore or Coast* is the edge or margin of land bordering on the water.

A *Mountain* is a portion of land rising to a considerable height above the surrounding country. A *Hill* is a smaller elevation.

A *Valley* is that portion of land which lies between mountains or hills.

A *Volcano* is a mountain which throws out fire, smoke, lava, and ashes. The opening from which they issue is called the crater.

A *Plain* is a tract of level land, and when considerably elevated above the level of the sea, it is called a *Plateau*, or table-land.

A *Desert* is a barren tract of country, covered with sand or rocks.

An *Oasis* is a fertile spot in a desert.

A *Prairie* is a tract of land, generally flat, or slightly undulating, covered with long grass or small shrubs.

### DIVISIONS OF THE WATER.

About three-quarters of the Earth's surface is covered with water, the different parts of which are known by the following names:—

An *Ocean* is an extensive body of salt water. Although the ocean may be said to be one, it is subdivided into smaller portions, which are also called *Oceans*.

A *Sea* is a smaller portion of salt water.

An *Archipelago* is a sea studded with many islands.

A *Gulf* or *Bay* is a portion of water extending into, and almost surrounded by land.

A *Strait* is a narrow portion of water connecting two seas. When it is shallow, so that it may be sounded or fathomed, it is called a *Sound*.

A *Channel* is a portion of water connecting two seas, but longer and broader than a strait. The

same name is often applied to the hollow bed of a river.

A *Lake* is a body of fresh water wholly surrounded by land.

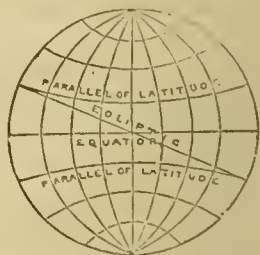
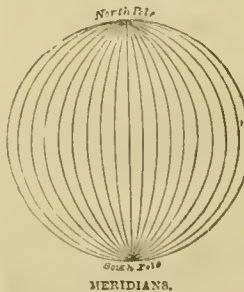
A *River* is a stream of fresh water, running into a lake, sea, or another river. Small rivers are called *Streams*, *Creeks*, *Brooks*, or *Rivulets*. A *Basin* is a tract of land drained or watered by a river. The ridge of land separating the basins of rivers is called a *Water-shed* or *Divide*. A *Delta* is that portion of land occupying the space between the different mouths of the same river.

An *Estuary* or *Firth* is an arm of the sea extending into the land to meet a river, and appearing to form a continuation of the river.

### CIRCLES ON THE GLOBE.

For the convenience of measurement and calculation, the surface of the globe is divided by various imaginary Circles, which are shown by lines on the map.

Each Circle is divided into 360 parts, called degrees (°). A



degree is again subdivided into 60 minutes (′), and a minute into 60 seconds (″).

sphere? What is the southern part of America called? Name the oceans on the map. Name a sea near the centre of the Eastern Hemisphere. An archipelago in the South Pacific Ocean. A gulf and sea between North and South America. A strait on the North of America.



A *Map* is a representation of the Earth, or a part of it, on a plane surface.

The upper part of a map is generally North; the lower, South; the right hand, East; the left hand, West.

The *Equator* is an imaginary circle drawn round the Earth, at an equal distance from the poles, and dividing the Earth into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

A *Hemisphere* is half of a globe or sphere.

The lines running from East to West across the map are called *Parallels* of latitude, being parallel to the Equator. They are used for reckoning distance North and South from the Equator.

The length of a degree of latitude, or the distance between the parallels, is always the same, being 60 geographical or 69 English miles.

The lines running from North to South are called *Meridians*. They are drawn from one pole to the other, and cross the Equator at right angles. They are used for calculating longitude, or distance East or West.

The length of a degree of longitude, or distance between the meridians, varies, becoming shorter as we approach the poles. At the Equator it is 69 English miles, at Montreal about 49 miles, and at Toronto 50½ miles.

The first meridian from which we reckon is supposed to pass through the Royal Observatory at Greenwich. Other countries generally reckon from the meridian which passes through their own capitals.

Longitude East or West means distance East or West of the first meridian at Greenwich.

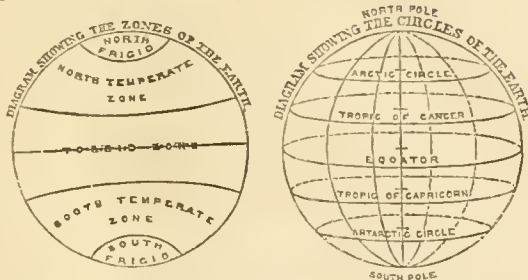
The *Ecliptic* is a great circle representing the course which the Sun appears to take during the year, and is shown by a line drawn round the globe on the plane of the Sun's apparent orbit. The line of the Ecliptic, as represented on a terrestrial globe or on a map, shows where each day at noon the Sun is directly overhead. It will be remembered that the Earth gradually changes its position towards the Sun during the year which it requires to complete its revolution; consequently, the points at which the Sun is directly overhead change every day. The extent of the variation in the position of the Sun towards the Earth is from  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  North to  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  South of the Equator, which thus equally divides the Ecliptic.

The Ecliptic crosses the Equator at two points in the Earth's course, about the 21st days of March and September; and at these two periods we have equal day and night all over the world. These are called the *Equinoxes*.

The *Tropics* are two circles drawn round the globe at equal distances north and south of the Equator, and parallel to it, intersecting the extreme points of the Ecliptic, and are thus  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  distant from the Equator. The northern is called the *Tropic of Cancer*, the southern the *Tropic of Capricorn*.

The *Polar Circles* are lines drawn round the globe parallel to the tropics, and at equal distances from them, and mark the distance the Sun's rays fall short of one pole, when the opposite pole is inclined towards it. As the Sun then shines vertically on places  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  north or south of the Equator, so its rays fall short of one pole  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ , and shine beyond the other to

the same distance; causing continuous day for a time at one pole and continuous night at the other.



The tropics and polar circles divide the Earth into five *Zones* or belts:—

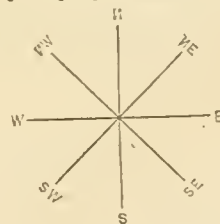
The *Torrid Zone*, extending between the tropics, and so called from the intense heat.

*Two Temperate Zones*, extending between the tropics and polar circles, so called from the heat and cold being less excessive than in the other zones.

*Two Frigid Zones*, extending from the polar circles to the poles, and so called from the intense frost and cold prevailing there.

The *Horizon* is the circle bounding the view by the apparent meeting of earth and sky.

The four *Cardinal Points* of the horizon are North, South, East, and West. These are again subdivided in the mariner's compass; but the principal points are—



How is the surface of the globe divided? How are these divisions shown on the map? How is a circle divided and subdivided? What is a map? What are the different parts of a map usually called? What is the equator? What is a hemisphere? What are parallels of latitude? What is their use? What are meridians? What is their use? Are degrees of latitude and longitude of the same length? What is the length of a degree of latitude? Of longitude at the equator? At Montreal? Where do we begin to reckon the degrees of longitude? What does the ecliptic represent? How much does it vary in position during the year? When is the sun directly over the equator? What results then? What are the tropics? How far distant are they from the equator? What are the polar circles? When the sun is north of the equator, what is the result at the North Pole? At the South Pole? How do the tropics and polar circles divide the earth? Describe the zones. What is the horizon? What are the principal points of the compass? What are the cardinal points?

### NATURAL PHENOMENA.

The Earth is surrounded by a transparent fluid called the air or atmosphere, which moves with it, and extends to the height of about 45 miles above it. Close to the Earth it is comparatively dense, becoming thinner as we ascend.

Heat and cold are produced according as the Sun's rays shine vertically or obliquely on the Earth's surface and then vary

zones is Europe in? How many degrees of latitude and longitude are there in each hemisphere? Are the degrees of longitude in America east or west? Of what? Are the degrees of latitude in North America north or south? Of what? Point out a land in the Antarctic Ocean.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—THE WORLD.—What continents are crossed by the Equator? Which hemisphere contains most land, the Northern or Southern? What continents are north of the Equator? Is any part of Asia in the Torrid Zone? In what zones is North America? What

according to the height above the level of the sea. The heat or cold of the atmosphere is called the temperature.

In the tropics, where the Sun's rays strike vertically down, it is hottest; and within the polar circles, where the rays strike most obliquely, it is coldest. But as the air becomes thinner as we ascend, the Sun's rays gradually lose their power, so that even in the tropics there is on the mountains a height above which snow will not melt. This is called the snow-line. This line gradually decreases in height as we approach the poles. At the Equator the snow-line is 16,000 feet above the level of the sea, and in Canada it is about 7000 feet; and, were there high mountains in the country, their summits above that height would be perpetually covered with snow.

The atmosphere is never at rest, the particles of which it is composed being moved about by the influence of heat and cold, thus forming winds. Several contrary currents of wind may occur one above the other, as when we see the clouds moving in a different direction from the wind on the surface of the earth. When the winds move rapidly they cause hurricanes and storms.

In the Torrid Zone, the East or Trade winds prevail throughout the year, and opposite currents prevail in the Temperate Zones. In the North Temperate Zone the prevalent winds are from the South-West, and in the South Temperate Zone from the North-West.

Periodical winds blow in different parts of the world, as the Monsoon on the shores of the Indian Ocean; the Typhoon in the China Sea; the Sirocco, Simoom, and Harmattan from the burning deserts of Africa and Arabia.

The ocean, like the air, is never at rest, being subject to the same influences; heat and cold producing currents, winds producing waves, and the attraction of the Sun and Moon producing tides.

The principal current in the ocean is the Gulf Stream, in the North Atlantic Ocean. This flows from east to west in the Tropics into the Caribbean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico, then skirts the shore of North America as far as Newfoundland, where it changes its course towards the east, and passing the Azores Islands, flows south till it once more reaches the great equatorial current which gave it origin. The water of the Gulf Stream is much warmer than that through which it flows, and its course rapid, varying from two to five miles an hour.

The tides are principally caused by the attraction of the Moon. The water being composed of particles more easily moved than the land, is drawn towards the Moon as the Earth revolves on its axis, and is thus raised in one place and lowered in another. This is called the ebb and flow of the tide. Spring or high tides are caused by the joint attraction of the Sun and Moon, and neap or low tides by their attraction in opposite directions.

The heat of the Sun's rays acting on the water forms vapor, which, being lighter than the air, gradually ascends. It is generally invisible, and is carried along by the winds until the temperature of the air becomes colder, when it condenses and forms clouds, and eventually falls to the Earth in the shape

of rain, dew, hail, or snow. Fogs or mists are clouds resting on the Earth's surface.

The *climate* of a country is understood to mean the temperature, and dryness or moisture of the atmosphere.

The climate is influenced by various circumstances; such as hot or cold winds, and the clearness or cloudiness of the sky; or the proximity of large bodies of water, which, not being so susceptible of change as the atmosphere, make the neighboring lands warmer or colder according as they are warm or cold. When a country is covered with forests, its temperature is found to be about 10° colder than when well cleared and cultivated, as the trees prevent the Sun's rays from reaching the ground, which thus remains colder than it would otherwise be, and imparts its coldness to the atmosphere.

Describe the atmosphere. How are heat and cold produced? What is meant by the temperature? Why is it hottest in the tropics? Why coldest at the poles? What is the snow-line? How is it that snow will not melt above a certain height? What is the height of the snow-line at the equator? In Canada? What causes the winds? What causes hurricanes and storms? What winds prevail in the tropics? Which in the north temperate zone? Which in the south temperate zone? What winds are especially remarkable, and where do they blow? What produces currents in the ocean? What causes waves? What causes tides? Describe the course of the Gulf Stream. How are tides produced? What is meant by the ebb and flow of the tide? What are spring and neap tides? How is vapor produced? How are clouds formed? What do they become? What are fogs and mists? What is meant by climate? How may the climate be influenced? What difference is there in it when the country is cleared?

## MINERALS.

The surface of the Earth is supposed to be a crust surrounding a central mass in a state of fusion. The consequent expansion of gases and molten minerals causes volcanic eruptions and earthquakes. Hence, too, the temperature of mines is found to increase in proportion to their depth.

In this crust are found many valuable minerals, the principal of which are—Iron, the most useful metal, is found in Canada, the United States, Great Britain, Sweden, Russia, Belgium, France, Germany, &c.

Copper is found in Canada, the United States, Chili, Australia, Norway, and other countries.

Tin is found chiefly in Cornwall, in England.

Zinc is found in Prussia, Belgium, England, and the United States.

Lead is found in Great Britain, Spain, Canada, and the United States.

Gold, the most valuable of all the metals, is useful chiefly for coinage, and is most abundant in Australia, California, and British Columbia. It is found also in Quebec, Nova Scotia, and other places. More than 100 millions of dollars in value is found annually.

Platina, the rarest of all metals, is found chiefly in the Ural Mountains.

Silver is found chiefly in Mexico, California, Nevada, and South America, on the north shore of Lake Superior in Ontario, and in Norway, Russia, and Hungary, in Europe.

Mercury, or quicksilver, is found in California, Spain, &c. Besides these are Cobalt, Arsenic, and many other metals of less importance.

Coal is the most valuable mineral, and the most important for adding to the wealth of a country. It is found in the greatest abundance in Great Britain and the United States,

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—THE WORLD.—In what zone is Canada? Newfoundland? The West India Islands? What countries are crossed by the Tropics and Polar Circles? What waters? What large islands in Oceania by the Equator? In what direction are the Sandwich Islands

from North America? In what direction is Africa from Europe? Australia from Asia? Madagascar from Africa? Newfoundland from Canada? Europe from North America? Asia from Europe? The West India Islands from South America? Bermuda from North America?



and largely in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Vancouver Island, and other countries.

*Sulphur* is found chiefly in volcanic countries.

*Salt* is found in every part of the world, in the various forms of mines, mountains, plains, and springs, and is also produced by the evaporation of sea water.

Other minerals are numerous, but less important.

What is the earth supposed to be? What causes volcanoes and earthquakes? Where is iron found? Copper? Tin? Zinc? Lead? Gold? Platina? Silver? Quick-silver? Coal? Sulphur? Salt?

## PLANTS.

Plants are found adapted to every climate, soil, and locality. In the *Torrid Zone* they are most numerous, and vegetation is most luxuriant. They become less numerous and more stunted as we approach the poles, till even trees refuse to grow, and only mosses or lichens are found, upon which animals subsist.

The *Torrid Zone* is distinguished for the size and beauty of its trees and flowers, its spices and rich fruits, and its odoriferous plants.

The *Temperate Zones* are distinguished for the abundance of their grains and fruits most useful to man.

The *Frigid Zones* produce nothing but mosses and lichens, except in the more temperate parts, where a little barley and rye is grown, and a few pines and other hardy trees are found.

Do plants grow in every country? Where are they most numerous? Where least? What plants are peculiar to the torrid zone? What to the temperate zones? What to the frigid zones?

## ANIMALS.

Animals, like plants, are to be found in every region, and adapted to every climate, soil, and locality.

Amid the luxuriant vegetation of the *Torrid Zone*, animals attain the largest size; here, also, wild animals abound. The forests, too, swarm with birds of brilliant plumage, insects, and reptiles.

In the *Temperate Zones* the more useful animals, such as the horse, cow, sheep, and deer, abound, and very few wild animals are to be found.

In the *Frigid Zones* comparatively few land animals are found, but sea-fowl are very numerous, and the sea abounds with the whale, seal, and walrus.

Some animals are common to all the zones, such as the dog, sheep, bear, &c.; and it is remarkable that their natural covering varies with the climate of the zone in which they are found.

Are animals found in every country? What animals inhabit the torrid zone? What the temperate zones? What the frigid zones? What animals are found in every zone? What peculiarity do they exhibit?

## MANKIND.

Mankind has been variously classified according to distinctions of form, color, skin, hair, &c. The system of Blumenbach, as the one most convenient for classification, forms the basis of nearly all subsequent schemes; and is as follows:—

The *Caucasian*, including the principal nations of Europe, with the allied Asiatic races, jointly classed as Indo-European; and also the Semitic races, including the Arabs, Jews, &c.

The *Mongolian*, including the Chinese, the Tartar tribes of Central Asia, and allied races; among these the Finns and Lapps of Europe are embraced.

The *Malay*, including the natives of the peninsula of Malacca, the chief islands of the Indian Archipelago, New Zealand, &c.

The *Ethiopian*, including the chief nations and tribes of Africa; and

The *American*, including all the nations and tribes native to North and South America.

The Papuans and other islanders are styled *Negritoes*, from their negro-like color of skin, woolly hair, &c. The Australians are equally dark, but with hair generally straight.

The American Indian closely approximates to the Asiatic Mongolian.

How is mankind commonly classed? What nations belong to the Caucasian race? To the Mongolian? To the Malay? To the Ethiopian? To the American? What are the Papuans called? What are the Australians like? To what other race does the American Indian most approximate?

## POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

The Political Divisions of the earth are Empires, Kingdoms, Principalities, and Republics.

An *Empire* consists of several large countries united under the rule of one monarch, generally called an Emperor.

A *Kingdom*, or *Monarchy*, consists of one or more countries governed by a King or Queen. It is called a *Limited Monarchy* when the power of the king is restricted by law, and no laws can be made without the consent of the representatives of the people; and an *Absolute Monarchy* when the will of the monarch is supreme.

*Principalities*, *Grand Duchies*, and *Duchies* are small states governed by a Prince, Grand Duke, or Duke.

A *Republic* is a country governed by a ruler chosen by the people for a limited period, who is generally called a President.

How is the world politically divided? What is an empire? Kingdom? Principality? Republic?

## GRAND DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH.

The earth is divided into two *Hemispheres*, the Eastern and Western.

Of the land there are five grand or principal Divisions—*America*, *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, and *Oceania*.

Of the water there are also five grand or principal Divisions, called Oceans—the *Atlantic*, the *Pacific*, the *Indian*, the *Arctic*, and the *Antarctic*.

The extent of land upon the surface of the earth may be estimated at about 52 millions of square miles, divided as follows:—

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| America, | 15,500,000 |
| Europe,  | 3,800,000  |
| Asia,    | 17,140,000 |
| Africa,  | 11,500,000 |
| Oceania, | 4,500,000  |

How is the earth divided? What are the grand divisions of the land? Of the water? What is the extent of land upon the earth? Which division is the largest? Which next? &c. Which smallest?

North America from Asia? What is the southern point of Africa called? What is the southern point of India called? What island is near there? What islands lie to the east of Asia in the temperate zone? What part of America is nearest to Japan?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—THE WORLD.—What oceans wash the shores of America? What sea is between North and South America? What sea between Europe and Africa? What sea between Asia and Africa? What oceans are in the Eastern Hemisphere? What strait divides

## POPULATION AND RELIGION.

The population of the earth is estimated at about 1300 millions, divided as follows:—

|                    | Population. | No. of Persons to Sq. Mile. |
|--------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| America, . . . . . | 80,000,000  | 5                           |
| Europe, . . . . .  | 300,000,000 | 50                          |
| Asia, . . . . .    | 800,000,000 | 41                          |
| Africa, . . . . .  | 100,000,000 | 9                           |
| Oceania, . . . . . | 30,000,000  | 7                           |

The inhabitants are divided, according to their religious belief, into—

|                               |             |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| Christians, . . . . .         | 365,000,000 |
| Jews, . . . . .               | 5,000,000   |
| Mohammedans, . . . . .        | 160,000,000 |
| Pagans, or Heathen, . . . . . | 800,000,000 |

What is the population of the earth? Which division contains the most inhabitants? Which next? &c. Which is most densely peopled, or contains the largest number of persons to the square mile? Which next? Which least? Into what religious bodies are the inhabitants of the earth classed? Which are most numerous? Which next? &c.

## AMERICA.

Area, 15,500,000 square miles, comprising 3-10ths of the land surface of the globe; greatest length from north to south in a direct line, 9400 miles; greatest breadth from east to west, 3200; population, 80,000,000.

AMERICA, or the NEW WORLD, the only great division of the earth in the Western Hemisphere, is surrounded on all sides by water: on the North by the Arctic Ocean; on the West by the Pacific Ocean; on the South by the Antarctic Ocean; and on the East by the Atlantic Ocean.

It is composed of two enormous pear-shaped masses of land, both widest towards the north, and tapering to a point towards the south, joined together by the Isthmus of Panama.

These two parts are called respectively *North* and *South America*.

America is remarkable for the extent and grandeur of its physical features; its mountain chains, rivers, lakes, plains, and forests being the largest in the world.

It was discovered by Christopher Columbus in 1492, when he arrived at the island of San Salvador, one of the Bahamas. It was not, however, till 1498, on his third voyage, that he reached the mainland of South America; North America having been visited the year before by John Cabot, a Venetian in the service of England. The new continent was named after Amerigo Vespucci, a Florentine, who accompanied Hojeda, a Spanish commander, as astronomer, and wrote an account of his discoveries in America. Greenland was discovered by the Norwegians 500 years before Columbus reached America; and it is said that they also visited the shores of what is now called New England.

In shape and general features the two great divisions resemble each other. The *Rocky Mountains* of North America, and the *Andes* of South America, stretch from north to south through the whole length of the continent, forming an almost unbroken chain of nearly 10,000 miles in length. In both divisions, this chain is nearest to the Pacific, and both have smaller ranges of mountains in the east, at the broadest part of the continents; while the centre, between the two ranges, is one vast plain. Both divisions may be divided into four great slopes—a northern, eastern, south-eastern, and western; and the

three first are drained in North America by the Mackenzie, St Lawrence, and Mississippi rivers; and in South America by the Orinoco, Amazon, and La Plata Rivers. And similarly in both continents, the sources of these rivers are divided only by a gentle rise scarcely perceptible.

The rivers of America are especially remarkable for their length and volume of water, and also for the distance to which they are navigable, the length of the principal being—

|   | Miles. |
|---|--------|
| N. AMERICA. { Mississippi, with the Missouri, . . . . . | 2600   |
| { St Lawrence, with Lakes, . . . . .                    | 2140   |
| { Mackenzie, . . . . .                                  | 2160   |
| S. AMERICA. { Amazon, with the Ucayali, . . . . .       | 4200   |
| { La Plata, with the Paraguay, . . . . .                | 2700   |
| { Orinoco, . . . . .                                    | 1600   |

All of these rivers, with their tributaries (except the Mackenzie, which flows into the Arctic Ocean), are navigable almost to their sources. This is owing to the vast plains through which they flow, and their very gradual fall towards the sea.

Compared with the other great divisions of the Earth, America possesses but a small extent of coast line, its length being only 43,000 miles, or, in comparison with its size, only equal to half of that of Europe. It is more broken in North than in South America. The latter presents one unbroken mass of land, with no deep indentations, and but few islands along its whole coast.

As the continent of America extends through all the zones, its climate and soil vary greatly, and will be found treated fully under the head of its separate countries. It is, however, in general, more humid in the Tropics than the Eastern Hemisphere, and subject to greater extremes of heat and cold in the higher latitudes. In the north, the frozen mass of the Arctic Ocean renders it much colder than in the same latitude in Europe, and along the whole of the Western coast the high mountain ranges attract the moisture, so that rain generally prevails there to a greater extent than on the Eastern coast.

America does not possess such a number or variety of wild animals as are found in the Eastern Hemisphere, but presents a larger variety of plants. Many of the latter, also, are indigenous or native to the country, such as tobacco, maize, the potato, cinchona, (from which comes the Peruvian bark,) ivory-

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—NORTH AMERICA.—What joins North and South America? Which of the principal rivers are in the Dominion of Canada? Which in the United States? What mountain ranges extend through the Dominion of Canada? Through the United States? Point

out the principal lakes in the Dominion. In the United States. In Central America. What large island lies near the east coast of the Dominion? What peninsula forms the south-eastern portion of the Dominion? What large island near the west coast? What islands enclose the Caribbean Sea?







palm, &c.; and America now supplies the world with cotton, sugar, coffee, and grain.

When the Spaniards first discovered the Western Continent under Columbus and other commanders, they called the native inhabitants Indians, under the impression that they had now found out the western route to the East Indies. Those Indians dwelling in Mexico and Peru were comparatively civilized, had large towns, and fixed forms of government. They welcomed the new-comers, but soon had reason to repent of their hospitality, for the lust for conquest, and the rapacity of the Spaniards and Portuguese, soon enslaved them and destroyed their cities. They have almost disappeared, or are represented by debased races rapidly becoming extinct. Many interesting relics remain to prove the great progress in civilization achieved by the native races of Mexico and Peru.

The Esquimaux, a short, stunted race, occupy the extreme north, and subsist by hunting and fishing. The remaining native races are scattered over the whole continent, living by the chase, and forming a great number of different tribes, speaking different languages; in general they are fierce and barbarous, incapable of civilization, and frequently at war among themselves, or with the aggressor, the white man. They are supposed to number about ten millions, and most of them are still pagans. Many theories are advanced to account for the native races of America, the most plausible being, that they came originally from Asia, across Behring Strait, where the Aleutian Isles form, as it were, stepping-stones between the two continents.

What is the extent of America? Greatest length? Greatest breadth? In what hemisphere is it? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. What is its shape? How is it divided? For what is it remarkable? When was it discovered? Mention the first discoverers. How do North and South America resemble each other? What mountain chains traverse them? Describe the other points of resemblance. Trace the Rocky Mountains on the map. The Andes. Point out the principal rivers. Which are the longest? Are they navigable? What contributes to make them easy of navigation? Describe the coast line of America.

Which division is most irregular? Describe the climate and soil of America. Why is it colder than in Europe in the north? Why is it more moist in the west than in the east? Has America many animals? Many plants? Which are indigenous to the country? What does America largely produce? What are the natives called? What was their condition when the continent was first discovered? How were they treated? What is known of them? What native races now inhabit the country? What is their present condition? What is their number? How are they supposed to have originated?

## NORTH AMERICA.

Area, 8,350,000 square miles; greatest length from north to south, including Central America, 4700 miles; greatest breadth from east to west, 3000 miles; persons to a square mile, 6; population, 54,000,000.

NORTH AMERICA comprises the Northern part of the Continent of America, and is joined to South America by the Isthmus of Panama. It is bounded on the North by the Arctic Ocean; on the West by the Pacific Ocean; on the South by the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico; and on the East by the Atlantic Ocean.

Its surface is divided into four great regions by the grand chain of the Rocky Mountains, and the lesser chain of the Alleghanies; consisting of the Northern slope towards the Arctic Ocean, the Pacific slope, the great central plain extending from the sources of the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico, and the Eastern slope towards the Atlantic Ocean.

The Rocky Mountains form the great backbone, as it may be termed, of North America, extending from the Arctic Ocean southwards, through the whole length of the continent. The Cordilleras of Mexico and Guatemala may be considered as a continuation of the chain, although it is somewhat interrupted by the high plateaus of Mexico. The Rocky Mountains rise mostly from a high table-land, which is sometimes 5000 feet above the sea. They occupy a region from 40 to 200 miles in breadth, and consist in some parts of two or three parallel ranges. Their highest elevation is attained in the Dominion of Canada and Colorado,—Mounts Brown and Hooker (in British Columbia) rising about 16,000 feet high,—although the Cordilleras contain the celebrated volcanoes of Popocatepetl, Agua, and Orizaba, the first nearly 18,000 feet high.

Parallel with the Rocky Mountains along the Pacific coast are several successive ranges of mountains, which have been called the Alps of the Pacific, extending from Mexico to Alaska, and terminated by the lofty volcano, Mount St Elias, 15,000 feet high. These chains are known by different names, as the Sierra Madre in Mexico; the Coast Range, and the parallel range of the Sierra Nevada in California; and the Cascade Mountains in Oregon, Washington Territory, and British Columbia.

The Alleghany Mountains, or Appalachian chain, extend from the north of the State of Alabama to the Gulf of St Lawrence, about 1500 miles in length. Different portions of the same range are known by the names of the Cumberland Mountains in Tennessee, the Blue Mountains in Virginia, the Catskill Mountains in New York, the Green Mountains in Vermont, White Mountains in New Hampshire, and Notre Dame Mountains in Quebec. The name Alleghany belongs properly to the eastern and principal range in Virginia and Pennsylvania. Their highest summits are in New Hampshire, where they rise to the height of 6000 feet, but elsewhere they seldom rise over 4000 feet.

Owing to the vast plains of North America, and the gentle slope of the land, the rivers are large and numerous, and navigable far into the interior of the country. The St Lawrence, with the great lakes, is navigable for upwards of 2000 miles, the Mississippi, with the Missouri, for upwards of 4000, and many of the other great rivers almost to their sources. In the Great Central Plain there is scarcely a watershed 1500 feet above the level of the sea, and many of the large rivers take their rise so near each other that it is difficult to tell in which direction the slope is.

### The principal Rivers of North America are—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| In the north the Yukon, Mackenzie, Back or Great Fish, Churchill, Saskatchewan, and St Lawrence. | In the centre and south, the Alabama, Mississippi, with its affluents, the Illinois, Ohio, Missouri, Arkansas, and Red Rivers, and the Rio Grande del Norte. |
| In the east, the St John, Hudson, Connecticut, Susquehanna, Delaware, Potomac, and Savannah.     | In the west, the Colorado, Columbia, and Fraser.   |

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—NORTH AMERICA.—What important gulf is there to the east of the Dominion of Canada? To the south of the United States? What is the southern point of the Peninsula of Lower California called? The south eastern point of the United States? The

south-eastern point of Newfoundland? What capes and straits are in the east of the Dominion of Canada? What bay is between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? How is Alaska divided from Asia? What gulf is on the west of Mexico? What gulf is on the west of British Columbia?



The principal Lakes of North America are in the northern part, and are either in the Dominion of Canada, or form the boundary between it and the United States. They are—*Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, Ontario, Great Bear, Great Slave, Athabasca, Winnipeg, Winnipegosis, and Lake of the Woods.*

South of these the only Lakes worthy of mention are—*Lake Champlain, just touching the Canadian frontier; Great Salt Lake in Utah; and Nicaragua in Central America.*

The outline of North America is much more broken than that of South America, especially on the north and east, but compared with the extent of coast-line, the Islands, Gulfs, Promontories, &c., are not numerous.

#### The principal Islands are—

In the north, *Greenland, Melville, Banks, and Southampton.*

In the west, *Vancouver, Queen Charlotte, Prince of Wales, Sitka, and Aleutian Isles.*

In the south, the *Bermudas,*

*The principal Gulfs, Bays, and Straits are—*

In the north, *Davis Strait and Baffin Bay, Barrow and Banks Straits, Melville, and Lancaster Sounds, Hudson Strait and Hudson Bay, and its southern extremity, James Bay.*

In the east, the *Strait of Belle Isle, Gulf of St. Lawrence, and Bay of Fundy.*

#### The principal Capes are—

In the east, *Farewell, Chudleigh, Charles, Race, Eretion, Sable, Cod, Hatteras, Sable (Florida), Catoche, Groceries à Dieu.*

In the west, *Corrientes, San*

#### The Peninsulas of North America are—

In the east, *Labrador, Nova Scotia, Florida, and Yucatan.*

In the west, *Alaska, and Lower California.*

In the north, *Boothia and Melville.*

North America, owing to its great extent from north to south, varies greatly in climate, according to the latitude. In general, it averages about 10° hotter in summer and 10° colder in winter than in the same latitude in Europe. In the north and east it is much colder, owing to the great extent of the frozen Arctic Ocean, from which cold currents are continually flowing southwards. In the south it is hot, but varies according to the elevation of the land above the sea. On the west coast it is in general warmer and more moist than in the east. It is remarkable, that about the centre of the Dominion of Canada, along the Saskatchewan Valley to the Rocky Mountains, the climate is almost the same as in Ontario, although 10° higher in latitude, or nearly 700 miles farther north.

The soil of North America is generally rich and productive, owing chiefly to its level nature and the great number of rivers; the only barren parts of any extent being the Arctic Regions, and the desert tracts in the United States along each side of the Rocky Mountains. Grain, cotton, sugar, and tobacco form the great staple products.

There are few wild animals in North America, the principal being the bear, wolf, lynx, jaguar, &c.; but fur-bearing animals, such as the beaver, otter, mink, marten, and others, abound in the North. The great prairies swarm with buffalo,

deer, and wild fowl; and in the south, wild horses are numerous. The sea also abounds with valuable fish.

All the principal minerals are found in North America; gold, silver, copper, and lead, being found to a great extent in many parts. It is estimated that the coal beds of North America are more than ten times as large as all the others in the world put together.

North America has been colonized by settlers from Europe, principally from the British Islands, who, chiefly within the last 200 years, have explored, settled, and cultivated a territory larger than Europe; have built large cities, and carry on an extensive commerce with every quarter of the globe; and are distinguished for their energy and enterprise in agriculture and commerce, for the extensive facilities for rapid communication they possess, and for their general intelligence and cultivation.

#### North America is divided into—

|                           |                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| Danish America.           | Mexico.             |
| Dominion of Canada.       | Central America.    |
| United States of America. | West India Islands. |

What is the area of North America? Greatest length? Greatest breadth? Population? Average to the square mile? What proportion of the whole continent does it comprise in extent? In population? How is North America joined to South America? How is North America bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. How may its surface be divided, and by what? Point out the divisions on the map. Describe the Rocky Mountains. Where are the Cordilleras? Where do the Rocky Mountains attain their greatest height? What are the highest peaks? What mountains are on the Pacific coast? How far do they extend? What are the highest peaks? What are the names of the different chains? How far do the Alleghanies extend? Under what names? How high are they? Describe the general features of the rivers of North America. Describe the great central plain. Name the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Where do they rise? Into what ocean, gulf, or bay do they flow? What tributaries have they? Where are the principal lakes? Name them. Point them out on the map. Describe the outline of North America. Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Describe the position of each. Name the principal gulfs, bays, straits, &c. Point them out on the map. Describe their position. Name the principal capes. Describe their position. Name the principal peninsulas. Describe their position. Describe the climate of North America. What is remarkable in the climate of the Dominion of Canada? Describe the soil of North America. Where are the best tracts? Point them out on the map. What are the staple products of North America? What are the principal animals? To what parts are they respectively found? What minerals are found? Of what extent are the coal-beds? How has North America been peopled? In what length of time? For what are the people distinguished? How is North America divided? Point out the divisions on the map.

#### DANISH AMERICA.

Area, 380,000 square miles; population, nearly 10,000; about twice the size of Ontario.

GREENLAND or DANISH AMERICA is a very large island, or possibly several islands joined by ice. The surface is high and rocky, with enormous glaciers in the hollows. It is said to have been discovered by a Norwegian, 500 years before Columbus discovered America.

The climate is cold, although in July the thermometer rises to 84°; and fogs are almost constant on the coast. The soil is unfit for cultivation, although it has been attempted with a little success in some parts.

**EXERCISES ON THE MAP—NORTH AMERICA.**—Between what parallels of latitude does North America lie? Between what meridians? From what place are these reckoned? Are they east or west? Through what zones does North America extend? Point out on the map the principal

political divisions of North America? Give the parallels of latitude and meridians between which lies? How is Danish America separated from the Dominion? In what zone are the United States? Are they in the northern or southern part of it? In what zone are the other divisions?





120

115

110

105

100

95

Longitude







The principal animals are the reindeer, seals, Esquimaux dogs, hares, &c. Sea fowls are very numerous.

The Danes have several settlements along the coast at *Julianshaab*, *Uppernavik*, &c., for the purpose of trade. The chief exports are eider-down, whale and seal oil, sealskins, and furs. The whale and seal fisheries on the coast are valuable, and are extensively carried on. The Danish population amounts only to about 300, the remainder being natives, a branch of the Esquimaux race.

What is the size of Danish America? What is it supposed to be? Describe its surface. When was it said to have been discovered, and by whom? Describe the climate and soil. Name the principal settlements, and point them out on the map. What are the chief branches of industry? How is the population composed?

#### DOMINION OF CANADA.

Area, 3,330,000 square miles; population, about 4,000,000; nearly as large as Europe, and comprising more than one-sixteenth part of the land surface of the globe.

Greatest extent from east to west, 3500 miles, and from north to south, about 1400 miles.

Capital OTTAWA.

The Dominion of CANADA is bounded on the North by the Arctic Ocean and Baffin's Bay; on the West by the Territory of Alaska, belonging to the United States, and the Pacific Ocean; on the South by the United States and the Great Lakes; and on the East by the Atlantic Ocean.

The Dominion of Canada comprises the whole of British North America, except the Island of Newfoundland, and consists of the Provinces of

Ontario,  
Quebec,  
New Brunswick,  
Nova Scotia,

Prince Edward Island,  
Manitoba,  
British Columbia,

(the District of Keewatin and the North-West Territory, formerly called the Hudson Bay Territory).

The chief physical features of the Dominion are:—

In the west, the *Rocky Mountains*, extending from the Arctic Ocean to the United States, from north to south, and the parallel range of the *Cascade Mountains*, near the Pacific Coast, both of which here attain their highest elevations.

In the centre, the great northern slope towards the Arctic Ocean, with its numerous lakes, rivers, and marshy tracts, chiefly drained by the *Mackenzie* and *Great Fish Rivers*; and the large inland sea, Hudson Bay, from which that part of the country formerly derived its name.

In the east, the great chain of Lakes forming the boundary between Canada and the United States, containing nearly one-half of the fresh water on the globe, and which, with the *River St Lawrence*, form an unbroken chain of water communication for over 2000 miles.

In the eastern and western portions of the Dominion, the country is well wooded, and timber is largely exported, but the centre consists of an immense tract of level or gently undulating prairie land, with only a few trees along the courses of the rivers, but producing abundance of nutritious grasses, and frequented by vast herds of buffalo.

Although comprising such an extensive area, the settled portion of the Dominion is very small, consisting chiefly of a long narrow strip of land, seldom exceeding 100 miles in breadth,

along the Lakes and River St Lawrence in Ontario and Quebec; the maritime provinces of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island; a small settlement in Manitoba, which was only admitted as a province in 1870; Vancouver Island in the west, and a few settlements along the course of the Fraser River in British Columbia.

The principal mountain ranges of Canada are the *Rocky Mountains* and the *Cascade Range* in British Columbia; the *Wolchish Mountains*, between Quebec and the North-West Territory; the *Notre Dame Mountains*, a continuation of the Appalachian chain in Quebec; the *Laurentide Hills* on the north shore of the St Lawrence; and in Nova Scotia, the *North and South Mountains* in the west, and the *Cobequid Mountains* in the north.

Canada is well watered, and is remarkable for the number and extent of its inland lakes. The rivers are numerous and important. The principal are:—

In British Columbia: the *Fraser River*, with its tributaries, flowing into the Gulf of Georgia; the *Peace River*, with its northern branch the *Finlay River*, flowing into the *Mackenzie River*; the *Skeena* or *Simpson River*, and the *Columbia River*, passing into the United States, where it flows into the Pacific Ocean.

In the North-West Territory: the *Mackenzie River*, formed by the junction of the *Athabasca* and *Peace Rivers*, flowing into the Arctic Ocean, after a course of 2160 miles; the *Coppermine* and *Back* or *Great Fish Rivers*, also flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the *Saskatchewan*, *Assiniboine* and *Red Rivers*, flowing into Lake Winnipeg, and thence by the *Nelson* into Hudson Bay; the *Churchill*, *Seyern*, and *Albany Rivers* flow into Hudson Bay.

In Ontario and Quebec: the *St Lawrence*, draining the great Lakes, and flowing into the Atlantic Ocean, with its chief tributaries, the *Ottawa*, *St Maurice*, and *Saguenay*.

In New Brunswick: the *St John*, rising in the United States, and flowing into the Bay of Fundy; and the *Restigouche*, and *Miramichi*, flowing into the Gulf of St Lawrence.

The principal Lakes of Canada are:—

In the North-West Territory: *Great Bear*, *Great Slave*, *Athabasca*, *Wollaston*, *Winnipeg*, *Winnipegosis*, *Manitoba*, and *Lake of the Woods* in the west, and *Abitibi* and *Mistassini* in the east.

In Ontario: *Superior*, *Huron*, *St Clair*, *Erie*, *Ontario*, *Simcoe*, *Nipissing*, and *Nipigon*.

In Quebec: *Temiscaming*, *Grand Lake*, and *Lake St John*.

The coast-line of Canada is much broken, differing in this respect from the remainder of the continent. The north shore, owing to the enormous masses of ice in the Arctic Ocean, is almost inaccessible.

On the east are *Newfoundland*, *Prince Edward*, *Anticosti*, *Cape Breton*, and *Magdalen Islands*; the *Gulf of St Lawrence*, *Strait of Belle Isle*, *Northumberland Strait*, *Gulf of Canso*, and *Bay of Fundy*.

On the north are *Cumberland*, *Southampton*, *Cockburn*, *Melville*, and numerous other islands; *Baffin Bay* and *Davis Strait*; *Barrow* and *Banks Straits*; *Melville* and *Lancaster Sounds*; the *Gulf of Boothia*; *Hudson Strait* and *Hudson Bay*, with its southern extremity, *James Bay*.

On the west coast are *Vancouver*, *Queen Charlotte*, and numerous other islands; *Juan de Fuca Strait*, the *Gulf of Georgia*, and *Queen Charlotte Sound*.

The climate of Canada is temperate, dry, and healthy, but more inclined to extremes than in the same latitude in Europe. In the east it is colder than in the west, the temperature of Ontario being continued from Manitoba westward, although nearly

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—DOMINION OF CANADA.—What mountain chains cross the western part of the Dominion? Which parts of the Dominion are in the west? Which in the east? Which province is near the centre? Which is the most southerly? Which provinces adjoin the United States?

How is Ontario separated from the United States? How is Newfoundland separated from Labrador? What large bay is nearly enclosed in the Dominion? What islands are in the Gulf of St Lawrence? What large islands are off the west coast? What island is north-east of Nova Scotia?



700 miles farther north. The soil is very fruitful in every section. In the older provinces all kinds of grain are grown in abundance, and largely exported, while grapes, melons, peaches, in the more southern parts, besides more hardy fruits, are extensively cultivated. Ontario is essentially an agricultural country. In the other provinces it is colder, but vegetation is very rapid. The thermometer sometimes ranges in winter from 30° to 40° below zero in Quebec, and the St. Lawrence is closed by ice during five months of the year. Although the snows of winter form the great highways for traffic, especially in the interior of the country, still the opening of navigation is always anxiously looked forward to.

Canada is rich in minerals. Gold is extensively found in British Columbia, and to a smaller extent in Nova Scotia. Copper, lead, and iron ore are found in Ontario, Quebec, and Nova Scotia; silver on the north shore of Lake Superior; and coal in Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Vancouver Island, and the North-West Territory. The petroleum and salt wells of Ontario are also valuable and productive.

The principal industries are the fisheries, shipbuilding, and lumbering in the maritime provinces and Quebec; agriculture and lumbering in Ontario; and gold-mining in British Columbia. Manufactures of woollens, iron, leather, cotton, tobacco, &c., are steadily increasing as the country progresses.

Railways, which in a new country are the pioneers of civilization, have received a great impetus of late years, and there are now in existence upwards of 5000 miles of railway in the Dominion. In addition to this, the Great Pacific Railway, extending from Montreal to British Columbia, a distance of 2800 miles, has been surveyed, and is to be completed by the year 1890, when an unbroken line of railway will extend from Halifax, in Nova Scotia, to Victoria in Vancouver Island. In order to assist navigation, a large amount has been expended on canals; on the St. Lawrence and Ottawa Rivers to overcome the rapids; the Rideau Canal to connect Lake Ontario with the Ottawa; and the Welland Canal, to pass the Falls of Niagara, and to connect Lakes Erie and Ontario. A new canal is also being built between Lakes Erie and Ontario, which will admit vessels of 1500 tons, and which is expected to attract the greater part of the enormous Western grain traffic through Canadian territory.

Quebec, which is the oldest settled part of the Dominion, is peopled principally by the descendants of the original French settlers, some of whom are also to be found in the other provinces; Ontario, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and Prince Edward Island, by the descendants of the United Empire Loyalists (who left the United States when those States became independent), and by settlers chiefly from the British Islands; Manitoba and British Columbia have been peopled but recently by settlers from the other provinces and elsewhere.

The original inhabitants, the Indians, now remaining, belong principally to the Huron, Chippawa, Mohawk, and Micmac tribes in the east, and to the Cree, Saulteaux, and Black-foot tribes in the west. Lands have been reserved for them in the various provinces, and in the more settled parts they have their own villages and houses, and cultivate their own farms.

The Dominion of Canada is a Confederation, each of the provinces of which it is composed having its own separate

Legislature and Executive Council, presided over by a Lieutenant-Governor appointed by the Dominion Government.

The Dominion form of government is the same as that of Great Britain, on which it is modelled, and consists of Her Majesty the Queen, represented by the Governor-General, and a Parliament, consisting of the House of Commons and the Senate.

The Governor-General is assisted by an Executive Council of 13 members, who must each have a seat in Parliament, and who are responsible for the good government of the country.

The House of Commons, at present, consists of members who are elected by the people for one Parliament only, which cannot exceed five years. The number of members to each province is proportioned to the population, and provision is made for increase, the number apportioned to Quebec (65) being made the basis of calculation.

The Senate consists of 81 members, appointed for life by the Crown.

*The number of Members to each Province is:—*

|                                 | Commons. | Senate. |
|---------------------------------|----------|---------|
| ONTARIO, . . . . .              | 88       | 24      |
| QUEBEC, . . . . .               | 65       | 24      |
| NEW BRUNSWICK, . . . . .        | 16       | 12      |
| NOVA SCOTIA, . . . . .          | 21       | 12      |
| MANITOBA, . . . . .             | 4        | 2       |
| BRITISH COLUMBIA, . . . . .     | 6        | 8       |
| PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, . . . . . | 6        | 4       |
| THE DOMINION, . . . . .         | 206      | 81      |

It requires the assent of all three branches of the Government (the Governor-General, the Senate, and the House of Commons) for any bill to become law; but the House of Commons alone has the privilege of introducing money bills.

The Dominion Government regulates all matters connected with trade and navigation, the customs and excise, the administration of justice, militia and defence, and the postal service, but the Provincial Governments have control of all local matters.

The commerce of Canada has largely increased, chiefly within the last ten years; the imports now amounting to about 130,000,000 dollars yearly; and the exports, consisting principally of grain and lumber, to about 90,000,000 dollars.

The annual revenue of the Dominion amounts to upwards of 20,000,000 dollars, and the expenditure to about the same. The debt is about 105,000,000 dollars, principally incurred by the construction of public works, and will be increased considerably by the expenditure necessary for the construction of the Canadian Pacific Railway.

From the revenue of the Dominion, subsidies are paid to the local Governments, which are as follows, after deducting the proportion of interest on the public debt due by them:—

|                                 |           |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| ONTARIO, . . . . .              | 1,242,302 |
| QUEBEC, . . . . .               | 913,824   |
| NEW BRUNSWICK, . . . . .        | 465,287   |
| NOVA SCOTIA, . . . . .          | 549,841   |
| BRITISH COLUMBIA, . . . . .     | 230,294   |
| PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, . . . . . | 280,841   |
| MANITOBA, . . . . .             | 70,363    |
|                                 | 8,752,757 |

The system of education in Canada is very complete, and is liberally supported by the Provincial Governments. There is a great number of colleges in the country, many of which possess University powers.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—DOMINION OF CANADA.—What large river flows into the Gulf of Georgia? What rivers flow into Lake Winnipeg? What river divides Ontario from Quebec? What large river is in New Brunswick? Name the lakes from west to east emptied by St. Lawrence

River? What rivers flow into the St. Lawrence on the north bank? What lakes are partly in Manitoba? What bay is between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? What strait is between Vancouver Island and the U.S.? What sound separates Queen Charlotte Is. from British Columbia?







 Pelee I.







There is no established religion in Canada, all denominations enjoying equal privileges.

Canada was first discovered by Jacques Cartier in 1535, and was taken possession of by him in the name of the King of France. Quebec and Montreal were the first towns founded by the French, and settlements were gradually extended into the country, with outposts at Niagara, Detroit, &c. After various vicissitudes, Quebec was taken by the British, under Wolfe, in 1759, and in 1763 Canada was ceded to Britain; the population then amounting to 69,000. Under the treaty, the French Canadians retain their own laws, except the criminal law, which is that of England, and are guaranteed equal rights with other British subjects. The French language, as well as the English, is still used in Parliament, in the law courts of Quebec, and in all public documents. The provinces were united under the name of the Dominion of Canada on the 1st of July 1867. By Her Majesty's decision, Ottawa was selected as the capital, and elegant Parliament buildings have been erected there at a large cost.

#### ONTARIO.

Area, about 180,000 square miles; population, 1,621,000; persons to square mile, 9.

Capital, Toronto.

ONTARIO, formerly called Upper or Western Canada, comprises that portion of the Dominion of Canada west and south of the Ottawa River extending to the Great Lakes, which separate it from the United States. It is divided into forty-five counties and three districts, which may be classed in three sections: those in the Western Peninsula, those on Lake Ontario, and those on the St Lawrence River.

The Western counties, or those occupying the peninsula nearly surrounded by Lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron, and Simcoe, are—

| Counties.                 | Chief Towns.  |
|---------------------------|---|
| ESSEX, . . .              | Sandwich, Windsor, Amherstburg.                           |
| KENT, . . .               | Chatham, Bothwell.  |
| *Bothwell, . . .          | Bothwell.   |
| ELGIN, . . .              | St Thomas, Port Stanley, Port Burwell, Aylmer.            |
| NORFOLK, . . .            | Simcoe, Port Dover, Port Rowan.                           |
| HALDIMAND, . . .          | Cayuga, Caledonia, Dunnville.                             |
| *Monck, . . .             | Dunnville.  |
| WELLAND, . . .            | (Welland, Thorold, Port Colborne, Clifton, Drummondville. |
| LINCOLN, . . .            | St Catharines, Niagara, Port Dalhousie.                   |
| WENTWORTH, . . .          | Hamilton, Dundas.   |
| HALTON, . . .             | Milton, Georgetown, Oakville.                             |
| PEEL, . . .               | Brampton, Streetsville, Port Credit.                      |
| *Cardwell, . . .          | Bolton.   |
| YORK, . . .               | Toronto, Newmarket, Aurora.                               |
| MIDDLESEX, . . .          | London, Strathroy, Lucan, Parkhill.                       |
| OXFORD, . . .             | Woodstock, Ingersoll, Norwich, Tilsonburg.                |
| BRANT, . . .              | Brantford, Paris.   |
| PERTH, . . .              | Stratford, St Mary's, Mitchell, Listowel.                 |
| WATERLOO, . . .           | Berlin, Galt, Preston, Waterloo, Ayr.                     |
| WELLINGTON, . . .         | (Guelph, Elora, Fergus, Orangeville, Mount Forest.        |
| LAMBTON, . . .            | Sarnia, Petrolia, Point Edward.                           |
| HURON, . . .              | Goderich, Clinton, Seaford.                               |
| BRUCE, . . .              | Walkerton, Southampton, Kincardine, Paisley.              |
| GREY, . . .               | Owen Sound, Durham, Meaford.                              |
| SIMCOE, . . .             | Barrie, Bradford, Collingwood, Orillia.                   |
| ALGOMA DISTRICT, . . .    | Sault Ste Marie, Parry Sound, Wellington Mines.           |
| MUSKOGEE DISTRICT, . . .  | Bracebridge.  |
| NIPISSENG DISTRICT, . . . |   |

\* The counties of Bothwell, Monck, and Cardwell are, properly speaking, only Parliamentary Ridings; the townships of which they are composed being still attached to other counties for municipal and other purposes.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—DOMINION OF CANADA.—What is the position of New Brunswick from Quebec? Of Prince Edward Island from New Brunswick? Of Nova Scotia from Newfoundland? In what direction is Winnipeg from Toronto? Montreal from Toronto? St John from Mont-

#### Central Counties on Lake Ontario.

| Counties.            | Chief Towns.   |
|----------------------|--|
| ONTARIO, . . .       | {Whitby, Oshawa, Uxbridge, Beaverton, Can-<br>nington. |
| DURHAM, . . .        | {Port Hope, Newcastle, Bowmanville, Millbrook.         |
| VICTORIA, . . .      | {Lindsay, Omemee, Bobcaygeon.                          |
| NORTUMBERLAND, . . . | {Cobourg, Brighton, Colborne.                          |
| PETERSBOROUGH, . . . | {Peterborough, Ashburnham, Hastings.                   |
| PRINCE EDWARD, . . . | {Picton.   |
| HASTINGS, . . .      | {Belleville, Trenton, Madoc, Stirling.                 |
| LENNOX, . . .        | {Napanee.  |
| ADDINGTON, . . .     | {Bath, Newburgh.                                       |
| FRONTENAC, . . .     | {Kingston, Portsmouth.                                 |

#### Eastern Counties between the Ottawa and St Lawrence Rivers.

|                  |                                       |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| LEEDS, . . .     | Brockville, Gananoque.                |
| LANARK, . . .    | Perth, Smith's Falls, Carleton Place. |
| RENFREW, . . .   | Pembroke, Renfrew, Arnprior.          |
| GRENVILLE, . . . | Prescott, Merrickville.               |
| DUNDAS, . . .    | Morrisburg, Iroquois.                 |
| CARLETON, . . .  | Ottawa, New Edinburgh.                |
| STORMONT, . . .  | Cornwall.                             |
| RUSSELL, . . .   | Russell.                              |
| GLENGARRY, . . . | Alexandria, Lancaster.                |
| PRESOTT, . . .   | L'Orignal, Hawkesbury.                |

In the north and north-western parts of the province are still vast tracts of unsurveyed lands, covered with the primeval forests, and where even the lumberman does not penetrate. Railways are being extended, new roads are being opened up every year, and settlements made, so that before long these districts will probably be as thickly peopled as the already-named counties.

The surface of Ontario is in general level, or gently undulating, with only sufficient rise to form a watershed for the rivers flowing north or south. From the Niagara River a ridge extends westward, at a short distance from Lake Ontario, as far as Hamilton, then turns northwards, terminating in the Blue Mountains, near Collingwood on Georgian Bay, where it attains the highest elevation in Ontario. A similar ridge separates the streams flowing into Lake Ontario from those flowing into Lakes Simcoe and Huron. The north shores of Lakes Huron and Superior are rugged and precipitous. The La Cloche Mountains are on the northern shore of Lake Huron.

The principal feature of Ontario is its great chain of inland lakes, forming, with the River St Lawrence, a continuous chain of water communication for 2000 miles.

|                                 | Length.    | Breadth.   | Area.             | Height above the sea. |
|---------------------------------|------------|------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| Superior, . . .                 | 355 miles. | 160 miles. | 31,400 sq. miles. | 600 feet.             |
| Huron, with Georgian Bay, . . . | 280 "      | 190 "      | 24,000 "          | 578 "                 |
| St Clair, . . .                 | 26 "       | 25 "       | 320 "             | 570 "                 |
| Erie, . . .                     | 240 "      | 80 "       | 10,000 "          | 565 "                 |
| Ontario, . . .                  | 180 "      | 65 "       | 7,800 "           | 232 "                 |
| Michigan, . . .                 | 320 "      | 80 "       | 25,600 "          | 573 "                 |

These lakes now form the great highway of commerce for Canada and the Western States of America, and the St Lawrence is the natural outlet for their productions.

The extent of country drained by the Lakes, although great, is small compared with their area, as no rivers of importance flow into them. They occupy the hollow between the watersheds from which the rivers of the North-West Territory to the north, and those of the United States to the south, flow; in many cases these rise within a few miles of the lakes, as in the case of the Illinois River near Lake Michigan.

real? Halifax from St John? What is the south-eastern point of Nova Scotia called? How is Prince Edward Island separated from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia? How is Vancouver Island separated from the mainland? What is the northern point of Vancouver Island called?

*Lake Superior* is the largest body of fresh water on the globe, and is remarkable for the extensive copper and silver mines on its shores; and for the Pictured Rocks, a high range of cliffs of various colors along its southern shore. The *River St Louis* flows into it at the extreme west end, and the *Nepigon River*, the outlet of *Lake Nepigon*, flows into it from the north. From *Fort William* a road has been constructed, which, with some stretches of lake navigation, extends to *Manitoba*. The *St Mary River* connects *Lake Superior* with *Lake Huron*, and near its outlet are the rapids of the *Sault Ste Marie*, to avoid which a canal has been made by the United States.

*Lake Huron* is noted for its extensive fisheries, white fish and salmon trout being chiefly taken; for its valuable copper-mines, the most important of which are the *Wellington* mines; and for its numerous islands, of which the *Manitoulin Islands*, belonging to the Indians, are the principal. On the east is *Georgian Bay*, separated from *Lake Huron* by a peninsula, and terminating in *Matchedash Bay*, *Nottawasaga Bay*, and *Owen Sound*. The *Nottawasaga River* flows into the bay of the same name. *Lake Simcoe* is drained into *Georgian Bay* by the *River Severn*, and *Lake Nipissing* by *French River*. The *Rivers Saugen* and *Maitland* flow into *Lake Huron* from the western peninsula. On the west coast of the lake is a deep inlet called *Saginaw Bay*. The principal towns on *Lake Huron* are *Goderich*, *Kincardine*, and *Southampton*, on the shore of the western peninsula; *Owen Sound*, *Meaford*, *Collingwood*, and *Parry Sound* on *Georgian Bay*; and *Saginaw* in *Michigan*. *Lake Huron* flows into *Lake St Clair* by the *St Clair River*, at the head of which is *Sarnia*.

*Lake St Clair* is a small shallow lake with a rapid current, and is dangerous for navigation. The *River Thames*, rising in *Perth* county, flows past *St Mary's*, *London*, and *Chatham* into it on the south-east. The *Detroit River* connects *Lake St Clair* with *Lake Erie*. It is about 30 miles long, and from one to two broad. *Windsor*, *Sandwich*, and *Amherstburg* are situated on it, and opposite *Windsor* is *Detroit*, on the United States side.

*Lake Erie* is remarkable for its sudden storms. It is the most shallow of the great lakes, its mean depth being less than 100 feet. It contains the *Islands Long Point* and *Pele*. The *Grand River* rises in the county of *Wellington*, and flows past *Elora*, *Galt*, *Paris*, *Brantford*, *Caledonia*, and *Dunnville*, into *Lake Erie* towards its north-eastern extremity, after a course of upwards of 100 miles. The principal towns on *Lake Erie* are *Port Stanley*, *Port Burwell*, *Port Dover*, and *Port Colborne*, on the Canadian side; and *Buffalo*, *Dunkirk*, *Érie*, *Cleveland*, *Sandusky*, and *Toledo*, on the United States side. *Lake Erie* is connected with *Lake Ontario* by the *Niagara River*, on which are the celebrated *Falls of Niagara*, distant from *Lake Ontario* about 14 miles. The river, at the outlet of *Lake Erie*, is about three-quarters of a mile wide, and flows with a rapid current. About a mile and a half above the *Falls* are *Grand* and *Navy Islands*. Below these islands a series of fierce rapids begin, until the whole volume of the river is precipitated over the *Falls*, a height of about 160 feet. The *Falls* are divided by a little island called *Goat Island*, the largest volume of water being on the Canadian side, and forming the "Horse-shoe Fall," so called from its semicircular form. The mass of water

which falls is enormous, and produces a deafening roar. The force of the current below the *Falls* is so great that its depth can never be sounded. After flowing in a rapid and turbulent stream, between lofty precipices, it forms the *Whirlpool*, and then flows with a smooth but rapid course towards *Lake Ontario*.

*Lake Ontario* is the smallest of the five great lakes, but is the most important for Canadian trade. *Burlington Bay*, on which *Hamilton* is built, is at the western extremity. On the north shore is the remarkable *Peninsula of Prince Edward*, nearly separated from the mainland by the *Bay of Quinté*, which is noted for its beautiful scenery. The *Trent*, *Moira*, and *Napanee Rivers* flow into the *Bay of Quinté*. The other rivers are numerous but small. The principal Canadian towns on *Lake Ontario* are *Hamilton*, *Toronto*, *Port Hope*, *Cobourg*, and *Kingston*; *Belleville* on the *Bay of Quinté*; and *Rochester*, *Oswego*, and *Sackett's Harbor* on the United States side.

*Lake Michigan* is entirely within the United States, but is connected with *Lake Huron* by the *Strait of Mackinaw*.

Besides these, there are: *Lake Simcoe*, connected with *Lake Huron*; and a chain of smaller lakes extending through *Victoria*, *Peterborough*, and other adjoining counties, and connected with the *Bay of Quinté* by the *River Trent*: *Lakes Nipissing*, *Temiscaming*, and others, are farther north.

The *St Lawrence* forms the outlet of the great chain of inland lakes, and flows from *Lake Ontario* into the *Gulf of St Lawrence*, a distance of about 750 miles. At the point where it issues from *Lake Ontario* it forms the *Lake of the "Thousand Islands,"* celebrated for variety, beauty, and picturesque scenery. Below this, and extending as far as *Montreal*, are several long and dangerous rapids, called the *Galops*, *Long Sault*, *Coteau*, *Cedars*, *Cascades*, and *Lachine*.

Steamers and rafts pass down these in safety, and vessels return by means of canals on the banks of the river. The *St Lawrence* is navigable for large sea-going ships up to *Montreal*. At *Quebec* it is two miles wide, and below that it gradually widens till it enters the *Gulf*. The *St Lawrence* has three large lake expansions on its course,—*Lakes St Francis*, *St Louis*, and *St Peter*,—and receives, besides the *Ottawa*, all the rivers in *Quebec*, as mentioned on page 18.

The *Ottawa* takes its rise under that name in *Lake Temiscaming*, and joins the *St Lawrence* at the *Island of Montreal* after a course of 350 miles, or including the chief feeder of *Lake Temiscaming*, of over 500 miles. It has numerous lake expansions, the principal being the *Allumettes*, *Chats*, *Chaudière*, and *Two Mountains*. The *Chaudière Falls* at *Ottawa* are very grand. Its principal tributaries are the *Petewahuch*, *Bonnechere*, *Madawaska*, and *Rideau* on the south, and the *Du Moine*, *Gatineau*, *Du Lièvre*, *Du Nord*, and *L'Assomption* on the north bank. It forms the boundary between *Ontario* and *Quebec* until near its mouth, and enters the *St Lawrence* by three branches, enclosing the *Islands of Montreal*, *Bizarre*, and *Jesus*.

*Ontario* was but thinly settled up to 1794, when *York*, now called *Toronto*, was founded. Its whole population then amounted only to about 65,000. Since then, and especially within the last ten years, it has increased very rapidly, and is now the most important province of the Dominion.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—*ONTARIO*.—What counties touch on *Lake Ontario*? On *Lake Erie*? On *Lake Huron*? On *Georgian Bay*? On *St Lawrence River*? On the *Ottawa River*? In what county is *Kingston*? *Toronto*? *London*? *Ottawa*? *St Catharines*? *Guelph*? *Windsor*?

*Sarnia*? *Niagara*? *Brookville*? *Belleville*? *Cobourg*? *Peterboro*? *Port Hope*? Name the principal towns on *Georgian Bay*. On *Lake Huron*. On the rivers *St Clair* and *Detroit*. On *Lake Erie*. On *Lake Ontario*. On the *St Lawrence*.



Agriculture and lumbering form the chief employments of the inhabitants. Large quantities of grain, principally wheat and barley, also of lumber, square timber, and ashea, are annually exported. Upper Canadian wheat, flour, and barley are considered among the best on the continent.

The mines of Ontario are very valuable, especially the copper and silver mines of Lakes Huron and Superior, although they have not hitherto been worked to the extent they might be. Gold is also found, but not in great quantity, in the vicinity of Madoc, in the county of Hastings. Valuable petroleum springs have been found in the western peninsula, at Oil-springs, Petrolia, Enniskillen, Bothwell, and other places, and are giving employment to a large number of men. The fisheries on Lake Huron are also extensive and valuable.

Salt-wells have been discovered at Goderich, Scaforth, and other places in the counties of Huron and Bruce, and yield large quantities of the purest salt.

The Legislature of Ontario consists of a Lieutenant-Governor with an Executive Council of 5 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 83 members. The Lieutenant-Governor is appointed by, and holds office during the pleasure of, the Governor-General of Canada; but cannot be removed within five years of his appointment without cause shown.

The Legislative Assembly is elected by the people, and continues, unless dissolved by the Lieutenant-Governor, for four years. There must be at least one session of the Assembly every year.

The annual revenue is about 3,000,000 dollars.

*Toronto* (65,000), situated on Lake Ontario, was founded in 1794 by General Simcoe, and then called York. It is the largest city, and the capital, of Ontario, and was one of the capitals of United Canada before Ottawa was chosen. It is distinguished for the number and elegance of its public buildings, amongst which are the University of Toronto, Trinity College, Knox College, Osgoode Hall, the Provincial Lunatic Asylum, and the Normal School. It is the seat of the law courts, and the centre of education for Ontario. It is entered by five railways, possesses a fine harbor, and carries on a large trade.

*Ottawa* (25,000), the present capital of the Dominion of Canada, is situated on the Ottawa River, just below the Chaudière Falls. It contains the new Parliament Buildings, erected at a cost of upwards of 3,000,000 dollars, and is celebrated for its beautiful situation. It is distant from Montreal 100 miles. The Rideau Canal connects it with Kingston, and just below the city are the Rideau Falls. It is the principal centre of the lumber trade, vast quantities of timber being floated down the Ottawa and its affluents.

*Kingston* (13,000), situated at the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario, just above the Lake of the "Thousand Isles," is one of the oldest cities in Ontario. It possesses several forts, being the only fortified town in the upper province. Its buildings are mostly of stone, which is found in the neighborhood in great abundance. It has two colleges, Queen's and Regiopolis, and carries on a large shipping trade.

*Hamilton* (30,000), situated at the head of Burlington Bay, is the second city in Ontario in population and commercial importance. It is well built, the principal buildings being of stone, and

has extensive waterworks. Being at the head of navigation on Lake Ontario, it has a large trade with the western peninsula.

*London* (20,000), on the Thames, is the principal city in the peninsula. It is situated in the midst of a populous and rich agricultural country. It has numerous fine buildings, and is the seat of Huron College.

*St Catharine's* (10,000) is beautifully situated on the Welland Canal, possesses mineral springs, and is a favorite resort for invalids and for summer residence.

*Dundas* (3120) near Hamilton, and *Galt* (3800) on the Grand River, are important manufacturing towns.

*Chatham* (5800) on the Thames, *Peterborough* (4600) and *Lindsay* (4000) in the interior, and *Belleville* (7300) on the Bay of Quinté, at the mouth of the Moira, carry on a large lumber trade.

*Cobourg* (4400) and *Port Hope* (5100) are important towns on Lake Ontario, and export lumber and produce. Victoria College is situated in Cobourg.

*Guelph* (6800) is the centre of a rich agricultural country, and carries on important manufactures.

*Brantford* (8100) on the Grand River, *Woodstock* (3980), *Ingersoll* (4000), and *Stratford* (4300) in the western peninsula, *Perth* (2400) on a branch of the Rideau, and *Brockville* (5100) on the St Lawrence, carry on a large local trade in grain and lumber.

*Niagara* (1600), the first capital of the old province of Upper Canada, is at the mouth of the Niagara River, in an extremely rich and fertile country, but is now of little importance.

*Collingwood* (2800) on Georgian Bay; *Goderich* (3900) on Lake Huron; *Port Stanley*, *Port Dover*, and *Port Colborne*, on Lake Erie, derive their importance from shipping. *Sarnia* (2900), on the St Clair River, is the western terminus of the Grand Trunk Railway; and *Windsor*, on the Detroit River, of the Great Western Railway. All the towns on Lake Ontario export grain and lumber.

What is the area of Ontario? Population? How many persons are there to a square mile? What does Ontario comprise? How is it bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. State how each county is bounded. Where are the chief towns situated? What is said of the unsurveyed lands? Describe the surface of Ontario. Point out the hills and ridges on the map. What form the principal features of Ontario? Name the great lakes. Which is the largest, &c.? Describe Lake Superior. Describe Lake Huron. Point out on the map the principal bays in it. The rivers flowing into it. What towns do they flow past, and what lakes do they drain? Point out the towns on its shores. How does Lake Huron empty? Describe Lake St Clair. What river flows into it? What towns does it flow past? Point them out on the map. How does Lake St Clair empty? Describe Lake Erie. Point out on the map the principal rivers flowing into it. What towns does it flow past? Point out the principal towns on Lake Erie.

How is it emptied? Describe the Falls of Niagara. Describe Lake Ontario, and point out its principal features. What rivers flow into it? What towns are on its shores? Point them out on the map. How is Lake Ontario drained? What other lakes are there? Point them out on the map. What is the outlet of Lake Ontario? Describe the St Lawrence. What lakes are in its course? What rivers flow into it? Describe the Ottawa. What lakes are in its course? Name its tributaries. What islands are at its mouth? When did Ontario begin to be settled? What is said of it? What are the chief employments of the inhabitants? What are the chief products? What is said of the minerals of Ontario? Of the petroleum springs? Of the fisheries? Of the salt-wells? How is Ontario governed? Who appoints the Lieutenant-Governor? For what term is the Legislative Assembly elected? What is the revenue? Describe the chief towns of Ontario? Point them out on the map. State where they are situated and for what noted.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—ONTARIO.—What large river and lake nearly connect Georgian Bay with the Ottawa River? What large islands are in Lake Huron? What islands are in Lake Erie? What peninsula in Lake Ontario? What lakes and rivers nearly surround the western peninsula?

What river forms the north-eastern boundary? What rivers separate Ontario from the United States? Which is the most southerly county of Ontario? In what direction does the Niagara River flow? The St Clair River? The Detroit River?

## QUEBEC.

Area, 210,000 square miles; population, 1,182,000;  
persons to square mile, 6.

Capital, QUEBEC.

The Province of QUEBEC, formerly Lower or Eastern Canada, comprises that portion of the Dominion of Canada which extends along the River St Lawrence from the Ottawa River to the Gulf of St Lawrence, and is bounded on the East and South by New Brunswick and the United States.

It is divided into 20 judicial districts, and these are again subdivided into 60 counties. To assist the memory, these may be classed thus:—Counties on the Ottawa; those on the North Bank of the St Lawrence; those on the South Bank; and those lying inland between the latter and the United States, usually called the Eastern Townships.

## Counties on the Ottawa.

| Counties.      | Chief Places.    | Counties: | Chief Places:  |
|----------------|------------------|-----------|----------------|
| PONTIAC,       | Bryson,          | JACQUES   | Point          |
| OTTAWA,        | Portage du Fort. | CARTIER,  | Claire,        |
| ARGENTEUIL,    | Aylmer, Hull,    | HOCHE-    | Lachfoe,       |
|                | Lachute,         | LAGA,     | Montreal,      |
|                | St Andrews,      |           | St Rose,       |
| TWO MOUNTAINS, | St Scholastique, | LAVAL,    | St Vincent-de- |
| VAUDREUIL,     | St Eustache,     |           | Paul.          |
| SOULANGES,     | Vaudreuil,       |           |                |
|                | Coteau Landing.  |           |                |

## Counties on the North Bank of the St Lawrence.

|               |               |              |                 |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|
| TERREDONNE,   | St Jerome,    | CHAMPLAIN,   | Batiscan,       |
|               | Terrebonne,   |              | St Anne,        |
|               | St Therese,   |              | Cap Saint,      |
| L'ASSOMPTION, | L'Assomption, | PORTNEUF,    | Portneuf,       |
|               | St Julien,    | QUEBEC,      | Quebec,         |
| MONTCALM,     | Rawdon,       | MONTMORENCY, | Chateau Richer, |
| JOLIETTE,     | Industry,     | CHARLEVOIX,  | St Paul's Bay,  |
| BERTHIER,     | Berthier,     |              | St Irénee,      |
|               |               | CHICOUTIMI,  | Chicoutimi,     |
| MASKINONGE,   | Rivière du    |              | Murray Bay,     |
|               | Loup,         | SAGUENAY,    | Tadoussac,      |
| ST MAURICE,   | Yamachiche,   |              |                 |
|               | Three Rivers. |              |                 |

## Counties on the South Bank of the St Lawrence.

|               |                 |              |                  |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| HUNTINGDON,   | Huntingdon,     | NICOLET,     | Becancour,       |
| CHATEAUGUAY,  | St Marine,      |              | Nicolet,         |
|               | Chateauguay,    | LOTBINIERE,  | Lotbiniere,      |
| NAPIERVILLE,  | Napierville,    |              | St Croix,        |
|               | St Remi,        | LEVIS,       | Point Levi,      |
| ST JOHN'S,    | St John's,      |              | St Hénédine,     |
| BEAUFORT,     | Beaufort,       | DORCHESTER,  | St Auselme,      |
| LAPRAIRIE,    | Laprairie,      | BELLECHASSE, | St Michel,       |
|               | Caughnawaga,    | MONTMAIGNY,  | St Thomas,       |
| CHAMBLY,      | Longueuil,      |              | St Jean Port     |
| VERCHERES,    | Verchères,      | L'ISLET,     | Joli,            |
|               | Sorel, St Ours, |              | L'Islet,         |
| RICHELIEU,    | St Hyacinthe,   | KAMOURASKA,  | Kamouraska,      |
| ST HYACINTHE, | St Marie,       |              | Isle Verte,      |
| ROUVILLE,     | St Athanase,    | TEMISCOUATA, | Rivière du Loup, |
| ISERVILLE,    | St Hugues,      |              | Cacouna,         |
| BACOT,        | St François,    | RIMOUSKI,    | Rimouski,        |
|               | Yamaska,        | GASPE,       | Percé,           |
| YAMASKA,      | La Baie,        |              | Gaspé,           |
|               |                 | BOUAVENTURE, | New Carlisle.    |

## Eastern Townships.

|             |                |            |              |
|-------------|----------------|------------|--------------|
| MISSISQUOI, | Frelighsburg,  | BEAUCE,    | St François, |
|             | Bedford,       |            | La Beauce,   |
| BROME,      | Knowlton,      | WOLFE,     | Dudswell,    |
| SHEFFORD,   | Waterloo,      |            | Sherbrooke,  |
| DRUMMOND,   | Drummondville, | RICHMOND,  | Richmond,    |
| ARTHABASKA, | St Christophe, | COMPTON,   | Cook-hire,   |
|             | Leeds Village, |            | Compton,     |
| MEGANTIC,   | Inverness,     | STANSTEAD, | Stanstead,   |
|             |                |            | Coaticook.   |

The Island of Bonaventure, to the east of Gaspé, is an

important fishing station. The *Magdalen Islands*, situated in the Gulf of St Lawrence, 50 miles north of Prince Edward Island, are high and rugged, but important for the fisheries which are carried on by the inhabitants, who are of French descent, and number about 3200. *Anticosti* is a barren and almost uninhabited island. The principal islands, besides these, are in the St Lawrence and Ottawa Rivers; the *Island of Montreal*, on which the city is built, and the islands *Bizarre* and *Jesus*, adjoining it, the *Island of Orleans*, just below Quebec, and *Isle aux Coudres*, *Hare* and *Bic Islands*, and a few others lower down, are in the St Lawrence; and the islands *Calumet* and *Allumette* in the Ottawa.

The surface of Quebec is much more mountainous than that of Ontario; the rivers also are larger, and lakes numerous but small.

The *Notre Dame Mountains*, a continuation of the White Mountains of New Hampshire, extend (under various names, as the *Shickabock* and *Ste Anne Mountains*) to the extremity of Gaspé, where they form an elevated tableland 1500 feet high. Their principal summits are Mount Logan and Mount Murray, nearly 4000 feet high. In the more southern part of the range, in the eastern townships, they are capable of cultivation to their summits, and are generally low and rolling, rather than rugged. The *Laurentide Hills* are a rugged range of hills, skirting the north bank of the St Lawrence in the lower part of its course, and extending from Labrador to near Quebec, where they leave the river, but still keep nearly parallel with it, until about 30 miles west of Montreal, when, skirting the Ottawa for about 100 miles, they cross it and curve round to near Kingston. From there, the range again extends north-westward to the shores of Lakes Huron and Superior. Their average height is about 1300 feet, but some of their summits below the city of Quebec rise to nearly 3000 feet. They are remarkable for the numerous small lakes which they enclose, many of which are yet unexplored, although upwards of 1000 are already laid down on the maps. The hills are generally covered to their summits with dense forests of pine.

The principal rivers are on the north side of the St Lawrence.

The *St Maurice* rises in a number of small lakes near the boundary of the Hudson Bay Territory, and falls into the St Lawrence at Three Rivers. It is over 400 miles in length. Twenty-four miles above Three Rivers is the Fall of Shawenegan, 150 feet high.

The *Saguenay* rises in Lake St John, issuing in two streams, which unite after a few miles. It flows into the St Lawrence at Tadoussac, after a course of 100 miles, or, including, under the same name, the chief feeder of Lake St John, of over 300 miles. It is celebrated for its beautiful scenery, stupendous cliffs forming the banks in some places, and is of great depth. It is 2½ miles wide at its mouth. About 60 miles from its mouth is Ha-Ha Bay, celebrated for its scenery.

Besides these, also on the north bank, are the *Batiscan*, entering the St Lawrence at Batiscan, *Jacques Cartier*, *Ste Anne*, and *Montmorency*, the latter entering the St Lawrence a little below Quebec, and celebrated for the beautiful Falls at its mouth, 250 feet high, and for the natural steps on its rocky banks. On the south side are the *Richelieu*, draining the beautiful and celebrated Lake Champlain, and entering Lake St Peter at Sorel; the *St Francis*, *Chaudière*, in which gold has recently been discovered, *Chateauguay*, *Yamaska*, and *Becancour*.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—QUEBEC.—Which counties adjoin New Brunswick? Which adjoin the United States? Which is the most easterly point of Quebec? What large bay is between the eastern part of Quebec and New Brunswick? What islands are in St Lawrence River below

Quebec? Which of the United States does Quebec adjoin? What lake is in the south of Quebec mostly in the United States? What lake expansion of the St Lawrence is between Montreal and Quebec? What rivers flow into the St Lawrence below Quebec? Above Quebec?













The principal lakes are *St John*, the source of the *Saguenay*, *Temiscouata*, *Megantic*, and *Memphremagog*. The northern part of *Lake Champlain* is also in the province of Quebec.

Owing to the severity of the climate, the north bank of the *St Lawrence* below the *Saguenay* is almost incapable of cultivation, but the south bank is better settled and more cultivated. Copper is found extensively in the eastern townships, and gold lately to some extent on the *Chaudière* and in other places.

Quebec derives its chief importance from its commercial position, its lumber trade, and fisheries. As the rapids on the *St Lawrence* obstruct navigation for large sea-going vessels beyond *Montreal*, the latter has become the commercial emporium for the west. The fisheries of the *St Lawrence* are very valuable, consisting chiefly of cod, mackerel, herring, salmon, and seals. Lumbering is carried on extensively along the shores of all the rivers; the timber being floated down the *Ottawa* and *St Lawrence* in rafts to Quebec, whence it is shipped. Quebec is also the market for all the timber from Western Canada, and carries on extensive shipbuilding.

The Legislature of Quebec consists of a Lieutenant-Governor, and of two Houses, the Legislative Council and the Legislative Assembly. The Lieutenant-Governor is appointed by the Governor-General of Canada, and is assisted by an Executive Council of 7 members. The Legislative Council is composed of 24 members, appointed by the Lieutenant-Governor, for life. The Legislative Assembly is composed of 65 members, and is elected by the people for the term of four years, if not sooner dissolved by the Lieutenant-Governor.

The annual revenue is about 2,000,000 dollars.

Quebec (65,000), the oldest city in Canada, and capital of the province of Quebec, stands on a high promontory formed by the junction of the *St Charles* with the *St Lawrence*. It is the best fortified city in North America, and is celebrated for its picturesque appearance, and for the beautiful scenery in the neighborhood. Near the city are the *Plains of Abraham*, memorable as the scene of a celebrated battle between the English and French, and for the death of both commanders, Wolfe and *Montcalm*. The *St Lawrence* is here two miles wide, and navigable for ships of the greatest draught. Quebec derives its importance from its shipping, shipbuilding, and timber trade.

*Montreal* (125,000), the largest and most important city in Canada, is situated on an island of the same name at the junction of the *Ottawa* with the *St Lawrence*. It is beautifully situated at the foot of a hill called the "*Mountain*," from which it took its name, *Mont Real* or *Royal Mountain*. It is noted for its numerous large buildings, mostly of stone, and possesses a magnificent quay along the river, more than three miles long. It has several universities and colleges, many beautiful churches and other public buildings.

Near *Montreal* is the famous *Victoria Bridge*, the largest iron tubular bridge in the world, erected on twenty-four piers, and nearly two miles in length. It is 60 feet high in the centre, and steamboats and other vessels can pass under it with ease. It crosses the *St Lawrence* on the line of the *Grand Trunk Railway*, overcoming the difficulties of the ice in the winter, and forming unbroken communication between the east and west.

*Three Rivers* (8400), so called from the *St Maurice*, which

here joins the *St Lawrence* by three mouths, is one of the oldest cities in Canada, carries on extensive iron manufactures, and has a large lumber trade.

*Sorel* (5600), *Sherbrooke* (6000), *Coteau du Lac*, and *Stanstead* are important towns with local trade; *St Hyacinthe* (5000) is a manufacturing city; *St John's* (3000) is a rising town; *Rimouski* (2300) carries on a large shipping and lumber trade; *Caughnawaga* and *St Regis* are Indian villages.

What is the area of Quebec? Population? How many persons are there to a square mile? What is the capital of Quebec? How is Quebec bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief places. How is each county bounded? How are they classed? What islands belong to Quebec? Describe them. Where are they situated? Describe the surface of Quebec. Describe the mountains. Trace them on the map. Describe the course of the *St Maurice River*. Trace it on the map. Describe the course of the *Saguenay*. Trace it on the map. Name the other principal rivers. Trace them on the map. Where do they rise? Name the principal lakes. Where are they situated? Describe the climate and soil of Quebec. Minerals. From what does Quebec derive its importance? What is said of the *St Lawrence*? Of the fisheries? Of lumbering? How is Quebec governed? Who appoints the Lieutenant-Governor? Who appoints the Legislative Council? Who elect the Legislative Assembly? What is the revenue? Describe the principal towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Describe the *Victor Bridge*.

#### NEW BRUNSWICK.

Area, 27,700 square miles; population, 236,000; persons to square mile, 10; greatest extent from north to south, 210 miles; and from east to west, 190 miles.

#### Capital FREDERICTON.

The Province of NEW BRUNSWICK is bounded on the North by Quebec and the Bay of Chaleur; on the West by the same province and the United States; on the South by the Bay of Fundy; and on the East by the Gulf of *St Lawrence*, *Northumberland Strait*, and *Nova Scotia*, with which it is connected by the *Isthmus of Chignecto*, 14 miles wide. It is divided into 14 counties, which, with their chief towns, are:—

#### Counties on the Bay of Fundy.

| Counties.  | Chief Places.                                | Counties. | Chief Places.                              |
|------------|--|-----------|--|
| CHARLOTTE, | { <i>St Andrews</i> ,<br><i>St Stephen</i> . | ALBERT,   | { <i>Hopewell</i> ,<br><i>Hillsboro'</i> . |
| ST JOHN,   | { <i>St John</i> ,<br><i>Carleton</i> .      |           |  |

#### Counties in the Interior.

|          |   |         |  |
|----------|---|---------|--|
| KING'S,  | { <i>Kington</i> ,<br><i>Hampton</i> ,<br><i>Sussex</i> . | SENECA, | <i>Oromocto</i> .                          |
| QUEEN'S, | <i>Gagetown</i> .   | YORK,   | { <i>Fredericton</i> ,<br><i>Stanley</i> . |

#### Counties in the West.

|           |                    |           |                      |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| CARLETON, | <i>Woodstock</i> . | VICTORIA, | <i>Grand Falls</i> . |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------|----------------------|

#### Counties on the Gulf of St Lawrence.

|               |   |                 |   |
|---------------|---|-----------------|---|
| WESTMORELAND, | { <i>Dorchester</i> ,<br><i>Moncton</i> ,<br><i>Shediac</i> ,<br><i>Sackville</i> . | KENT,           | { <i>Richibucto</i> ,<br><i>Buctouche</i> .                       |
|               |   | NORTHUMBERLAND, | { <i>Newcastle</i> ,<br><i>Chatham</i> ,<br><i>Douglasstown</i> . |

#### Counties in the North.

|              |   |             |                   |
|--------------|---|-------------|-------------------|
| RESTIGOUCHE, | { <i>Dalhousie</i> ,<br><i>Campbelltown</i> . | GLOUCESTER, | <i>Bathurst</i> . |
|--------------|---|-------------|-------------------|

The surface of New Brunswick is generally undulating, rather than hilly, and covered with vast forests. There are some hills in the northern counties, also north of *St John*, and along the Bay of Fundy; but they nowhere rise to any great height. The rivers, with their lake expansions, are numerous, and some of them navigable for vessels of considerable size.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—QUEBEC.—Name the principal cities and towns on *St Lawrence River*? In what direction from *Montreal* is *Sherbrooke*? *St Hyacinthe*? *Stanstead*? *Quebec*? *Sorel*? *Three Rivers*? *Ottawa*? In what direction from Quebec is *Caouana*? *Bathurst*? *Tadou-*

*sac*? *Gaspé*? *Rimouski*? What mountains are in the east of Quebec? Name the principal lakes of Quebec? Where does the *Richelieu River* rise? What islands are at the mouth of the *Ottawa River*? On what island is *Montreal* built? What river flows into the *St Lawrence* at Quebec?

The *St John River* has its sources in Quebec and Maine, and after a circuitous course of 450 miles, enters the Bay of Fundy at St John. It is celebrated for its beautiful scenery, and is navigable up to Fredericton, 85 miles, for vessels of considerable size, and to Woodstock and Grand Falls for smaller vessels. It receives on the left bank the waters of *Lake Temiscouata*, in Quebec, the *Tobique*, *Salmon River*, expanding into *Grand Lake*, *Washedemoak*, and *Kennebecasis*, and on the right bank the *Acroostock* and *Oromocto*.

The *Restigouche* forms part of the northern boundary between New Brunswick and Quebec, and after a course of 200 miles falls into the Bay of Chaleur, flowing past Campbelltown and Dalhousie.

The *Miramichi*, 220 miles long, flows past Newcastle, Douglastown, and Chatham, near its mouth, into Miramichi Bay. The *Petitcodiac*, 100 miles long, flows into Shepody Bay; Moncton is situated at the bend of the river. The *St Croix*, rising in Grand Lake, and flowing into the Bay of Fundy, 125 miles long, forms part of the boundary between New Brunswick and the United States.

The coast-line of New Brunswick is deeply indented with a great number of fine bays and harbors, but has few islands.

*The principal Bays are:—*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Bay of Chaleur</i> , so called from the heat experienced there by the first discoverers; <i>Miramichi Bay</i> , <i>Richibucto Harbor</i> , <i>Bouchette Harbor</i> , <i>Shediac Bay</i> , and | <i>Bay Verte</i> , on the north-east coast; <i>Shepody Bay</i> , <i>Chignecto Bay</i> , <i>St John Harbor</i> , and <i>Passamaquoddy Bay</i> , on the Bay of Fundy. |
|--|---|

The *Bay of Fundy* is an arm of the sea extending into the land between New Brunswick and Nova Scotia, and terminated by two smaller bays, *Chignecto* and *Minas Basin*. Its length, to the head of Chignecto Bay, is 140 miles, and its greatest breadth 45 miles. It is remarkable for the rapid rise of its tides, caused by the current of the Gulf Stream, and varying from 30 feet at St John to 60 feet at the head of Chignecto Bay, into which it rushes with great rapidity. At Bay Verte, in the Gulf of St Lawrence, distant only 14 miles, the rise is not more than four or five feet.

*The principal Capes are:—*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Point Miscou</i> , <i>Escuminac</i> , <i>Richibucto Head</i> , <i>Shediac Point</i> , <i>Cape Tormentin</i> , on the north-east; | <i>Cape Spencer</i> and <i>Point Lepreau</i> , on the south. |
|---|--|

*The principal Islands are:—*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Miscou</i> and <i>Shippegan</i> , at the north-east extremity; <i>Portage</i> , in Miramichi Bay; <i>Campobello</i> , in | <i>Passamaquoddy Bay</i> ; and <i>Grand Manan Island</i> , at the mouth of the Bay of Fundy. |
|---|--|

The climate of New Brunswick resembles that of the more southern parts of Quebec. The influence of the Gulf Stream in the Bay of Fundy renders it milder on the southern coast; but during the summer fogs prevail on the coast, which do not, however, extend inland. The soil is productive and well cultivated, especially along the courses of the rivers.

The chief source of the wealth of New Brunswick consists in its valuable forests, lumbering being carried on very extensively. The value of the forest products exported annually amounts to over 3,000,000 dols. The lumber consists chiefly of spruce and pine, and timber for shipbuilding. Most of the spruce is sawn into deals, affording employment to a large num-

ber of men. Shipbuilding is also an important branch of industry, and is carried on chiefly at St John and Miramichi. The number of vessels built annually amounts to more than 100, valued at 2,000,000 dols., most of them being large sea-going vessels.

New Brunswick also contains valuable mines of coal, iron, gypsum, and building-stone. The most extensive coal-mines are in Albert county.

The fisheries of New Brunswick are also very valuable, producing over 2,000,000 dols. annually.

There are several lines of railway in New Brunswick,—the Intercolonial, connecting St John with Nova Scotia and Quebec, and traversing the northern and eastern parts of the province; the European and North American, connecting St John with the United States on the south; and the New Brunswick and Canada Railway from St Andrews to Woodstock, thence to connect with Rivière du Loup in Quebec; these, with various branches, form a complete system of railway communication.

The annual imports exceed 10,000,000 dols., and exports 6,000,000 dols. The revenue amounts to about 570,000 dols. annually. The form of government of New Brunswick is the same as that of Quebec. The Legislative Council consists of 17 members, appointed by the Crown, and the Legislative Assembly of 41 members, chosen by the people. The Lieutenant-Governor is assisted by an Executive Council of 8 members. Education is under the control of the Government, and is liberally supported. There is a university at Fredericton.

New Brunswick formerly belonged to France, forming, with Nova Scotia and Prince Edward Island, the colony of Acadia. It was ceded to Britain by the treaties of 1713 and 1763, and formed into a separate province in 1784. It has of late progressed rapidly, especially in the northern and north-eastern counties, which, but a few years ago, were uninhabited except by Indians. These counties have been devastated by fearful fires in the woods, the worst occurring in 1825, when 160 persons were burned to death, and 1,000,000 dols. in property destroyed. The Indians of New Brunswick are not numerous. They belong to the tribe of the Micmacs.

*St John* (including Carleton and Portland, 45,000), situated near the mouth of the St John River, with Carleton on the opposite side of the river, possesses a fine harbor, accessible to vessels of the largest size at all seasons of the year. The city is well built, and contains many fine public edifices. The St John River here contracts, and forms the Narrows, through which the tide flows with great violence and danger to vessels. A suspension bridge crosses the river at this point, connecting Carleton with St John. The principal lumber and shipbuilding trades are carried on here.

*Fredericton* (6000), situated on the St John River, about 85 miles from St John, is the capital. It is encircled by hills, rendering its situation very picturesque. It contains the Government buildings and the University of New Brunswick.

*Chatham* or *Miramichi* (2500), *Newcastle* (2000), and *Moncton* (1400) are important for shipbuilding; *Richibucto* and *Shediac* for the fisheries; and *St Andrews* and *St Stephen*, each about 2000 in population, for trade with the United States. *Woodstock* (2000) and *Gagetown*, on the St John River, and *Bathurst*, *Dalhousie*, and *Campbelltown*, on the Bay of Chaleur, are rising towns of some importance.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—NEW BRUNSWICK.—How is New Brunswick separated from Nova Scotia? From Prince Edward Island? From the United States? Between what parallels of latitude is it situated? What counties adjoin Quebec? The United States? In what direction from St

John is Fredericton? Shediac? St Andrews? St Stephen? In what direction from Fredericton is Woodstock? Gagetown? In what direction from Shediac is Richibucto? Chatham? Campbelltown? In what direction from Miramichi (Chatham) is Fredericton? Bathurst? Dalhousie?







NOVA SCOTIA, NEW BRUNSWICK  
& PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

English Miles

Longitude West 04 from Greenwich

Subie I.

What is the area of New Brunswick? Population? How many persons are there to a square mile? What is its extent? Capital? How is New Brunswick bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. How is each county bounded? Where are the chief towns situated? Describe the surface of New Brunswick. What is said of the hills? Of the rivers? Describe the course of the St John River. Trace it on the map. What towns does it flow past? Describe the course of the Restigouche. Trace it on the map. What towns does it flow past? Describe the courses of the other principal rivers. Trace them on the map. What towns do they flow past? Describe the coast-line of New Brunswick.

Name the principal bays. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Describe the Bay of Fundy. For what is it remarkable? Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of New Brunswick. The soil. What is the chief source of the wealth of New Brunswick? What is said of shipbuilding? Of the mines? Of the fisheries? Of railways? What is said of imports, revenue, &c.? What is the form of government? What is said of education? What historical facts are stated about New Brunswick? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

## NOVA SCOTIA.

Area, 19,500 square miles; population, 388,000; persons to a square mile, 20; greatest extent from north-east to south-west, including Cape Breton, 350 miles, and greatest breadth, 120 miles.

Capital, HALIFAX.

The Province of NOVA SCOTIA comprises the peninsula of Nova Scotia proper, and the adjoining Island of Cape Breton. It is bounded on the North by the Gulf of St Lawrence; on the West by New Brunswick and the Bay of Fundy; and on the South and East by the Atlantic Ocean.

It is divided into 14 counties, with their chief towns, are:—

## Counties on the East Coast.

| Counties.  | Chief Towns. | Counties.    | Chief Towns.  |
|------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| SHELBURNE, | Shelburne.   | HALIFAX,     | Halifax.      |
| QUEEN'S,   | Liverpool.   | GUYSBOROUGH, | Guy'sborough. |
| LUNenburg, | Lunenburg.   |              |               |

## Counties on the West.

| Counties.  | Chief Towns. | Counties.   | Chief Towns. |
|------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| YARMOUTH,  | Yarmouth.    | CUMBERLAND, | Amherst.     |
| DIOBY,     | Digby.       | COLCHESTER, | Truro.       |
| ANNAPOLIS, | Annapolis.   | PICTOU,     | Pictou.      |
| KING'S,    | Kentville.   |             | New Glasgow. |
| HANTS,     | Windsor.     | ANTIGONISH, | Antigonish.  |

The Island of Cape Breton is divided into four counties:—

| Counties.    | Chief Towns. | Counties.  | Chief Towns. |
|--------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| RICHMOND,    | Arichat.     | VICTORIA,  | Baddeck.     |
| CAPE BRETON, | Sydney.      | INVERNESS, | Port Hood.   |

The surface of Nova Scotia is mountainous, varied with rich and fertile valleys. Several chains of high hills intersect the country, generally parallel with the coast-line. The *Cobequid Mountains* are the principal chain, and stretch from east to west along the peninsula which connects Nova Scotia with New Brunswick, terminating in Cape Chignecto. Some of their summits are 1100 feet high. The *North and South Mountains* extend, in parallel lines, along the shore of the Bay of Fundy, and an irregular range of small hills extends from the Gut of Canso southward. The general slope of the country is in a south-easterly direction, the Cobequid Mountains forming the highest land. The shores of the Atlantic are generally low and barren, but rich in minerals. There are several chains of lakes in the south-east, giving rise to numerous rivers, which are, however, necessarily short.

Cape Breton is, in general, level, but with lofty, rugged promontories towards the sea, especially on the north. The coast-line is much broken, and the island is nearly cut in two by the

*Bras d'Or Lake*, which runs from north to south, and is only separated from St Peter's Bay, on the south, by a narrow neck of land less than half a mile wide. A canal is to be constructed across this peninsula. This lake is connected with the Atlantic, on the north, by the *Great and Little Bras d'Or Channels*, between which is the Island of *Boularderie*.

The principal lakes in Nova Scotia are *Lake Rossignol*, the largest, 20 miles in length, in Queen's County, and *Grand and Ship Harbor Lakes*, in Halifax County. Smaller lakes are numerous, and generally occur in chains, connected by small rivers. The *Bras d'Or Lake*, so called, may be more properly termed an arm of the sea.

## The principal Rivers in Nova Scotia are:—

*St Mary's*, *Musquodoboit*, *La Hare* and *Liverpool*, flowing into the Atlantic; the *Annapolis*, flowing between the North and South Mountains, into Annapolis Basin; the *Avon*, into the basin of Minas; *St Peter's*, into Cape Breton.

The coast-line of Nova Scotia, as well as that of Cape Breton, is much broken, and deeply indented with numerous bays and harbors, except on the side of the Bay of Fundy, where it is more compact, and possesses few harbors.

## The principal Bays, Harbors, and Straits are:—

*Bay Verte*, *Tatmagouche*, and *St George's Bays*, in Northumberland Strait; *Chedabucto Bay*, at the entrance of the *Gut of Canso*, a narrow strait separating Nova Scotia from Cape Breton; *Halifax Harbor*, *Margaret's* and *Mahone Bays*, on the south-east coast; *St Mary's Bay*, on the south-west; *Annapolis Basin*, *Minas Channel* and *Basin*, and *Cobequid Bay*, on the west; and Bay of Fundy (see page 20). The chief inlets in Cape Breton are *Aspy Bay*, *St Anne's Bay*, *Sydney Harbor*, *Miré Bay*, and *St Peter's Bay*.

The islands of Nova Scotia, besides Cape Breton, are *Cari-bou* and *Pictou Islands*, in Northumberland Strait; *St Paul*, *Scatari*, and *Isle Madame*, off the coast of Cape Breton; *Sable Island*, a dangerous sandy island, 150 miles east of Halifax, on which is an effective humane establishment, provided by the Provincial Government; *Cape Sable*, *Seal*, and *Mud Islands*, in the south; *Long Island*, at the mouth of St Mary's Bay.

In the south of St Peter's Bay is *Isle Madame*, with *Arichat Harbor*, important to fishermen in stormy weather.

## The principal Capes are:—

*Malagash*, *John*, *St George*, on the north coast; *Porcupine*, *Canso*, *Sambro Head*, *Pennant Point*, *Crown Point*, and *La Have*, on the south-east; *Sable*, on the south; *St Mary*, *Split*, *Chignecto*, and *Blomidon*, on the west. In Cape Breton are *St Lawrence*, *North*, *Egmont*, *Murgain*, and *Breton*.

Many of these capes form rugged promontories, rising to the height of 500 feet. The whole of the coast, especially on the Atlantic side, is bold and rocky, and lined with dangerous reefs.

The climate of Nova Scotia is milder than that of the neighboring provinces, owing to its being nearly surrounded with water, and to the influence of the Gulf Stream. The harbors on the Atlantic are seldom closed by ice in winter.

The soil in the valleys and on the mountain slopes is rich and fruitful, but towards the Atlantic coast it is rocky and less fertile. Oats, potatoes, and hay are the principal agricultural products; apples grow abundantly in the west; and cattle are extensively reared.

Nova Scotia is the most important of the eastern provinces of the Dominion for the extent and variety of its mineral produc-

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—NOVA SCOTIA.—How is Nova Scotia separated from Cape Breton? From New Brunswick? From Prince Edward Island? What is the extreme southern point of Cape Breton called? What is the extreme northern point called? What large bays are on the north-east of

Nova Scotia? What bay is on the south-west? Name the principal harbors on the Atlantic coast. What bays are at the head of the Bay of Fundy? What county adjoins New Brunswick? What islands lie to the north-east of Cape Breton? What gulf are they in?



tions. Gold, iron, coal, and gypsum are found to a greater extent than in any of the other provinces. It also contains copper and building-stone to a large extent. The quantity of coal, gypsum, &c., annually exported, besides what is retained for home consumption, is valued at 1,000,000 dols.; and the total quantity of coal raised is about 600,000 tons annually. The principal coal-mines are in Cape Breton Island and Pictou County. Iron and coal are found in the Cohequid Mountains, and iron largely in Annapolis and Pictou Counties. Gold is found along most of the Atlantic coast, but is worked chiefly in Gnyaborough, Halifax, and Lunenburg Counties.

Nova Scotia has also the most extensive fisheries of all the provinces except Newfoundland. The principal are the cod, mackerel, and salmon fisheries. The exports of fish are chiefly to the West Indies and the Southern States of America, and amount to over 6,500,000 dols., affording employment to about 19,000 men.

There are two lines of railway in Nova Scotia: the Inter-colonial line, from Halifax to New Brunswick, with a branch line from Truro to Pictou; the other from Halifax to Windsor, now extended to Annapolis. A railway is also in course of construction between Sydney and Louisburg in Cape Breton.

The annual imports of Nova Scotia are about 12,000,000 dols., and exports, 8,000,000 dols.; revenue, 750,000 dols. The form of government is the same as in the other provinces. The Legislative Council consists of 18 members, appointed by the Crown, and the Legislative Assembly of 33 members, elected by the people. The Lieutenant-Governor is assisted by an Executive Council of 9 members.

Education is carefully attended to, and supported by government grants. There are five colleges.

Nova Scotia was first settled by the French, but has changed ownership several times, having been taken four different times by the British, and as often relinquished, until France, in 1713, renounced all claim to the country. The French, however, still retained the Island of Cape Breton, with the fortified town of Louisburg, which was not taken by the English till 1758. Nova Scotia, Cape Breton, Prince Edward Island, and New Brunswick, then formed the Colony of Acadia, and it was not till 1784 that they were formed into separate colonies. In 1819 Cape Breton was reunited to Nova Scotia.

*Halifax* (35,000), the capital, is situated on the west side of a deep and capacious harbor, formerly called Chebucto Bay. It was founded by Lord Cornwallis in 1749, when about 4000 colonists were sent out from Britain. It is built on the side of a steep hill, crowned by the citadel, and is, next to Quebec, the most strongly fortified city in the Dominion. It contains many fine edifices,—the Parliament and other public buildings, churches, &c. It has also Her Majesty's Dockyard, and is the naval station for the North American and West Indian fleets,—the Admiral generally residing here during the summer. It carries on the principal shipping trade.

*Pictou* (3500), and the adjacent town, *New Glasgow* (3000), derive their importance from the extensive coal-mines in the neighborhood. During the season of navigation their harbors are crowded with shipping. The coal was formerly chiefly exported to the United States, but since the expiry of the Reciprocity Treaty, new markets have been formed for it. Pictou has steam communication with Quebec.

*Sydney, C.B.* (3000), is also important as the centre of ex-

tensive coal-mines, from which coal is extensively exported, chiefly to the neighboring colonies.

*Yarmouth* (4200), *Liverpool* (2900), and *Lunenburg* (3000), have a large amount of shipping, and are extensively engaged in the fisheries. *Windsor* (3000) exports large quantities of gypsum, and is the seat of the principal college. *Annapolis*, formerly Port Royal, was, under the French, the principal city in Nova Scotia, and was the scene of several conflicts. *Truro*, *Amherst*, *Antigonish*, and *Pugwash* are important rising towns. Truro contains the Provincial Normal School.

What is the area of Nova Scotia? Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What are the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated. What is said of the Isle Madame? Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What is said of some of them? Describe the climate of Nova Scotia. The soil. The products. For what is Nova Scotia important? What minerals does it contain? Where are they chiefly found? What is said of the fisheries? Of the railways? Trace their course on the map. What financial statistics are given? What is the form of government? What is said of education, &c.? What historical facts are given? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

#### PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

Area, 2133 square miles; population, 94,000; persons to square mile, 44, greatest extent from east to west, 130 miles; and from north to south, 34 miles.

Capital, *CHARLOTTETOWN*.

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND is situated in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, to the north of Nova Scotia, and between New Brunswick and Cape Breton. It is separated from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia by Northumberland Strait, which is 130 miles long, and from 9 to 30 miles wide. It is divided into three counties—*King's*, *Queen's*, and *Prince's*, which are subdivided into 67 lots or townships.

The surface of Prince Edward Island is gently undulating, except in certain central districts which may be considered hilly; the whole presenting a charming agricultural aspect of hill and dale.

Its northern outline resembles a crescent, the two horns being called *North* and *East Capes*. It is deeply indented with bays, the largest of which, *Hillsborough* on the south, and *Richmond* on the north, nearly divide it into three parts. It has also numerous harbors, the principal of which are *Charlottetown*, *Georgetown*, *Bedecque*, *Port Hill*, *Cascumpce*, and *Souris*.

The climate is temperate and healthy, and the soil remarkably fertile, and favorable for agriculture. Prince Edward Island has more land under cultivation, in proportion to its size, than any of the other provinces. Potatoes, oats, and barley are the staple productions, and are largely exported.

The lots or townships were originally granted by the British Government to certain proprietors, nearly 100 in number, on certain conditions, which have never been fulfilled, thus originating a "land question" which is now in course of settlement by a Government commission. Many of the townships have

polys is Liverpool? Truro? St John, N.B.? In what direction from Truro is Amherst? Antigonish? Where is Arichat situated? Where is Louisburg situated? What rivers flow into the Atlantic? What island is in the Bay of Fundy?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—NOVA SCOTIA.—Between what meridians is Nova Scotia, including Cape Breton, situated? Between what parallels of latitude? In what direction from Halifax is Pictou? Annapolis? Yarmouth? Windsor? Sydney, C.B.? In what direction from Anna-



passed out of the hands of the original proprietors, and the leasehold system, which was formerly in practice, is disappearing year by year. The fertility of the soil will induce a large population to make the island their permanent home, and it is already the most densely peopled of the British North American provinces. Shipbuilding is carried on largely; and the fisheries in the Gulf give employment to a large number of men.

A submarine telegraph connects the island with New Brunswick, crossing the narrowest part of Northumberland Strait, between Capes Tormentin and Traverse, a distance of 9 miles. In winter the mails are carried over between the same points in boats fitted for the ice or water. Navigation is wholly obstructed from the end of December to the beginning of April.

A railway connects Charlottetown, the capital, with Summerside, Cascumpec, and Tignish on the west, and with Georgetown and Souris on the east.

The imports of Prince Edward Island amount to about 2,500,000 dols., and the exports to rather less. The public debt is 250,000 dols., and the revenue about 150,000 dols. Since 1851 the population has increased 35,000, or over one-half more than it was at that time. The form of government is similar to that of the other colonies, consisting of a Lieutenant-Governor, an Executive Council of 9 members, an elective Legislative Council of 13 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 30 members. Education is very liberally supported, and is directly under control of the Government.

Prince Edward Island formerly belonged to France, but was ceded to Britain in 1763, after the capture of Louisbourg and Cape Breton. It was called St John's Island till the beginning of the present century. It was formed into a separate province in 1770, and was admitted into the Dominion of Canada in 1873.

**Charlottetown** (10,000), the capital, is situated on the north side of a large, safe, and commodious harbor, formed by the junction near the city of the East, North, and West Rivers. The city is 3 miles from the entrance of the harbor, and is built on gently rising ground, with very wide streets. The Provincial buildings, churches, and colleges are the principal edifices. It carries on the principal trade of the island, and is largely engaged in shipbuilding. It is also the county town of Queen's County.

**Georgetown** (1100), the county town of King's County, about 30 miles east of Charlottetown, is an important place, with a fine harbor. **Summerside** (3000), in Prince's County, about 40 miles west of Charlottetown, on the north side of Bedeque Harbor, is a rapidly rising town, with much shipbuilding, and important trade with New Brunswick. **Princeton**, on Richmond Bay, is the county town of Prince's County. Many thriving villages are springing up all over the island.

What is the area of Prince Edward Island? Population? Extent? Capital? How is Prince Edward Island situated? How is it divided? Describe the surface. The outline. Point out the principal capes. State where they are situated. Name the principal bays and harbors. Point them out on the map. State where they are situated. Describe the climate and soil. The products. What is said

of the land tenure? Of the soil of shipbuilding? Of the fisheries? Of the telegraph? Of the mails in winter? Of the railways? What financial statistics are given? Describe the form of government. What is said of education? Of the political history of the island? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. State where they are situated.

## NEWFOUNDLAND.

Area, 37,000 square miles; population, 146,000; persons to square mile, 31; greatest extent from north to south, 350 miles; breadth from east to west, 800 miles.

Capital, St John's.

The Island of NEWFOUNDLAND lies at the mouth of the Gulf of St Lawrence. It is separated from Labrador on the north by the Strait of Belle Isle (about 12 miles in breadth), and is distant from Cape Breton, on the south-west, about 60 miles. It is the only province not belonging to the Dominion of Canada.

It is divided into 15 Electoral Districts.

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| St John's, East. | Trinity.                 |
| St John's, West. | Bonavista.               |
| Harbor Grace.    | Twillingate and Fogo.    |
| Carbonear.       | Ferryland.               |
| Harbor Maine.    | Placentia and St Mary's. |
| Port de Grave.   | Burin.                   |
| Bay de Verde.    | Fortune Bay.             |

Burgeo and La Poile.

The government of Newfoundland includes also the coast of Labrador for nearly 700 miles, from Anse Sablon to the entrance of Hudson Strait. The principal islands on the coast are *North* and *South Belle Isle* and *Fogo Island*.

The Island of Newfoundland is triangular in shape, but the coast-line is deeply indented with numerous large bays. The principal of these are:—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Conception, Trinity, Bonavista, Notre Dame, and White Bays, on the north coast. | Bay of Islands and St George, on the west.<br>Hermitage, Fortune, Placentia, and St Mary's Bays, on the south. |
|---|--|

As the bays extend deep into the land, they form numerous peninsulas. The principal is the *Peninsula of Avalon*, which contains nearly two-thirds of the whole population.

The principal Capes are:—

*Bauld*, on the north; *Ray*, *Point May*, *Freels*, and *Race*, on the south; and *St Francis*, *Breakheart Point*, *Bonavista*, *Freels*, and *St John*, on the east.

Cape Race was formerly the calling point of the Atlantic steamships with late news from Europe. A line of telegraph connects it with Cape Ray, from which a submarine telegraph line extends to Cape Breton, and thence over the continent. After several failures, three Atlantic telegraph cables have been successfully laid by British enterprise, and now connect Newfoundland at Trinity Bay with Europe at Valentia Bay in Ireland, by which wonderful enterprise the European news may be published in the American newspapers on the same day as the events occur. On the north and east coast the capes are numerous, but of little importance. There has been no thorough survey made of the island, which is but thinly inhabited especially in the west. The settlements which have been made comprise only a narrow strip along the coast, scarcely ever extending more than a mile or two inland.

The surface of the island is hilly, varied with numerous rivers, lakes, and marshes. The ranges of hills generally run in short parallel chains, from north to south. The *Blue Hills* in the interior are the principal. The chief river is the *River of Exploits*, which flows almost across the island from south-west to north-east, through *George IV.* and *Red Indian Lakes*.

The other largest Lakes and Rivers are:—

*Grand Pond*, drained by the *Humber River*; *Victoria*, *Jameson*, and *Bathurst Lakes*, drained by *Little River*; *Barrow Lake*, drained by *Salmon River*; and *Gander Pond*, drained by *Gander River*.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.—How is Prince Edward Island separated from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? In what gulf is it situated? What islands lie to the north-east? What are the extreme north and east points called? What island lies to

the east? How is Charlottetown situated? In what direction from Charlottetown is Georgetown? Summerside? Souris? Shediac, N.B.? Pictou, N.S.? What island is between Prince Edward Island and New Brunswick? What point is nearest to New Brunswick?

The climate of Newfoundland is cold and severe, owing to the quantity of ice which is always round the island, brought down by the winds and currents in enormous icebergs from the Arctic Ocean. Fogs also prevail, especially on the Banks, being caused by the cold currents from the north meeting the Gulf Stream. The soil, especially in the interior, is rocky and barren, the principal crops being raised along the southern shore; and even there they generally require to be cut green for fodder. Most of the supplies are brought from the neighboring provinces. Copper and lead are said to be plentiful in the island, but the mineral resources have not yet been developed.

Newfoundland derives all its importance from its fisheries, which are chiefly cod and seal. Nearly the whole population is employed in the catching and curing of fish. The cod-fisheries on the Banks of Newfoundland are the greatest and most important fisheries in the world. These Banks, as they are called, are elevated plateaux at the bottom of the ocean, rising far above the surrounding ground. The great Bank, situated to the east and south of the island, extends about 600 miles in length, and 200 in breadth. The depth of water on them varies from 150 to over 500 feet, and they form the favorite feeding ground of the cod-fish. Besides the British, the French and Americans carry on the fishery, almost to the same extent, the French having also the privilege of fishing on certain parts of the coast of the island. The seal-fishery is carried on chiefly on the coast of Labrador, and on the northern coast of Newfoundland.

The annual value of the exports of Newfoundland, consisting chiefly of fish, is about 6,000,000 dols., or about 50 dols. for every inhabitant. The imports are nearly the same amount, and the annual revenue about 800,000 dols. The chief markets for fish are Great Britain, Spain, Portugal, Brazil, and the West Indies.

The form of government is the same as in the other provinces, consisting of a Governor, Executive Council of 6 members, Legislative Council of 13 members, and Legislative Assembly of 31 members, elected by the people. Responsible government was granted in 1855. The population is nearly equally divided between Protestants and Roman Catholics.

*St John's* (30,000), the capital, possesses a fine harbor almost surrounded by hills. It is the chief commercial station on the island, and is the nearest port to Europe, being only 1920 miles distant from Ireland. It was formerly built of wood, but having been several times nearly destroyed by fire, the lower part of the city is now built of brick. The great fire of 1844 destroyed 4,000,000 dols. worth of property.

*Harbor Grace* (6700) and *Carbonear* (2000) are the next most important towns. *Port de Grave*, *Brigus*, *Trinity*, and *Greenspond*, are also rising towns.

The islands of *St Pierre*, *Langley*, and *Miquelon*, lying to the south of Newfoundland, belong to France, and are important as fishing stations, and as the only portions now remaining to the French of their once large possessions in North America.

What is the area of Newfoundland? Population? Extent? Capital? How is Newfoundland situated? How is it separated from the mainland? How is it divided? What is also included in the government? Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the outline of Newfoundland. Name the principal bays. Point them out on the map. What is said of peninsulas? Point out the principal on the map. Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. What is said of

Cape Race? What wonderful enterprise connects Newfoundland with Europe? What is said of the other capes? Of the settlements, &c.? Describe the surface. The principal lakes and rivers. Point them out on the map. Describe the climate of Newfoundland. The soil and products. The minerals. From what does Newfoundland derive its importance? What is said of the fisheries? Who carry them on? Of the banks of Newfoundland? Of the seal-fishery? What financial statistics are given? What are the chief markets for fish? What is said of the government? Of the religions? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated?

#### BRITISH COLUMBIA.

Area, 315,000 square miles; population, about 55,000; greatest extent from north to south, 760 miles; and from east to west, including Vancouver Island, 570 miles.

VANCOUVER ISLAND, greatest length, 275 miles, greatest breadth, 90 miles.

Capital, VICTORIA.

BRITISH COLUMBIA is the most western province of the Dominion, and consists of Vancouver Island, and the mainland, or British Columbia proper, which were formerly two separate provinces.

It is bounded on the North by the parallel of 60° N.; on the East by the meridian of 120° W. to lat. 54°, and the *Rocky Mountains*; on the South by the parallel of 49° (the boundary of the United States), the *Gulf of Georgia*, and *Juan de Fuca Strait*; and on the West by the *Pacific Ocean*.

The surface of British Columbia is in general mountainous, and intersected by numerous rivers and lakes. The *Rocky Mountains*, which form the eastern boundary, extend from north to south in two parallel chains, the eastern being the main and most important, containing the highest peaks in the whole range, Mount Brown (16,000 feet), Mounts Hooker and Murchison (each 15,700 feet), besides others but little short of them in elevation. Parallel to the main chains there are other smaller ranges, as the *Gold* and *Selkirk* ranges, enclosing the upper courses of the Columbia and Fraser Rivers, and the *Peak Mountains*, enclosing the upper course of the Finlay River. The principal passes across the Rocky Mountains are the *Kootanie*, *Vermilion*, and *Yellow Head* or *Leather Passes*, the latter being the route of the projected Canadian Pacific Railway.

On the west, the Cascade Range extends northwards from the mouth of the Fraser River to Alaska, close along the Pacific coast, and occupies from 60 to 100 miles in breadth. Some of the summits of this range attain an altitude of 10,000 feet. The most valuable part of the country lies between the Rocky Mountains and the Cascade Range, forming an elevated tableland varying from 1000 to 3500 feet in height, through which the Fraser River flows.

The rivers and lakes of British Columbia are numerous, but of little importance for navigation. The *Fraser River* rises in the main chain of the Rocky Mountains, and flowing north, passes through a gap in the lesser chain, where it is joined by its northern branch, then, following a southern course, receives the *Nechaco*, *Quesnel*, *Chilcoten*, and *Thompson Rivers*, and flows into the Gulf of Georgia by three mouths, after a course of 740 miles. It is navigable for small steamers to Yale, a distance of 100 miles from its mouth, but the numerous rapids above that point render navigation almost impossible. The *Peace River*, and its northern branch the *Finlay River*, rise in the northern part, also between the Rocky Mountain chains, and flow eastward to form the *Mackenzie River*. Further north are the

is the south-eastern point called? What gulf is on the west? What islands are south of Newfoundland? What island is between Newfoundland and Cape Breton? In what direction from St John's is Harbor Grace? Carbonear? Placentia? Halifax N.S.?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—NEWFOUNDLAND (see DOMINION).—Give the latitude of Newfoundland. The longitude. How is Newfoundland separated from Labrador? Which is the nearest point to Cape Breton? What is the extreme north point called? What island is near it? What



*Skeena* or *Simpson*, and *Stickeen*, flowing into the Pacific, and the *Liard* flowing into the Mackenzie River. The *Columbia River*, the most important on the Pacific coast, rises in the southern part of the Rocky Mountain ranges in British Columbia, then, like the Fraser, first flowing northwards, bends to the southward, and after receiving the Kootanie River, flows through Washington Territory in the United States into the Pacific Ocean, after a course of about 1200 miles. The lakes are numerous, but of little importance.

The coast-line of British Columbia is much broken, with numerous islands, bays, and deep inlets, and it is remarkable that while from San Francisco to Cape Flattery, a distance of 700 miles, there is not a single harbor on the coast, in British Columbia and Vancouver Island harbors are numerous and excellent. The islands are disposed chiefly in two groups, the more southerly, of which *Vancouver Island* is the principal, separated from the mainland by *Juan de Fuca Strait*, the *Gulf of Georgia*, and *Queen Charlotte Sound*; and the other, about 200 miles to the north-west, called the *Queen Charlotte Islands*, separated from the mainland by *Vancouver Strait*. The other islands to the north belong to the United States, as part of the territory of Alaska. The principal inlets are *Barrard Inlet*, *Howe Sound*, *Jervis*, *Bute* and *Knight Inlets*, *Bentinck Arm*, *Gardner's Channel*, *Port Eslington*, *Portland* and *Observatory Inlets*, in the mainland; *Quatsino*, *Nootka*, and *Barclay Sounds*, in the west coast of Vancouver Island; and the harbors of *Esquimalt*, *Victoria*, and *Nanaimo*, in the south and east of Vancouver Island.

The climate of British Columbia is temperate, and much warmer than in the same latitude on the east coast of the continent. Between the Cascade range and the Rocky Mountains it is very dry, but on the coast and in the islands it is more moist. On the islands the fig will ripen in the open air, and even in winter the climate is very mild.

The soil is in general fertile, and well adapted for agriculture and pasturage, although as yet but little progress has been made in cultivation. Along the western slopes of the Cascade Mountains are magnificent forests of Douglas pine, and the islands are also densely wooded.

British Columbia first derived its importance from the rich and extensive gold discoveries which were made in 1858, principally along the course of the Fraser River and its tributaries. The gold-fields have not, however, been found so productive as was at first anticipated, and for some years neither the population nor the resources of the country have materially increased. Silver, lead, and copper are also found. Excellent coal is found both on the mainland and on the islands, and is worked in Vancouver Island. Marble and building-stone are also found, and are exported to the United States.

The chief exports are gold, coal, lumber, furs, and fish, amounting to about 2,000,000 dols. annually. The imports amount to about the same.

Previous to the year 1858, the whole country was in the possession of the Hudson Bay Company. In that year British Columbia and Vancouver Island were formed into Crown colonies, each having a Governor and Legislature of its own. In 1866 a legislative union was effected, under the name of British Columbia, in compliance with the wishes of the people; and in 1871 British Columbia became one of the provinces of the Dominion of Canada.

The Legislature consists of a Lieutenant-Governor, appointed by the Governor-General, a Legislative Council of 4 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 25 members, elected by the people for a term of four years. The province is represented in the Dominion Parliament by 3 senators, and 6 members of the House of Commons.

It is divided into 12 districts for electoral purposes:—

Vancouver Island:—  
Victoria City.  
Esquimalt.  
Saenich.  
Cowichan.  
Nanaimo.  
Comox.

On the mainland:—  
New Westminster City.  
New Westminster District.  
Yale and Lytton.  
Lillooet and Clinton.  
Kootenai.  
Cariboo.

The population has been very fluctuating, but is estimated at about 15,000 whites and about 40,000 Indians and Chinese. Education is liberally provided for, free schools being established wherever there are a dozen children to attend them. Roads which have lately been built, a railway now in course of construction from Esquimalt to Nanaimo, and the Canadian Pacific Railway, which will be pushed on rapidly, will, without doubt, give a vast impetus to the progress of the province.

*Victoria*, the capital, is situated in the south of Vancouver Island, and possesses an excellent harbor. It is well laid out, and carries on the principal trade of the province. At *Nanaimo*, Vancouver Island, are valuable coal-mines. *Esquimalt* possesses a magnificent harbor, and is Her Majesty's Naval Station.

*New Westminster*, the former capital, is beautifully situated on the north bank of the Fraser River, about 15 miles from the Gulf, and carries on the principal local trade of the mainland. The other settlements are small, and are chiefly situated on the Fraser River.

What is the area of British Columbia? The population? Extent? What is the extent of Vancouver Island? What is the capital of British Columbia? What does it comprise? How is it bounded? Describe the surface. Name the principal mountain ranges. Plot them out on the map. Name the principal passes through the Rocky Mountains. Describe the Cascade range. Where is the most valuable part of the country situated? Name the principal rivers of British Columbia. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the coast-line. Name the principal islands. The principal straits and gulfs. The principal inlets. Describe the climate. How did British Columbia first derive its importance? What minerals are found? What is said of the exports and imports? What is said of the history of British Columbia? How is the government composed? How is British Columbia divided? What is said of the inhabitants? Of the railways?

#### MANITOBA.

Area, 14,340 square miles; population, 20,000, being nearly three-fourths of a square mile in each inhabitant; length from east to west, 136 miles; width from north to south, 104 miles.

Capital, WINNIPEG.

The Province of MANITOBA (formerly the Red River Settlement) is the smallest of all the provinces, and forms an oblong square, lying between the United States on the south, and Lakes Winnipeg and Manitoba on the north, and extending east and west between the ninety-sixth and ninety-ninth degrees of longitude.

It is intersected from south to north by the *Red River*, which, rising in Minnesota, near the sources of the Mississippi, and flowing nearly due north, crosses the boundary between the two countries, and falls into *Lake Winnipeg*, after a course of about 700 miles. It is also partially intersected from west to east by the *Assiniboine River*, which flows into the Red River at Winnipeg. About one-third of the province

flows into the Pacific Ocean? On what river is New Westminster situated? What is the northern point of Vancouver Island called? What groups of islands lie to the N.W. of Vancouver? What towns in Vancouver Is. are on the Gulf of Georgia? What island lies to the W. of Vancouver Is.?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—BRITISH COLUMBIA (see DOMINION).—How is British Columbia separated from the North-West Territory? How is the mainland separated from Vancouver Island? What part of the United States lies to the north-west of British Columbia? What rivers



lies east of the Red River; the other two-thirds west of it, including a small part of the southern end of Lake Manitoba, from which the province takes its name. Lakes *Winnipeg* and *Manitoba*, only the southern ends of which are in Manitoba, are of considerable size, the first being 280 miles long, and the latter 110.

The country is chiefly one vast prairie covered with grass, with scarcely a tree except on the banks of the rivers. The climate resembles that of Ontario, and the soil is very fertile, producing wheat and other grains in abundance, though hitherto the want of a market for their surplus productions has fettered the enterprise of the settlers. The construction of the Canadian Pacific Railway and telegraph, which is stipulated to be completed by the year 1890, from Lake Superior to the Pacific, will doubtless so stimulate immigration as to secure a valuable home market. In the spring and fall, buffalo-hunting gives employment to a large portion of the Indian and half-breed population, and a large trade in furs and skins is carried on.

Before Manitoba became a province of the Dominion (1870), the population consisted chiefly of Indians and French and English half-breeds. Since then, settlers have poured in from the older provinces, and there are now nearly 12,000,000 acres of land surveyed for settlement. One-sixth of the land is reserved for the half-breeds, chiefly on the banks of Red River.

The government of Manitoba is administered by a Lieutenant-Governor with an Executive Council, a Legislative Council of 7 members, and a Legislative Assembly of 24 members, elected by the people. They also elect 2 members for the Senate, and 4 members for the House of Commons, as their proportion of representatives in the Dominion Parliament.

*Winnipeg* (or *Fort Garry*, as the Hudson Bay post is called), the capital, is situated at the junction of the Assiniboine with the Red River. It is the seat of government, and is rapidly becoming a place of importance.

What is the area of Manitoba? Population? Extent? Capital? How is Manitoba situated? What rivers intersect it? Trace the course of Red River! Of the Assiniboine! Describe the lakes. Describe the country. Its products. What project is likely to improve the country? What is the employment of many of the inhabitants? How is the population composed? What reservation is made for the half-breeds? How is the government composed? What numbers are elected to the Dominion Parliament? Describe Winnipeg.

#### NORTH-WEST TERRITORY AND DISTRICT OF KEWATIN.

Area, 2,600,000 square miles; population, about 150,000; greatest extent from east to west, 3200 miles; and from north to south, 1400 miles.

The NORTH-WEST TERRITORY is bounded on the North by the Arctic Ocean; on the West by the Pacific Ocean and British Columbia; on the South by British Columbia, the United States, Ontario, and Quebec; and on the East by the Atlantic Ocean.

The North-West Territory, up to the year 1870, was in the possession of a large trading company, called the Hudson Bay Company. With the exception of British Columbia, which was formed into a separate province in 1858, they held all the tract of land extending from Labrador to the Pacific, and from the former province of Canada and the United States to the Arctic Ocean. They received the charter, granting them the exclusive right to the greater part of this territory, from Charles II. in 1670, the remainder having been leased from the Crown.

By virtue of an Act of the Imperial Parliament, passed in 1869, and which took effect in 1870, all this immense territory was, on certain conditions (including the payment of £300,000 sterling to the Hudson Bay Company), transferred to the Do-

minion of Canada for purposes of colonization. In 1876, by Act of Parliament, the District of Kewatin was formed from the North-West Territory. It extends from the western boundary of Ontario west to the Province of Manitoba and the eastern shore of Lake Winnipegosis, and north to Hudson Bay. It is under the jurisdiction of the Lieutenant-Governor of Manitoba.

The surface of this vast country is much diversified by ranges of small hills, rivers, numerous lakes, and marshy tracts. The great chain of the *Rocky Mountains*, on the west, extends across the Territory from the Arctic Ocean southwards into the United States; but the general slope of the country is in a northerly direction towards the Arctic Ocean and Hudson Bay.

*Hudson Bay*, from which the Territory formerly derived its name, is a large inland sea, with numerous but barren and desolate islands at its mouth, and connected with the Atlantic by *Hudson Strait*. Around it, as well as its southern extremity, *James Bay*, there is an extensive plain, bounded by ranges of low but rugged hills, nearly parallel with the shore. On the east are the *Wolfe Mountains*, which run from north-east to south-west. From this range a ridge of more or less elevation extends, first due west and then north-west, until it meets the Laurentide chain of Canada, north of Lake Superior, and forms the watershed which divides the rivers of Canada from those flowing into Hudson Bay. From the Rocky Mountains two small ranges extend in an easterly direction, enclosing the fertile valley of the Saskatchewan.

The most remarkable feature of the Territory is the extensive chain of lakes, forming an almost unbroken line of communication from the head of Lake Superior to the Arctic Ocean. The more northern of these are drained by the rivers flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the more southern, by those flowing into Hudson Bay. The principal are—

The *Lake of the Woods*, *Winnipegosis*, *Manitoba*, *Wollaston*, *Deer*, *Athabasca*, *Great Slave*, and *Great Bear Lakes*, in the west; and *Abitibi* and *Mistassini* in the east.

The North-West Territory is well watered, containing a large number of rivers, the principal of which is the *Mackenzie River*, formed by the junction of the *Athabasca* and *Peace Rivers*, which rise near the highest summits of the *Rocky Mountains*, and unite a little north of *Athabasca Lake*, through the west end of which the *Athabasca River* flows. After the junction the river flows through *Great Slave Lake*, drains *Great Bear Lake*, and after a course of 2160 miles, enters the Arctic Ocean by a number of mouths. It is navigable for more than 1200 miles, but being frozen for the greater part of the year, can never be of much service for commerce. The other principal rivers are the *Coppermine* and *Back Rivers*, flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the *Saskatchewan*, north and south branches, and *Red Rivers*, flowing into Lake *Winnipeg*, and thence by the *Nelson* to Hudson Bay. The *Saskatchewan* is navigable for boats for upwards of 700 miles; the *Red River* rises in the United States, nearly interlocking with the *Mississippi*, and receives the *Assiniboine* on the west bank; it is navigable for light-draught steamboats for upwards of 300 miles. The *Churchill*, draining Lake *Winnipeg*, and *Seymour Rivers*, besides numerous smaller streams, flow into Hudson Bay, and the *Albany*, *East Main*, and other rivers flow into *James Bay*.

The climate and soil of the North-West Territory may be divided into two distinct regions. The smallest, extending from the Lake of the Woods along the valleys of the Assiniboine and Saskatchewan to the Rocky Mountains, enjoys a climate equal to

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—MANITOBA (see DOMINION).—What large lakes are in the northern part of Manitoba? What lakes are between Manitoba and Lake Superior? What river flows into the Red River from the west? What is the nearest town in the United States on the Red

River? What is the southern boundary of Manitoba? What river drains Lake Winnipeg into Hudson Bay? How is Winnipeg situated? In what direction from Winnipeg is Pembina? Toronto? Quebec? Fort William? Where does Red River rise? In what direction does it flow?





120

115

110

105

100

BRITISH COLUMBIA

DOMINION

WASHINGTON

MONTANA

DAKOTA

IDAHO

WYOMING

NEBRASKA

NEVADA

COLORADO

KANSAS

CALIFORNIA

ARIZONA

NEW MEXICO

INDIAN TERRITORY

TEXAS

MEXICO

115

110

105

100

Longitude







that of Ontario, although so much farther north, but with rather greater extremes of heat and cold. This temperate region is upwards of 100 miles in breadth in Manitoba, but three times that breadth near the Rocky Mountains, and is capable of producing the same cereals as Ontario. It is also admirably adapted for pasture; the great prairies, even as far north as Lake Athabasca, furnish abundance of nutritious grasses, and are frequented by vast herds of buffalo even in winter. The other region lies north and east of this. It is cold, bleak, and barren, except along the Mackenzie River, which is well wooded. In the Saskatchewan valley iron and coal abound, and gold is found. Coal, copper, and lead are found also as far as the Arctic Ocean.

The Hudson Bay Company have upwards of fifty forts scattered over various parts of the country for the purpose of collecting furs, which forms their chief trade. The principal are *Fort Garry* and *Stone Fort*, in Manitoba; *York Fort*, on the shore of Hudson Bay; *Moose Fort*, on James Bay; *Carlton House* and *Fort Edmonton*, on the Saskatchewan River, and *Fort Simpson*, on the Mackenzie. The Company employs about 3000 persons. The population of the whole of this vast country does not amount to more than 150,000, composed, to a great extent, of half-breeds and Indians.

The government of the Hudson Bay Company is in the hands of a Governor and Council in England, and the trade is managed by the resident chief traders and chief factors, the latter holding the highest posts in the service. Some of the principal forts or posts have a complement of thirty or forty men, but most of them have only about four or five. Vessels generally arrive at and leave York and Moose Forts once a year, for the transport of goods between the territory and England. The Indians inhabiting the country are the Crees round Hudson Bay, and the Seaulteaux farther in the interior, both inoffensive tribes, subsisting by trapping and fishing; and farther west, in the vast prairies, are the more warlike Blackfeet and other tribes living on the produce of the chase. In the more northern districts are the Chippewyan and Esquimaux Indians.

Until 1875, the Lieutenant-Governor of Manitoba, assisted by a Council appointed by the Governor-General of Canada, constituted the Legislature and administrators of the North-West Territory; but a law then passed, "to amend and consolidate the laws respecting the North-West Territories," provides for the appointment of a Lieutenant-Governor, three stipendiary magistrates, and a Legislative Council, to which members may be elected from a district of 1000 square miles, when it contains 1000 civilized residents. The sale of intoxicating liquors is prohibited in the North-West Territory.

What is the area of the North-West Territory? Population? Extent? How is it bounded? Towhom did the Territory belong? From whom did the Company receive the Territory? How was it ceded to Canada? Describe the surface of the country. Describe Hudson Bay. The mountains and hills. Trace them on the map. What is a remarkable feature of the country? Name the principal lakes. Point them out on the map. Describe the principal rivers. Trace them on the map. Describe the climate and soil. How may the country be divided? Describe the regions into which it may be divided. Trace them on the map. What is said of the forts of the Company? Name the principal. Point them out on the map. What is said of the people? What is said of the Hudson Bay Company? Of the Indians? How is the Territory governed?

#### THE ARCTIC REGIONS.

The Arctic Regions extend from Davis Strait on the east, to Behring Strait on the west, along the shores and in the

waters of the Arctic Ocean. They comprise numerous islands, peninsulas, gulfs, bays, sounds, and straits, and are chiefly interesting as having been the scene of numerous brave and determined attempts to find a highway to the west by means of the Arctic Ocean. No practical benefit has resulted from these expeditions, as the seas are sometimes ice-bound for years, or else filled with enormous icebergs. That a passage does exist was definitely discovered by M'Clure in 1850-51, when he found that Barrow and Banks (or M'Clure) Straits unite in Melville Sound. The Arctic Ocean is much more open on the west than on the east, and from Banks Strait navigation is uninterrupted by islands as far as Behring Strait, but the sea is almost continually filled with ice.

The most important expeditions have been sent out by the British Government during this century, and several also from the United States. The most interesting, and also the most unfortunate, was that of Sir John Franklin, which sailed in 1845, and the fate of which was long unknown. No less than twenty-seven expeditions were sent out in search of him, with but little success, until, in 1854, the remains of several men and articles belonging to his expedition were discovered by Dr Rae in King William Land, and some years later other remains were found by Captain M'Clintock and others, proving conclusively that the whole party had miserably perished.

On the Coppermine and Back or Great Fish Rivers extensive beds of coal have been found, but they are not likely to be worked until those of more temperate latitudes are quite exhausted.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Where do the Arctic regions extend? What do they comprise? For what are they interesting? What is said of the expeditions? What has been discovered? | Is said of the western part of the Arctic Ocean? What is said of the most important expeditions? Of Sir John Franklin? What is said of minerals? |
|--|--|

#### UNITED STATES.

Area, 3,600,000 square miles; population, 39,000,000; persons to square mile, 11; greatest extent from north to south, 1600 miles, and from east to west, 2700 miles; about the same size as British North America.

Capital, WASHINGTON.

The UNITED STATES of America are bounded on the North,—with the exception of the newly-acquired territory of Alaska, which lies to the north-west of British Columbia,—by the Dominion of Canada; on the West by the Pacific Ocean; on the South by Mexico and the Gulf of Mexico; and on the East by the Atlantic Ocean.

They comprise thirty-eight states, one federal district, and ten territories, united under one central government.

Two great mountain chains, the Rocky Mountains on the west, and the Alleghany Mountains or Appalachian chain on the east, divide the country into three regions: the Atlantic slope from the Alleghanies to the Atlantic Ocean; the Great Central Plain, or valley of the Mississippi; and the vast plain or plateau between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific coast.

The *Rocky Mountains* form the principal chain, extending from near the Arctic Circle to the Cordilleras of Mexico. They occupy from 40 to 200 miles in breadth. Their highest summits in the United States are Fremont's Peak, 13,600 feet, and James's Peak, 11,500 feet high. Along the Pacific coast are several ranges of mountains, some peaks rising even higher than

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—NORTH-WEST TERRITORY (see DOMINION).—What strait connects Hudson Bay with the Atlantic Ocean? What large island is at the mouth of Hudson Bay? What is the southern extremity of Hudson Bay called? What rivers flow into Hudson Bay from the

west? From the east? What rivers flow into James Bay? Into the Arctic Ocean? What river rises in British Columbia and flows into Lake Athabasca? Where does the Saskatchewan rise? Into what lake does it flow? What large river rises in the N.-W. Territory and flows into Alaska?



the Rocky Mountains. They are:—the *Coast Range* and the parallel range of the *Sierra Nevada*, enclosing Sacramento Valley, the gold region of California; and the *Cascade Range* in Oregon, extending through British Columbia into Alaska, with the towering peaks *Baker*, *Hood*, *Jefferson*, *St Helen*, &c., each rising nearly 15,000 feet; while *Mount St Elias* in Alaska attains an altitude of 15,000 feet.

The *Alleghany Mountains* extend from the peninsula of Gaspé, in Canada, to the north of Alabama, and are known by different names, according to the States which they traverse (p. 11). The highest peaks are in the *White Mountains*; but they seldom exceed 5000 feet, and are generally not more than 3000 feet high.

The United States are particularly noted for their numerous and important rivers, and no country in the world possesses such an extent of water communication. The estimated length of the navigable rivers is more than 47,000 miles.

The *Mississippi* rises in Lake Itasca, in Minnesota, near Lake Superior, and receives as affluents the *Wisconsin*, *Illinois*, and *Ohio* (with its affluents the *Cumberland* and *Tennessee Rivers*), on the east bank; the *Missouri* (with its affluent the *Platte*), the *Arkansas* and *Red Rivers*, on the west bank; and flows into the Gulf of Mexico by a number of mouths, after a course of 3160 miles. The course of the *Missouri* is even longer than that of the *Mississippi*, being over 3000 miles before joining the latter, or about 4500 miles in all, thus forming the longest river in the world. All these rivers are navigable throughout the greater part of their course, either by steamboats (for the great size and light draught of which the *Mississippi* is famous), or by flat-boats, which bring the produce of the Northern States down to New Orleans.

The *Brazos*, *Colorado* (in Texas), and *Rio Grande del Norte*, the latter forming the boundary between the United States and Mexico, flow into the Gulf of Mexico west of the *Mississippi*; and the *Alabama* and other rivers east of it.

The *Penobscot*, *Connecticut*, *Hudson*, *Delaware*, *Susquehanna*, *Potomac*, *James*, *Roanoke*, and *Savannah*, besides numerous other smaller and less important rivers, flow into the Atlantic.

The *Colorado* (another river of the same name) flows into the Gulf of California; and the *Sacramento* and *Columbia Rivers* flow into the Pacific Ocean.

The Great Lakes of Canada all adjoin the United States, *Lake Michigan* being entirely within their territory; besides these are *Lakes Champlain* and *George*, numerous smaller lakes in New York, Minnesota, and other States, and the *Great Salt Lake* in Utah.

The coast-line of the United States is very little broken, but along the Atlantic coast are numerous small islands and sandbanks—*Long Island*, *Rhode Island*, *Nantucket*, and a few small islands adjoining, being the principal.

The bays are chiefly the mouths of the rivers.

The principal Bays, Straits, &c., are:—

|  |   |
|--|---|
| On the east coast, <i>Penobscot</i> and <i>Massachusetts Bays</i> , <i>Long Island Sound</i> , <i>Delaware</i> and <i>Chesapeake Bays</i> , <i>Pamlico</i> and <i>Albemarle Sounds</i> , <i>Strait of Florida</i> , <i>Appala-</i> | <i>chie Bay</i> , and <i>Galeston</i> and <i>Mata-gorda Bays</i> .  |
|  | On the west coast are <i>San Francisco</i> and <i>Columbia Bays</i> , <i>Juan de Fuca Strait</i> , and <i>Admiralty Inlet</i> . |

The principal Capes are:—

|   |  |
|---|--|
| On the east coast, <i>Ann</i> , <i>Cod</i> , <i>Mon-tauk Point</i> , <i>May</i> , <i>Charles</i> , <i>Henry</i> , <i>Hatteras</i> , <i>Sable</i> , and <i>St Blas</i> . | On the west coast are <i>Point Conception</i> , <i>Mendocino</i> , <i>Blanco</i> , and <i>Plattery</i> . |
|---|--|

As the territory occupied by the United States extends over 24° of latitude, or a distance of about 1600 miles from north to south, the climate varies very much with the locality. It is temperate in the north, and hot in the south. Along the south-eastern coast are numerous large swamps, and the rivers are sluggish in their course, rendering the climate very unhealthy for the white population. In the interior it is hot, but more healthy. On the Pacific coast, owing to their proximity to the sea, the mountains intercept the rain-clouds, and the country to the west of the *Coast Range* suffers very much from drouth.

The soil is in general rich and productive, especially in the Great Central Plain or *Mississippi Valley*. In the north-eastern States it is more rocky and barren, but everywhere well cultivated. On both sides of the Rocky Mountains, but more especially on the high plateau between that range and California, are arid desert tracts of country. In the Great Central Plain almost all the country west of the *Ohio River* consists of vast prairies covered with tall grass, and easily cultivated, but with little timber. In the Northern and Western States grain is the chief production, principally wheat and Indian-corn. Cattle are also extensively reared. In the Middle States, tobacco and Indian-corn are the staples, and in the Southern States, cotton, sugar, and rice.

Gold, silver, iron, copper, lead, quicksilver, and coal are found in great abundance: gold, silver, and quicksilver chiefly in California and Nevada; iron, coal, and petroleum in the western parts of Pennsylvania, in Virginia, and also in Ohio; and copper and lead in Michigan and Wisconsin.

The Western States so called, or those occupying the northern part of the Great Central Plain, are the chief sources of the supplies of the South and East; the *Mississippi* forming the great channel of communication for the exchange of the grain and cattle of the North for the sugar, cotton, and other products of the South.

The United States have been peopled principally by settlers from Great Britain and Ireland, and from Germany, although the native-born population, descended from the earlier settlers, now largely predominates.

The form of government is a Federal Republic.

Each State is a separate Republic, makes its own laws, possesses exclusive control of all local interests, and is governed by a Governor, Senate, and House of Representatives, all elected by the people.

The General Government regulates all affairs relating to commerce, the defence and general interests of the country. It consists of a President, Vice-President, and a Congress, consisting of a Senate and House of Representatives.

The President and Vice-President are chosen every four years by electors chosen by the people, each State being entitled to as many electors as it has members of Congress.

The Senate is composed of two members from each State, chosen by its Legislature for a term of six years.

The representatives of the people are chosen every two years, each State being entitled to one member for every 137,800 of its inhabitants.

The Territories of the United States are under the direct control of the General Government, until they have a sufficiently large population to entitle them to representation in Congress, when they are formed into separate States, and are entitled to the same privileges as the others.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—UNITED STATES.—How are the United States separated from Ontario? From the North-West Territory? From Mexico? What peninsula extends into the Atlantic from the south-east? What peninsula extends into the Pacific from the south-west?

What islands are near Florida? What large gulphes lie to the south of the U.S.? How is it nearly enclosed? What large rivers flow into it? What large rivers of the United States flow into the Atlantic Ocean. Into the Pacific Ocean? Into the Gulf of California?

The United States were formerly British Colonies, and in order to avoid the taxation which Britain wished to impose on them, declared their independence in 1776, and after some years of war, were finally acknowledged independent by Great Britain in 1783. They then consisted of thirteen States—New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North and South Carolinas, and Georgia. The population then only amounted to 3,000,000.

Until lately negro slavery existed in all the Southern States of the Union, and was the cause of constant dissensions between them and the free States of the North and West. These dissensions finally culminated in a prolonged and most bloody war, which lasted from the accession of President Lincoln, early in 1861, until near the end of his four years' term of office in 1865. The result was the entire overthrow of the slaveholding power of the South, and the securing to the black population of their personal freedom, and all the other rights and privileges of their white fellow-citizens.

The United States present the most remarkable example of rapid progress and successful enterprise in the world. Although just a century old, their foreign exports now amount to 400,000,000 dols., their imports to nearly as much, and their shipping to nearly 5,500,000 tons. Their national debt has largely increased owing to the late war, and is now over 2,000,000,000 dols., besides the debts contracted by the separate States. The revenue is about 334,000,000 dols.

There is no country in the world, with the exception of Great Britain, which possesses such a complete network of railways and canals.

There is no established religion in the United States, every denomination possessing equal privileges. Education, especially in the Northern and Eastern States, is carefully attended to, under the management of the different State Governments.

Each State is divided into counties, the same as in the British provinces.

The States are usually classed under the heads of Eastern, Middle, Southern, and Western States.

What is the area of the United States? Population? Extent? Size? Capital? How are the United States bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. What do the United States comprise? Name the principal mountain chains. How do they divide the country? Describe the Rocky Mountains, the Mountains of the Pacific, the Alleghany Mountains. Trace them on the map. For what are the United States noted? Describe the course of the Mississippi. Trace it on the map. Name the other principal rivers. Where do they rise? Where do they flow? Trace their courses on the map. What lakes are in, or border on, the United States? Describe the coast-line. Name the principal bays, straits, &c. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Name the principal capes. In what States are they? Point them out on the map. De-

scribe the climate of the United States. Describe the soil. What are the principal products? What are the principal minerals, and where are they found? What is said of the Western States? For what is the Mississippi useful? How have the United States been peopled? Describe the form of government of the States. The General Government. What is the position of the Territories of the United States? Describe the United States when British Colonies. What institution was peculiar to the Southern States? What has been the result of the late civil war? What is the amount of the commerce of the United States. Of the debt? Are their means of inland communication extensive? What is the state of religion and education in the country? How is each State divided? How are all the States classed?

## EASTERN STATES.

The EASTERN STATES, or New England, as they are sometimes called, comprise—

| States.                  | Chief Towns.                              |
|--------------------------|---|
| MAINE, . . . . .         | Augusta, Portland, Bangor.                |
| NEW HAMPSHIRE, . . . . . | Concord, Portsmouth, Manchester.          |
| VERMONT, . . . . .       | Montpelier, Middlebury, Burlington.       |
| MASSACHUSETTS, . . . . . | Boston, Lowell, Springfield, New Bedford. |
| RHODE ISLAND, . . . . .  | Providence, Newport.                      |
| CONNECTICUT, . . . . .   | Hartford, Newhaven, Bridgeport.           |

The New England States occupy the north-eastern portion of the United States, adjoining Canada. The country is mountainous, and intersected by numerous lakes and rivers. The Appalachian chain extends through the northern part of the country, under the name of the *Green Mountains* in Vermont, and the *White Mountains* in New Hampshire and Maine; the latter are so called from some of their summits rising over 6000 feet high, and being covered with snow for a great part of the year. The *Connecticut River* runs from north to south, between and through four of the States, into Long Island Sound.

The coast-line is much broken, being indented with numerous bays and harbors, with many small islands. The coast is rocky, and dangerous for navigation.

The climate resembles that of Ontario, but is rather colder in Maine. The soil is in general rocky, and not well adapted for agriculture; but it is, especially in Vermont, favorable for pasture.

The New England States are especially noted as being the principal manufacturing districts of the United States. They were originally settled by the "Pilgrims," or "Puritans,"—religious refugees who left England during the reigns of James I. and Charles I.

MAINE possesses fine harbors. The principal trade is in lumber and the fisheries. Lumbering is carried on extensively in the northern part, chiefly on the St John River and its tributaries, and on the Penobscot.

*Augusta* (8000), the capital, is situated on the Kennebec River. *Portland* (31,400), the largest and most important town, has a fine harbor, and is much resorted to for sea-bathing. The Grand Trunk Railway of Canada has its eastern terminus at Portland, and it forms also the winter seaport for the Canadian steamships. *Bangor* (18,300) is the second town in importance, and carries on a large lumber trade.

NEW HAMPSHIRE is very mountainous, and is celebrated for its beautiful scenery. It possesses very little sea-coast. The principal occupations of the inhabitants are agriculture and rearing cattle.

*Concord* (12,200) is the capital. *Portsmouth* (9200) possesses a fine harbor and the United States Navy Yard, and carries on extensive fisheries. *Manchester* (23,500), *Dover*, and *Nashua* are manufacturing towns.

VERMONT is an inland State, intersected by the Green Mountains, which afford excellent and abundant pasture to large herds of cattle. Between Vermont and New York States lies *Lake Champlain*, which, with *Lake George*, is celebrated for its beautiful scenery, and for having been the scene of many battles, in the colonial times, between the French and English.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—UNITED STATES.—Which States are on the Atlantic coast? Which States and Territories are on the Pacific coast? On the Gulf of Mexico? Which States adjoin New Brunswick? Quebec? Which States border on the great northern lakes? Which States or Ter-

ritories adjoin the North-West Territory? Manitoba? British Columbia? Past which States do the Mississippi, Missouri, Ohio, Red River, Rio Grande, Columbia, Connecticut, and Susquehanna flow? Through which States do the Alleghany Mountains extend?



During the Revolutionary war, also, Vermont was often a scene of strife.

*Montpelier* is the capital. *Middlebury* and *Burlington* possess colleges.

MASSACHUSETTS is the richest and most populous of the Eastern States, and the most important State in the Union for manufactures, chiefly consisting of cotton, woollen, and leather goods.

The surface is hilly, and the soil rocky and poor, but carefully cultivated.

The coast is very irregular; a semicircular peninsula, terminated by Cape Cod, extends from the south-east into the Atlantic. The islands of *Nantucket* and *Martha's Vineyard* lie to the south of this peninsula. The State possesses many fine harbors, and carries on the principal part of the American cod-fishery on the Banks of Newfoundland, as well as the whale-fishery.

*Boston* (250,000), the capital, is an elegant city, situated on a peninsula at the head of Massachusetts Bay. It possesses, next to New York, the largest shipping trade of any city in the United States, and carries on extensive manufactures, especially in boots and shoes.

*Lowell* (41,000), *Springfield* (26,700), *Lynn* (28,200), *Fall River* (26,700), and *Worcester* (41,000), are large and important manufacturing towns, producing chiefly cotton and woollen goods, and boots and shoes. *Marblehead* is the chief port for the American cod-fishery, and *New Bedford* (21,300) and *Nantucket* for the whale-fishery. *Cambridge* (39,000), near Boston, is the seat of Harvard University. At *Plymouth* the "Pilgrims" made their first landing in 1620.

RHODE ISLAND, so called from the island of that name in Narragansett Bay, is the smallest State in the Union, but, compared with its population, carries on more extensive manufactures, chiefly woollen and cotton, than any other State.

Its surface is rocky, and soil poor, but industriously cultivated.

*Providence* (69,000), the capital, is situated at the head of Narragansett Bay, and is the chief centre of the manufactures. *Newport*, on Rhode Island, is a favorite summer retreat for sea-bathing and beautiful scenery.

CONNECTICUT is situated on the north side of Long Island Sound. The country is hilly, but the soil very fertile, especially in the valley of the Connecticut River. It carries on various and extensive manufactures, especially of clocks, cottons, woollens, &c.; but agriculture is the chief occupation of the inhabitants. Education receives more attention than in any of the other States.

*Hartford* (37,000), the capital, is situated on the Connecticut River. It is a flourishing town, and is surrounded by a fertile country. *New Haven* (51,000) is a fine city, and is the seat of Yale College. *New London* and *Bridgeport* possess good harbors, and a large amount of shipping. *Norwich* (16,600) is an important manufacturing town.

Name the Eastern States, and their chief towns. Where are they situated? Describe the country. What are the principal mountains?

What river flows through them? Describe the coast-line. The climate. For what are the Eastern States noted? How were they first

settled? Describe Maine. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe New Hampshire. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Vermont. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Massachusetts. How is

it bounded? Describe its coast and islands. What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Rhode Island. How is it situated? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Connecticut. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? For what are they noted?

## MIDDLE STATES.

### The Middle States comprise—

| States.               | Chief Towns:                          |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| NEW YORK, . . . .     | New York, Albany, Buffalo, &c.        |
| NEW JERSEY, . . . .   | Trenton, Newark, Patterson.           |
| PENNSYLVANIA, . . . . | Philadelphia, Harrisburg, Pittsburg.  |
| DELAWARE, . . . .     | Wilmington, Dover.                    |
| MARYLAND, . . . .     | Baltimore, Annapolis, Hagarstown, &c. |
| DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, | Washington.                           |

The *Alleghany Mountains* extend through the eastern part of New York, under the name of the *Catskill Mountains*, and through Pennsylvania and Maryland into Virginia. The country is in general hilly on both sides of the mountains, with rich and fertile valleys, and abounding in valuable minerals. These States are watered by the principal rivers of the Atlantic slope; the *Hudson*, *Delaware*, *Susquehanna*, and *Potomac*. All these rivers enter the ocean by broad mouths, forming bays and excellent harbors. The *Susquehanna* and *Potomac* flow into Chesapeake Bay. On the west side of the *Alleghany Mountains*, the *Alleghany* and *Monongahela Rivers* combine to form the *Ohio*. The climate is temperate, but warmer than in the Eastern States, especially in Maryland.

NEW YORK is the most important State in the Union, not only in population, but also for commerce and public improvements. It is well watered by rivers, and large and extensive canals connect the Great Lakes with the Atlantic sea-board. The principal is the *Erie Canal*, from Lake Erie at Buffalo to Albany on the Hudson River. Important lines of railway connect with all the cities of the west. The soil is rich, and produces vast quantities of wheat, which forms the staple of the State.

The surface is much diversified by numerous beautiful lakes, amongst which are *Cayuga*, *Seneca*, *Canandaigua*, and *Oncida*. *Lake Champlain* lies between New York and Vermont. New York is separated from Ontario by *Lakes Erie* and *Ontario*, and by the *Niagara* and *St Lawrence Rivers*.

It also comprises *Long* and *Staten Islands*, the principal islands on the Atlantic coast.

The original settlers were the Dutch, principally in and around New York, then called New Amsterdam, and on the Hudson River as far as Albany.

*New York* (942,000), the largest and most important city in the Union, is situated on Manhattan Island, at the junction of Hudson River and East River, a continuation of Long Island Sound. It contains, with Brooklyn and other suburbs situated on the opposite banks of the rivers, upwards of 1,500,000 inhabitants, and is the great centre of trade for the whole of the United States, about two-thirds of the whole foreign commerce passing through it. The city contains many fine buildings, and

in the Eastern States on the Atlantic coast? On Long Island Sound? On Connecticut River? On what bay is Boston situated? In what direction is Boston from Toronto? Montreal? St John, N.B.? Portland? How is Connecticut separated from Long Is.? Which river drains L. Champlain?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—NORTH-EASTERN STATES.—What river flows into Penobscot Bay? In what State is it? In what State is the Hudson River? What island lies to the south of Massachusetts? What is the extreme eastern point of Long Island called? Which are the principal cities





# EASTERN & MIDDLE STATES (UNITED STATES)

English Miles

Latitude North 72 from Greenwich



is supplied with water by the Croton aqueduct. It has suffered much from fires; in 1835, 20,000,000 dollars' worth of property was thus destroyed. Shipbuilding is extensively carried on, and Brooklyn (395,000) contains a U.S. Navy Yard.

*Albany* (76,000), the capital, is situated on the Hudson River, at the terminus of the Erie and Champlain Canals. It is an old and wealthy city. *Buffalo* (118,000), the largest city in the State next to New York, is situated on Lake Erie, and derives its importance from its extensive trade with the Western States. *Rochester* (62,000), with extensive flour-mills, *Oswego* (21,000), the terminus of the Oswego Canal on Lake Ontario, *Sackett's Harbor* and *Ogdensburgh* (10,000) carry on extensive trade with Canada and the Western States. *West Point*, on the Hudson River, contains the Military Academy of the United States. *Poughkeepsie* (20,000), *Hudson* (5600), and *Troy* (46,000), also on the Hudson River, are towns of some importance. *Utica* (28,800), *Syracuse* (43,000), and *Auburn* (17,200), are centres of fertile districts.

NEW JERSEY is situated on the Atlantic coast, extending from Delaware Bay to the Hudson River, and is separated from Pennsylvania by the Delaware River. Its surface is generally low and level, and its soil is good—fruit and vegetables being raised in immense quantities for the New York and Philadelphia markets. Numerous small islands of no importance skirt the coast, but it contains no harbours. It was the scene of many battles during the Revolutionary war.

*Trenton* (22,800), near the lower falls of the Delaware, is the capital. *Newark* (105,000) and *Paterson* (33,500) are important manufacturing towns. *Princeton* contains two colleges. Jersey City (82,500) is a suburb of the city of New York.

PENNSYLVANIA is the second State in the Union for population. It is an inland State, connected with the ocean by Delaware Bay. The Alleghany Mountains intersect it, rendering the surface hilly. The soil is good, especially in the south, which is the most populous part. Wheat is the staple.

Pennsylvania derives its chief importance from its vast and valuable coal and iron mines and petroleum wells. It was originally settled by Quakers, under the direction of William Penn; a considerable proportion, however, of the inhabitants are of German origin, and still retain their mother tongue.

*Philadelphia* (674,000), the largest city in the State, is built on a flat peninsula between the Delaware and Schuylkill Rivers, and is about 120 miles from the sea. It is the most regularly built city on the continent, all the streets being laid out at right angles. It contains many fine buildings and extensive water-works, and carries on a large shipping and inland trade. *Harrisburg* (23,000), on the Susquehanna, is the capital. *Pittsburg* (86,000) is situated on a peninsula between the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers, which here join and form the Ohio River. It is at the head of steamboat navigation, is also situated in the centre of the coal and iron region, and has the most important iron manufactures in the United States. *Reading* (34,000) and *Lancaster* (20,000) are thriving towns, chiefly peopled by Germans. *Pottsville* and other towns derive their importance from the adjacent coal-mines. *Gettysburg* was the scene of a great battle between the Northern and Southern forces in 1863. *Erie* (19,600) is a considerable port on Lake Erie.

DELAWARE, situated to the south of Delaware Bay, is a small and unimportant State. It is low and sandy, and chiefly devoted to agriculture, but carries on some manufactures in the northern part.

*Wilmington* (30,800), the largest town, is situated on the river Brandywine, near its mouth. It has numerous manufactures and a considerable trade. *Dover*, near the middle of the State, is the capital.

MARYLAND is the most northerly of the late slave States. In soil and surface it resembles Pennsylvania, but the climate is warmer. Tobacco is its staple. Iron and coal are found in the west.

*Baltimore* (267,000), the largest city in Maryland, is situated on the Patapsco River, 14 miles from Chesapeake Bay. It is well built, and possesses some fine monuments. It is the commercial emporium for a great part of the western trade. *Fort M'Henry* is at the mouth of the harbor. *Annapolis*, a small town on an arm of Chesapeake Bay, is the capital. *Frederick*, *Hagerstown*, and *Cumberland* are also important centres for local trade.

The DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA is the seat of the United States Government, and is under its direct control. It was originally, ten miles square, extending on both sides of the Potomac, but the part in Virginia was given back to that State, and it is now altogether on the Maryland side of the river. The inhabitants have no representation in Congress.

*Washington* (109,000), the capital of the United States, and seat of the Federal Government, is situated on the Potomac River, about 110 miles from its mouth, and contains the finest public buildings in the States, as the Capitol, Treasury, and Patent Office. The President resides here at the White House during his term of office. The city occupies a large space of ground, but derives all its importance from being the seat of government.

Name the Middle States and their chief towns. Describe their surface. Name the principal mountains. The principal rivers. Point them out on the map, and trace the courses of the rivers. Describe the climate. Describe New York State. How is it bounded? Describe its surface. What islands belong to it? Who were the original settlers? Describe the city of New York. What is its population? What are the other chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe New Jersey. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Pennsylvania. How is it bounded? From what does it chiefly derive its importance? Describe Philadelphia. What are the other chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Delaware. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Maryland. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe the district of Columbia. Describe Washington.

#### SOUTHERN STATES.

The Southern States comprise—

| States.                     | Chief Towns.                      |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| VIRGINIA, . . . . .         | Richmond, Norfolk, Petersburg.    |
| WESTERN VIRGINIA, . . . . . | Wheeling, Charleston.             |
| NORTH CAROLINA, . . . . .   | Raleigh, Newbern, Wilmington.     |
| SOUTH CAROLINA, . . . . .   | Columbia, Charleston, Beaufort.   |
| GEORGIA, . . . . .          | Atlanta, Savannah, Augusta.       |
| FLORIDA, . . . . .          | Tallahassee, Pensacola.           |
| ALABAMA, . . . . .          | Montgomery, Mobile.               |
| MISSISSIPPI, . . . . .      | Jackson, Natchez, Vicksburg.      |
| LOUISIANA, . . . . .        | New Orleans, Baton Rouge.         |
| TEXAS, . . . . .            | Austin, Galveston, Houston.       |
| TENNESSEE, . . . . .        | Nashville, Memphis, Knoxville.    |
| KENTUCKY, . . . . .         | Frankfort, Louisville, Lexington. |
| ARKANSAS, . . . . .         | Little Rock.                      |

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—UNITED STATES.—What capes are at the mouth of Delaware Bay? Of Chesapeake Bay? What rivers flow into Delaware Bay? Into Chesapeake Bay? What rivers form the Ohio River? Where do they rise? What islands belong to New York? How is Philadelphia situated?

ated? New York? Baltimore? Washington? Pittsburg? Buffalo? Oswego? Through which of the Middle States do the Alleghany Mountains extend? In what State is L. Champlain? In what direction from New York is Philadelphia? Pittsburg? Albany? Boston? Toronto? Montreal?



These, together with Maryland and Missouri, were formerly slave States; all which, except Kentucky and Maryland, seceded from the Union in 1861. A frightful civil war then ensued, which lasted for nearly four years, when they were forced back into the Union, and slavery was abolished. After a period of probation, their right to representation in Congress was restored to them.

The country occupied by these States is intersected in the north by the Alleghany Mountains, forming two parallel chains, called the *Cumberland Mountains* in Kentucky and Tennessee, and the *Blue Ridge* in Virginia. They extend to the northern part of Alabama. In the interior the surface is hilly, but along the coast it is low and flat, forming vast unhealthy swamps, as the *Dismal Swamp* in Virginia, the *Great Pelee Swamp* in South Carolina, and the *Everglades* in Florida. The rivers to the east of the Alleghanies are slow, and of little commercial importance. In the west are the important rivers the *Ohio*, with its tributaries the *Cumberland* and *Tennessee*, flowing into the *Mississippi*; and the *Alabama River*, into the Gulf of Mexico.

The coast-line is not so broken as in the north, but numerous sandbanks and small islands line the coast. The peninsula of Florida, terminated by *Cape Sable*, juts out in a remarkable manner, as if originally joined to South America by means of the West India Islands. The climate is hot, and in the most southerly States very unhealthy, so that few white people can live on the plantations in summer. Almost all the labor is carried on by negroes. The soil is very rich and fertile; cotton, rice, sugar, tobacco, and Indian-corn being the staples. Gold is found in small quantities in North Carolina and Georgia.

Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, and Florida were formerly almost entirely peopled by the Seminole and other Indians, who carried on war against the white settlers. They were at last subdued, and deported to the Indian territory west of the Mississippi.

VIRGINIA is one of the oldest States in the Union, and possesses an extremely rich soil, which, however, has been much exhausted by careless cultivation. It is the birthplace of many of the most celebrated men of the United States. Tobacco is the great staple, and wheat and cattle are also extensively raised. It is celebrated for its picturesque scenery and natural wonders, such as the Natural Bridge, &c. It was the scene of the most desperate battles in the late civil war; and in 1861-65 was devastated by the troops of both parties, until the eastern part became almost a desert.

The western part of Virginia having owned the authority of the Federal Government, was in 1862 formed into a separate State.

*Richmond* (51,000), the capital of Virginia, is situated on the James River, and carries on the principal trade. It was the capital and headquarters of the Confederate States, and many bloody and obstinate battles were fought near it. *Norfolk* (19,200) possesses a fine harbor, and is the chief seaport. At *Portsmouth*, opposite Norfolk, there was formerly a United States Navy Yard, which was destroyed during the war. *Petersburg* is the chief centre of the tobacco trade. *Fredericksburg*, *Harper's Ferry*, and other places, have become famous since the war. *Wheeling* (12,300), on the Ohio, is a large manufacturing town, and the capital of West Virginia. *Charleston* was formerly the capital.

NORTH CAROLINA is densely covered with pine woods, and exports large quantities of tar and turpentine. Grain and cattle are raised in the western part of the State. Its coast is almost enclosed by low sandy islands. *Cape Hatteras* is one of the most dangerous points on the Atlantic coast.

*Raleigh*, a small town near the centre of the State, is the capital. *Newbern* and *Wilmington* (13,400) are the chief seaports. *Fayetteville* contained a United States armory.

SOUTH CAROLINA is an important and wealthy State, and was the first to secede from the Union. The soil is very fertile. The numerous islands along the coast produce the best cotton, called sea-island cotton. Rice is the staple product of the lowlands, and cotton in the interior.

*Charleston* (49,000) is the largest city, and before the war was about the only one on the eastern coast of the Southern States possessing direct trade with Europe. It is an elegantly-built city, and carries on a large trade in cotton and rice. *Columbia*, near the centre of the State, is the capital. *Georgetown* and *Beaufort* have a large trade.

GEORGIA is one of the largest and most populous of the Southern States, producing vast quantities of cotton, rice, and wheat.

*Savannah* (28,200), the largest city, is situated on a river of the same name, 17 miles from its mouth, and carries on the principal trade of the State. *Atlanta* (22,000) is the capital. *Augusta* and *Macon* are important towns with large local trade. *Columbus* has cotton manufactures.

FLORIDA was formerly in the possession of Spain, but was ceded to the United States in 1819, and became a separate State in 1844. The country is low and flat, but vegetation is most luxuriant. The coast-line, although extending 1200 miles, possesses few harbors, and is the scene of many wrecks. The coral reefs on the south, called the Florida Keys, are especially dangerous, owing to the rapid current of the Gulf Stream.

*Pensacola*, on the Gulf of Mexico, has a fine harbor, and a United States Navy Yard. *Tallahassee* is the capital. *Apalachicola*, at the mouth of the river of the same name, is the chief commercial city of the State. *St Augustine* is a favorite resort for invalids, on account of its delightful climate. *Key West*, one of the Florida Keys, has a fine harbor.

ALABAMA is watered by several important rivers,—the *Alabama*, *Tombigbee*, &c.,—and produces vast quantities of cotton. The State was, forty years ago, entirely in the possession of the Indians.

*Mobile* (32,000), the largest city, is situated at the mouth of the Mobile River, and carries on a large trade in cotton, which is conveyed down the rivers from the interior and from the adjoining States. *Montgomery*, near the centre, is the capital, and was also for a short time the capital of the Confederate States. *Tuscaloosa* and *Huntsville* are also important towns.

MISSISSIPPI is the principal cotton State, and extends along the east bank of the Mississippi River. It produces more cotton than any other State. *Jackson* is the capital; *Natchez* (9000) and *Vicksburg* (12,400) carry on the principal trade of the State. The latter is noted for the long siege it withstood in 1863.

LOUISIANA is the principal State for the production of sugar.

hama Is. ? Which are the principal southern cities on the Mississippi ? On the Atlantic coast ? On the Gulf of Mexico ? What is the eastern point of N. Carolina called ? In what direction from N. Orleans is St. Louis ? Galveston, Mobile, Charleston ? In what direc. from Rich'd is Washington ?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—UNITED STATES.—Which of the Southern States are traversed by the Alleghany Mountains ? What river separates Virginia and Kentucky from the Western States ? Which of the Southern States are on the Gulf of Mexico ? How is Florida separated from the Ea-

Cotton is also extensively grown in the northern part of the State. The country is very flat on both sides of the Mississippi, which is often higher than its banks. To protect the land from being inundated, the river is kept between vast dykes or *levées*, as they are called, which extend for about 300 miles above New Orleans.

Louisiana formerly belonged to France, and was purchased by the United States in 1803, along with the vast territory extending from the Mississippi north-west to the Pacific, for 15,000,000 dols. The French language is still used to some extent; and the laws are published both in French and English.

New Orleans (191,000), the capital, and the largest city in the South, is situated on the Mississippi River, about 100 miles from its mouth. All the commerce of that great river and its tributaries centres at New Orleans, and the number of steam-boats and flat boats crowding its *levée* is enormous. It carries on a large foreign shipping trade. It is unhealthy in summer, and is largely peopled by French and Spanish creoles. *Baton Rouge* was formerly the capital, and *Alexandria* is an important centre of trade.

Texas is the largest State in the Union. It was previous to 1835 one of the Mexican States, but gained its independence after a severe struggle, and became one of the United States in 1845. The surface of the country is a rolling prairie, intersected by numerous rivers, and separated from Mexico by the Rio Grande del Norte. The *Brasos* and *Colorado* are the principal rivers. The products are sugar, cotton, and Indian-corn. Vast herds of wild cattle, buffaloes, and wild horses roam over the prairies. *Austin*, the capital, is situated on the Colorado. *Galveston* (14,000) is the chief seaport, and *Houston* the former capital. *Matagorda* and *San Antonio de Bexar* are important towns.

ARKANSAS, a thinly-settled State, lies north of Louisiana, west of the Mississippi River. Cotton is the chief product. It is intersected by the Arkansas and other rivers. *Little Rock* is the capital of the State.

TENNESSEE and KENTUCKY are the great centres for the production of Indian-corn and tobacco; Tennessee has also valuable iron-mines. Cattle are reared in vast numbers. The surface is mountainous or undulating, and well watered by large and navigable rivers. The soil is very productive.

*Nashville* (25,800), the capital of Tennessee, is situated on the Cumberland River. *Memphis* (40,000), on the Mississippi, and *Knoxville* are important commercial towns.

*Frankfort*, a small town, is the capital of Kentucky. *Louisville* (100,000), on the Ohio, is the largest city, with important manufactures and extensive trade. *Covington* (24,500) is the second city in size, and *Lexington* (14,800) is the centre of a large and fertile district.

Name the Southern States and their chief towns. What is said of these States? What are the principal mountains? Trace them on the map. Describe the surface. Name the principal rivers, and trace their courses on the map. Describe the coast-line. The climate. The soil and products. What is said of Georgia and other States? Describe Virginia. How

is it bounded? For what is it remarkable? How is it now divided? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe North Carolina. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe South Carolina. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Georgia. How is it bounded? What

are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Florida. How is it bounded? What is remarkable on the south coast? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Alabama. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Mississippi. How is it bounded? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Louisiana. To whom did Louisiana formerly belong? Describe New Orleans. What are the other chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Texas. How is it bounded? What rivers flow through it? What are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Arkansas. What is its capital? Describe Kentucky and Tennessee. How is Kentucky bounded? How is Tennessee bounded? What are the chief towns of Kentucky? Of Tennessee? Where are they situated?

## WESTERN STATES.

The Western States comprise:—

| States.           | Chief Towns.                                |
|-------------------|---|
| OHIO, . . .       | Cincinnati, Columbus, Cleveland.            |
| MICHIGAN, . . .   | Detroit, Lansing, Monroe, &c.               |
| INDIANA, . . .    | Indianapolis, Madison, Terre Haute.         |
| ILLINOIS, . . .   | Springfield, Chicago, Alton.                |
| WISCONSIN, . . .  | Milwaukee, Madison, Green Bay.              |
| MINNESOTA, . . .  | St Paul, Pembina.                           |
| IOWA, . . .       | Des Moines, Davenport, Burlington, Dubuque. |
| MISSOURI, . . .   | St Louis, Jefferson City.                   |
| KANSAS, . . .     | Lecompton, Topeka.                          |
| CALIFORNIA, . . . | San Francisco, Sacramento City.             |
| OREGON, . . .     | Salem, Portland, Oregon City.               |
| NEBRASKA, . . .   | Lincoln, Omaha.                             |
| NEVADA, . . .     | Carson City, Virginia City.                 |
| COLORADO, . . .   | Denver, Pueblo.                             |

The WESTERN STATES are generally considered to be those lying west of the Ohio and Mississippi Rivers. The surface of the country is in general composed of vast level prairies, sometimes gently undulating, and then called rolling prairies. They are principally covered with tall rank grass, and few forests occur except between the Rocky Mountains and the mountains of the Pacific. These prairies are admirably adapted for agriculture and pasturage, requiring but little labor to raise wheat, Indian-corn, and other grains in vast abundance. They are, however, in many places, marshy and unhealthy, especially in the neighborhood of rivers, the slope of the country being too little to carry off the superabundant moisture. South of the Missouri the country is more hilly and wooded. These States comprise the greater portion of the vast plain drained by the Mississippi and its tributaries. They are rich in minerals: gold, iron, lead, copper, and salt being found in great abundance. They have been chiefly peopled by settlers from the Eastern States, and from Great Britain and Germany.

OHIO is the most important State in the West for population and commerce. In the western part of the State the prairies commence, but in the east it is well wooded. The soil is fertile, producing wheat and Indian-corn in great abundance. Pork and wool are largely exported. Iron, coal, and salt are found in the south-east.

*Cincinnati* (216,000), one of the largest and most important cities in the West, is situated on the Ohio. It is well built, and carries on an extensive trade in pork and distilling. *Columbus* (34,000), near the centre of the State, is the capital. *Cleveland* (93,000), *Sandusky* (13,000), and *Toledo* (31,600), on Lake Erie, have a large shipping and inland trade. *Marietta* and *Portsmouth* are important towns.

MICHIGAN possesses the largest extent of lake-coast of any

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—UNITED STATES.—Which States are on the west bank of the Mississippi? Which on the east bank? Which adjoin the Dominion? Which are the principal cities on the Ohio? On the Missouri? Which States adjoin Mexico? Through which does the Colo-

rado (west) flow? Which are the principal cities on the Pacific coast? On L. Michigan? On L. Huron? On L. Erie? What Canadian town is opposite Detroit? In what direction from Chicago is Salt L. city? St. Louis? St. Paul's? Toronto? In what direction from St. Paul's is Pembina? Duluth?



State, being washed by *Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, and Erie*. Lake Michigan is entirely within the United States, being connected with Lake Huron by the Straits of Mackinaw, both shores of which are in Michigan. The soil is fertile, wheat being the staple. A large trade is carried on with Canada and with the States bordering on the lakes. Lumbering is extensively carried on, and on the shores of Lake Superior copper is found in great quantities.

*Detroit* (50,000), on the Detroit River, opposite Windsor in Ontario, is the principal city, possessing extensive lake commerce. *Lansing* is the capital. *Monroe, Saginaw, Ann Arbor, and Kalamazoo* are important towns, with large local trade.

INDIANA, ILLINOIS, IOWA, WISCONSIN, and MINNESOTA, all present the same general physical features, and resemble each other in surface, soil, and productions. They are all composed chiefly of vast prairies (Minnesota and Wisconsin being the only States which are at all wooded), and are watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries. The climate is dry, and warmer than in Canada, even in those States which are in the same latitude. The principal products are wheat and Indian-corn, and vast quantities of cattle are reared for the Eastern markets. Iowa and Wisconsin have valuable lead-mines. They are all new States, and are remarkable for the rapidity with which they have been settled and improved. The Sioux Indians inhabit the northern part of Minnesota.

The chief towns in Indiana:—*Indianapolis* (48,000), the capital; *Terre Haute* (16,000), *Evansville* (21,800), and *New Albany* (15,400), are important towns.

The chief towns in Illinois:—*Chicago* (299,000), on Lake Michigan, is the largest city. It has been built chiefly since 1830, and has risen into a large and elegant city with unparalleled rapidity. It carries on a very extensive commerce on the lakes, and is the great centre of the grain-growing Western States. In October 1871 it was devastated by a fire which destroyed one half the city, with enormous loss of property, but it has been rebuilt and remarkably improved. *Springfield* (17,300) is the capital. *Peoria* (22,800), *Alton*, and *Galena*, are important towns.

The chief towns in Iowa:—*Des Moines* (12,000) is the capital. *Davenport* (20,000), *Burlington* (15,000), *Dubuque* (18,400), and *Muscatine* are rising towns.

The chief towns in Wisconsin:—*Milwaukee* (71,500), the largest city, is another example of rapid growth and prosperity. It has been built principally since 1830, possesses a fine harbor on Lake Michigan, and a large trade on the lakes. *Madison* is the capital. *Racine* and *Green Bay* are rapidly rising towns. *Superior City* is at the extreme west end of Lake Superior.

The chief towns in Minnesota:—*St Paul* (20,000), the capital and largest town, is at the head of navigation on the Mississippi. *Duluth* is at the western end of Lake Superior.

MISSOURI is a large and important State, intersected by the Missouri River, which here joins the Mississippi. Its surface is level, consisting of extensive prairies, with a very fertile soil. It is especially rich in minerals, chiefly iron, lead, coal, and salt. The iron mountain in Missouri is an immense mass of almost pure iron. It is the chief depôt for trade with the Far

West. Corn, hemp, and tobacco grow abundantly, and vast herds of cattle are reared on the prairies.

*St Louis* (311,000), on the Mississippi, is the principal centre of trade for the hunters and traders west to the Rocky Mountains. It has also a very large trade on the Mississippi and Missouri Rivers, and has rapidly increased, having had, in 1840, a population of only 16,000. *Jefferson City*, near the centre of the State, is the capital. *St Genevieve, Independence, &c.*, are rising towns.

KANSAS is a new State, thinly settled, lying to the west of Missouri, with fertile prairie lands in the east, but barren in the west. The chief towns are *Leavenworth* (17,800), *Lecompton*, and *Lawrence*; and near them is *Topeka*, the capital.

CALIFORNIA, on the Pacific coast, is celebrated for its rich gold and silver mines, discovered in 1849, before which time it was almost uninhabited, except by Indians. It now contains 560,000 inhabitants. The country is mountainous, lying mainly between the parallel chains of the Pacific ranges. The mountains are generally covered with magnificent timber, and contain groves of enormous trees, each measuring from twenty to thirty feet in diameter. Gold is chiefly found on the west side of the *Sierra Nevada* mountains. Quicksilver is also found. The soil is productive, wheat and Indian-corn being extensively cultivated. Good wine is also made.

*San Francisco* (149,000), the largest city, and capital of California, is situated on a bay of the same name. It has suffered much from fires. Its commerce is enormous compared with its size, it being the principal commercial emporium on the Pacific coast. *Sacramento* (16,400), in the gold regions, *San José, Los Angeles, and Stockton*, are important towns.

OREGON is a new State, lying to the north of California, on the Pacific coast. It is mountainous, and covered with magnificent forests. The coast is rocky, and has few good harbors. The soil is very fertile between the mountains and the coast. It contains as yet but a small population, which is principally settled in the valley of the Willamette, between the Cascade range and the Pacific Ocean. *Salem*, on the Willamette, is the capital; *Portland* and *Oregon City* the chief towns.

NEBRASKA, NEVADA, and COLORADO are recently settled States, lately admitted into the Union as States. Nebraska is a prairie country; but Nevada and Colorado are mountainous, and are important for their valuable gold and silver mines.

In Nebraska are:—*Lincoln*, the capital, and *Omaha* (16,000), the easterly terminus of the Union Pacific Railway.

In Nevada are *Carson City*, the capital, and *Virginia City*, with its celebrated silver-mines.

In Colorado are *Denver*, the capital and principal city, and *Pueblo*, a growing city.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Name the Western States, and their chief towns. How are they situated? Describe the surface. Describe the prairies. What part of the country do these States comprise? What minerals are found in them? How have they been peopled? Describe Ohio. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Michigan. How is it bounded? What are the chief | towns? Where are they situated? Describe Indiana, Illinois, Iowa, Wisconsin, and Minnesota. How is each bounded? What are their chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Missouri. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Kansas. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe California. How is it |
|---|--|

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—UNITED STATES.—Which States touch on L. Superior? What river flows through Washington Terr. from Brit. Columbia? Through which States does the Missouri flow? What rivers flow into San Francisco Bay? What large lake is in Utah? How is Washington

Territory separated from Vancouver Is.? What is its extreme N.W. point called? In what direction from San Francisco is Victoria, V.I.? Sacramento? Salt Lake City? Chicago? Virginia City, Nev.? What peninsula is S. of California? Through which States do the Rocky Mts. extend?



bounded? Where is gold chiefly found? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Oregon. How is it bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are the situated? What are the chief towns of Nebraska, Colorado, and Nevada? How are these States bounded? How long have they been in the Union?

#### TERRITORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

The TERRITORIES of the United States are under the direct control of Congress until they become sufficiently populous to entitle them to be formed into independent States. They are ten in number, including Alaska:—

|             |         |          |             |          |
|-------------|---------|----------|-------------|----------|
| Washington. | Dakota. | Utah.    | New Mexico. | Alaska.  |
| Idaho.      | Indian. | Montana. | Arizona.    | Wyoming. |

The country occupied by the Territories resembles generally that of the adjacent States. Those to the east of the Rocky Mountains are level prairie lands. Those to the west are more mountainous, or consist of high tablelands, such as Utah. In Washington Territory the country is covered with magnificent forests; but along the Rocky Mountains, on each side, is a vast, barren tract, almost destitute of fresh water, becoming broader in Utah, New Mexico, and Arizona.

WASHINGTON TERRITORY lies between British Columbia and Oregon. *Olympia*, at the head of Puget Sound, is the capital.

IDAHO, MONTANA, and DAKOTA adjoin the North-West Territory of Canada, and are very thinly peopled. Their capitals are respectively *Boisé City*, *Helena*, and *Yankton*. *Pembina*, in the north-west corner of Dakota, on the Red River, is the nearest point of communication with Manitoba, and a railway is now being built to connect it with Winnipeg.

ARIZONA and NEW MEXICO adjoin Mexico, and are very mountainous and rich in minerals, particularly gold and silver. *Tucson* is the capital of Arizona; and *Santa Fé*, on the great south-west overland route, the capital of New Mexico.

WYOMING is traversed by the Union Pacific Railway, to which it owes most of its progress. It is mountainous, and contains valuable coal-mines. *Cheyenne City*, the capital, and *Laramie*, both stations on the railway, are the principal towns.

The Indian Territory is a portion of land set apart for the Indians who have been deported from the more settled States. They consist chiefly of Cherokees, Creeks, Choctaws, and Seminoles.

Utah contains the celebrated Great Salt Lake, near which is *Salt Lake City* (13,000), the chief city and settlement of the Mormons, who carry on a kind of independent government there. It has been made the centre of a fertile district by irrigation, and round it are a number of small villages, also peopled by the Mormons.

Alaska, formerly Russian America, comprises the north-west corner of the continent of North America, being separated from the Dominion of Canada by the 141st degree of west longitude. A chain of volcanic mountains extends from Mount St Elias through the peninsula of Alaska and the Aleutian Isles. The Yukon River, rising in the Rocky Mountains, flows north-west and west through the centre of the country, and falls into Behring Strait, while the Colville River flows north into the Arctic Ocean.

It is an inhospitable region, where rain and snow continually fall, although not so cold as in the same latitude on the eastern side of the continent. It is only valuable for its furs, which the natives formerly bartered with the Russians, who had several factories along the coast, the chief of which is New Archangel on Sitka Island. The inhabitants are Esquimaux

and Indians, who lead a wandering and barbarous life, and subsist by hunting and fishing.

This Territory was purchased by the United States in 1867.

What is the position of the Territories of the United States before they become States? Name those now in existence. Where are they situated? Describe their surface. For what is the Indian Territory set apart? Who inhabit Utah? Describe their city. Describe the Territory of Alaska. What are its geographical features? What is its value? To whom did it formerly belong? What is the chief trading port? Describe its inhabitants.

#### MEXICO.

Area, 761,000 square miles; population, 9,173,000; persons to square mile, 12; four times the size of Quebec.

Capital, Mexico.

The UNITED STATES OF MEXICO are bounded on the North by the United States; on the West by the Pacific Ocean; on the South by the Pacific Ocean and Central America; and on the East by the Gulf of Mexico.

Mexico consists of twenty-three states, one territory, and one federal district, united under a government formed like that of the United States.

The surface is for the most part a high plateau, from 6000 to 8000 feet above the sea. It is subject to volcanic eruptions and earthquakes. The *Rocky Mountains* are continued through Mexico under the name of the *Cordilleras*. These are highest in the south, where the lofty volcanoes Orizaba and Popocatepetl rise to the height of 17,000 feet.

The principal rivers are the *Rio Grande*, which forms the north-eastern boundary, and flows into the Gulf of Mexico, and the *Santiago*, flowing into the Pacific Ocean.

The coast-line of Mexico is more broken on the Pacific than on the Gulf of Mexico. The principal gulfs are those of *Mexico*, *Campeachy*, and *California*; the latter extending 700 miles into the land, and meeting the Colorado River from the United States.

The principal capes are *Catoche*, *Corrientes*, and *St Lucas*.

Mexico possesses the temperatures and climates of the three zones. On the coast it is hot and unhealthy, gradually becoming milder towards the high plateau in the interior; on the higher mountains it is cold, and the snow never melts. Its productions are also various. Indian-corn forms the principal staple; and besides that, coffee, cocoa, sugar, indigo, and the maguey, from which pulque, the favorite drink of the lower classes, is made, are extensively cultivated. On the coast all the tropical fruits, and on the high lands all the European grains, flourish. Yucatan exports mahogany and logwood.

The cochineal insect, yielding a valuable dye, is largely exported. Immense herds of cattle, horses, and mules are reared on the northern prairies. It is also rich in minerals; and, previous to the revolution of 1821, its mines produced nearly 25,000,000 dollars of silver annually. They are not now so productive. Iron, copper, lead, and quicksilver are also found. The inhabitants are composed of native whites or creoles, Indians, and mixed races of whites, Indians, and negroes. The Indians of the south are comparatively civilized, and live in villages; in the north they are savage, and are continually at war with each other and with the white inhabitants.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—UNITED STATES.—Which States or Territories adjoin Manitoba? Where does the Red River (north) rise? Where does the Missouri rise? the Mississippi? How are the Western and Southern States separated from the Eastern? Which of the great northern lakes is en-

tirely within the United States? Which States touch on Lake Michigan? How is Lake Michigan connected with Lake Huron? How is L. Superior connected with Lake Huron? How is Alaska separated from the N.W. Territory? What islands extend westward from Alaska? (see N. America).

Mexico was first conquered by the Spaniards, under Cortez, in 1521. At that time it consisted of an extensive empire under a regular government. The people were the most civilized on the continent, and many interesting monuments still remain to show their ancient grandeur. The principal of these is the pyramid of Cholula, 70 miles east of Mexico, which is a lofty mound, covering a greater area than any of the great pyramids of Egypt. The colonists threw off the Spanish yoke in 1821, and established a republic, but have since been almost continually engaged in intestine feuds. In 1846-48, during the war with the United States, they lost the northern part of their territory, which now forms the State of California, and the territories of Utah, New Mexico, and Arizona. In 1861, France, England, and Spain sent an expedition against Mexico, in order to indemnify themselves for losses sustained by their subjects in that country. England and Spain soon withdrew, but the French, not satisfied with this, conquered the greater part of the country, and induced the Archduke Maximilian of Austria to accept the title of Emperor of Mexico. As long as the French army occupied the country, Maximilian retained this dignity, but early in 1867, when the French troops were withdrawn, the Emperor, after a brave but futile resistance, was taken prisoner and shot by the Republican forces. The government is now republican in form.

Owing to the hitherto unsettled state of the country, education and general improvements have been grossly neglected. The Roman Catholic is the only religion tolerated.

*Mexico* (210,000), the principal city, is beautifully situated in a fertile plain, about 7500 feet above the sea. It is an elegant city, adorned with fountains and magnificent churches. About 50 miles south-east, amid numerous peaks, rises the volcano Popocatepetl, or Smoking Mountain. *Vera Cruz* (10,000), to the east of Mexico, is the principal port. Its harbor is poor, and the situation low, hot, and unhealthy. In going from Vera Cruz to Mexico, the traveller passes through several distinct zones of vegetation, from the tropical on the coast to the temperate on the plains. *La Puebla* (75,500) and *Guadalajara* (70,000) are the next most important towns. *Matamoras* (20,000), near the mouth of the Rio Grande, *Tampico*, and *Campeachy* are the principal ports on the east, and *Acapulco* and *Mazatlan* on the west; *Guanajuato* (63,000), *Zacatecas* (15,000), and *San Luis Potosi* (35,500), are in the centre of the richest silver-mines. *Merida* (23,500) is the capital of Yucatan.

What is the area of Mexico? Population? Size? Capital? How is Mexico bounded? What does it consist of? Describe the surface. What mountains are there in Mexico? Name the principal rivers, and trace them on the map. Describe the coast-line. Name the principal gulfs, and state where they are situated. Name the principal capes, and say where they are situated. Describe the climate. Productions. What is exported? What are reared on the prairies? What minerals are found? Describe the inhabitants. Wheat and by whom was Mexico first conquered? What was the state of the country and people at that time? What has happened in Mexico during this century? What is the present state of education, &c.? Describe the principal towns, &c. Where are they situated?

#### CENTRAL AMERICA.

Area, 260,000 square miles; population, 2,700,000; persons to square mile, 13; about the size of Quebec.

CENTRAL AMERICA is the name generally given to that portion of North America lying between Mexico

and South America, forming an isthmus between the two continents.

It is composed of five independent states and one British colony:—

| States.           | Chief Towns.         |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| GUATEMALA, . . .  | New Guatemala.       |
| SAN SALVADOR, . . | San Salvador.        |
| HONDURAS, . . .   | Comayagua, Truxillo. |
| NICARAGUA, . . .  | Leon, Managua.       |
| COSTA RICA, . . . | San José.            |
| BRITISH HONDURAS, | Belize.              |

Central America resembles Mexico in climate, productions, religion, and institutions. It consists of a high plateau, from which rise numerous volcanoes. Earthquakes and volcanic eruptions are frequent and very destructive. Most of the principal towns are situated on the inland plateau, and on the coast the settlements are very unhealthy. The inhabitants are chiefly Indians, or a mixed race of Indians, Negroes, and Spaniards.

These republics formerly belonged to Spain, but declared themselves independent in 1821: and since then have been the seat of continual war and strife amongst themselves. In 1823 they formed themselves into a confederation as the United States of Central America, but in 1839 dissolved the union, and are now all independent states.

The soil is rich and fertile, and, as in Mexico, combines the productions of the tropical with those of the temperate zone. The chief exports are mahogany, logwood, indigo, cochineal, cocoa, sarsaparilla, &c.

The Isthmus of Panama, at the southern extremity of these states, belonging to New Granada, in South America, is traversed by a railway, affording direct communication between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

Several schemes have been proposed to form a ship-canal from the Caribbean Sea to the Pacific by way of Lake Nicaragua, which is nearly as large as Lake Ontario, and about 123 feet above the level of the sea. The San Juan River forms its outlet to the Caribbean Sea, and it is only 20 miles distant from the Pacific.

*British Honduras* is a British colony. It exports large quantities of mahogany. *Belize*, the capital, is an important depot for British goods.

The *Mosquito Coast* lies along the coast east of Honduras and Nicaragua, from Cape Gracias à Dios to the mouth of the San Juan River. It is governed by a native prince, and is under the protectorate of Britain. The capital is *Bluefields*.

*New Guatemala* (40,000) is the largest city in Central America. *Old Guatemala*, once a magnificent city, was almost destroyed by a volcanic eruption, and afterwards by an earthquake, in 1773; so that most of the inhabitants removed, and founded the new city.

*San Salvador* (20,000), near the Pacific coast, is the centre of the indigo-producing country. It was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1854.

*Comayagua* (12,000) is the capital and *Truxillo* the seaport of Honduras.

*Leon* (25,000) is the largest city and *Managua* (10,000) is the capital of Nicaragua. *San Juan*, or *Greytown*, a rising town, was bombarded by a United States force in 1854.

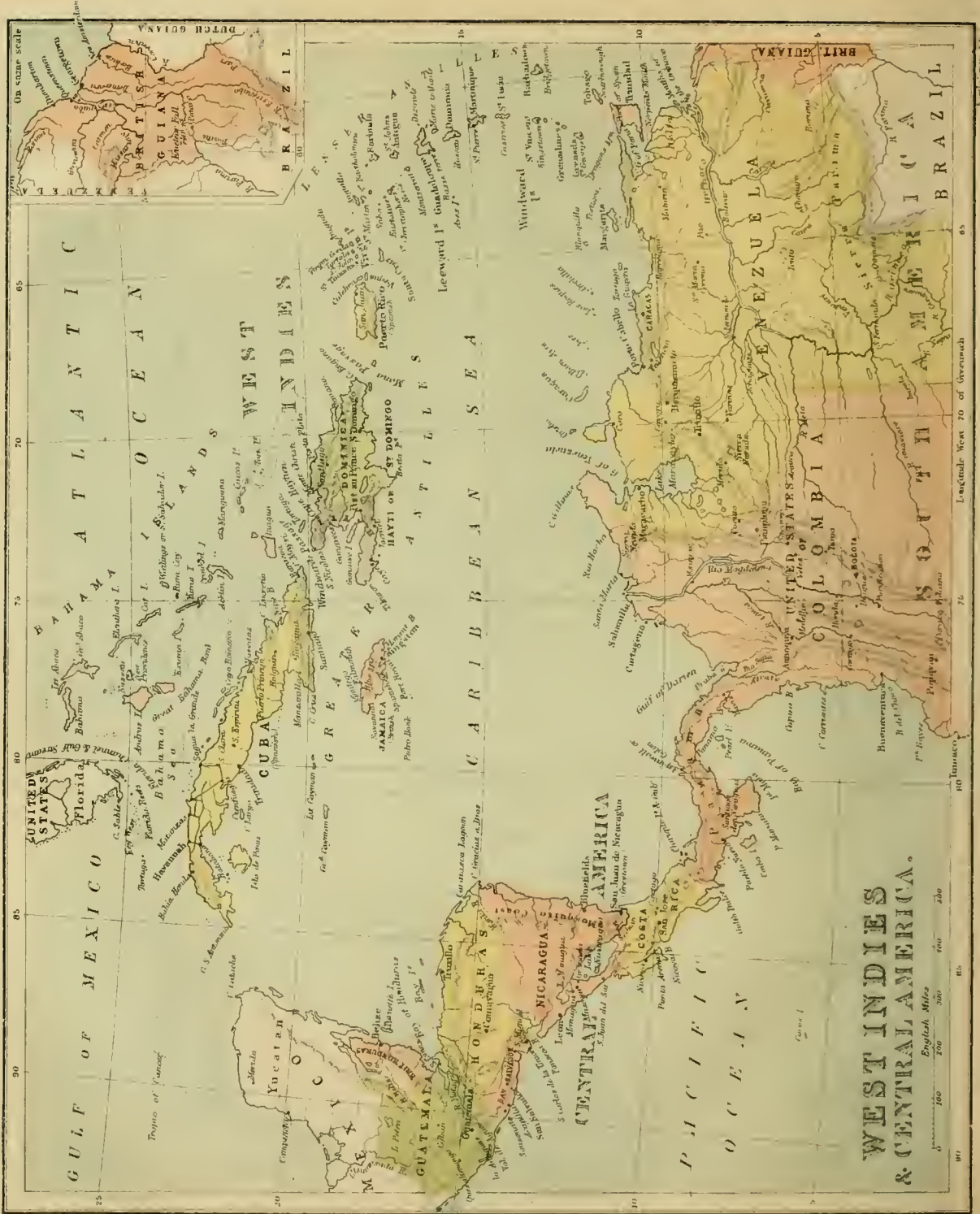
*San José* (25,000) is the capital of Costa Rica.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—CENTRAL AMERICA.—What large gulf is on the W. of Mexico? What is the southern point of the peninsula of Lower California called? What river separates Mexico from Texas? Which Central American States adjoin Mexico? What large gulf is on the E. of

Mexico? Which are the principal ports on the G. of Mexico? On the Pacific Ocean? What peninsula is in the G. of Mexico? What is its north-eastern point called? In what zone is the southern part of Mexico? In what direction from the city of Mexico is Vera Cruz? Mazatlan? Acapulco?







What is the area of Central America? Population? Size? What part of the continent does it comprise? Describe Central America. Describe the soil, products, and exports. Of what States is it composed? What is their political condition? What schemes have been proposed? What means of com-

munication are there between the Atlantic and Pacific coasts? Describe British Honduras and its chief town. How is it situated? Describe the Mosquito Coast. Describe the chief towns of Guatemala, San Salvador, Honduras, Nicaragua, Costa Rica. How are they situated?

### WEST INDIA ISLANDS.

Area, 95,000 square miles; population, 4,500,000; nearly 5 persons to a square mile.

The WEST INDIA ISLANDS form an extensive archipelago, reaching from the peninsula of Florida, in North America, to the delta of the Orinoco, in South America, and enclosing the Caribbean Sea. They comprise nearly 1000 islands, most of them small uninhabited rocks, and are usually divided into three groups—the Bahamas, and the Greater and Lesser Antilles; the latter are subdivided into the Virgin Islands in the north, the Leeward Islands in the middle, and the Windward Islands in the south.

They all belong to European Powers, except Hayti, which is independent. Margarita and a few small islands along the coast belong to Venezuela in South America. They are in general mountainous, the largest being traversed by ranges of a considerable height, and high peaks rise from many of the smaller islands. In the Lesser Antilles there are many volcanoes, and earthquakes are frequent. Many of the small islands have been formed by submarine volcanoes. Coral reefs generally extend round the coasts, which are frequently precipitous. Sandbanks, and coral reefs rising almost perpendicularly from a vast depth, render navigation very dangerous, especially among the Bahamas.

The climate is hot and unhealthy, but modified by the sea and land breezes on the coast, and by the height of the mountains in the interior. From June to August the sky is clear and unclouded, and the planet Venus so brilliant as to cast a shadow. Like most tropical countries, they have the wet and dry seasons, and violent hurricanes occur from August to October. From November to May is the most pleasant season.

The islands are celebrated for their rich productions. Every variety of tropical fruits and spices, such as oranges, pine apples, bananas, ginger, &c., grow in abundance, and the forests produce valuable cabinet woods. The sugar-cane and coffee form the great staple products; the first yielding sugar, rum, and molasses. Tobacco, indigo, pepper, and various spices are extensively cultivated. No wild animals are found; but birds and insects are beautiful and numerous. Turtles are found on the coasts of most of the islands.

The population consists chiefly of negroes and mixed races, the whites only numbering about one-sixth of the whole. The negroes are slaves, except in the British and French islands. The British Government in 1834 paid 100,000,000 dollars to free the slaves on the British Islands.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—CENTRAL AMERICA.—Between what States is the Isthmus of Panama? What gulf lies to the E. of Yucatan? What is the eastern point of Honduras called? Which are the principal Central American ports on the Caribbean Sea? On the Pacific Ocean? In what

direction from Aspinwall is Jamaica? New Orleans? New York? In what zone are the C. American States? What sea is between the W. India Islands and C. America? Which is the largest of the W. India Islands? In what position is Jamaica from Cuba? From Trinidad?

formed? Describe the coast. Describe the climate, productions, animals, &c. How is the population composed? What did the British Government do for the slaves?

### BRITISH ISLANDS.

Area, 13,000 square miles; population, 1,100,000; three-fourths the size of Nova Scotia.

The British Islands comprise all the Bahamas, Jamaica in the Greater Antilles, and the greater number of the Lesser Antilles. They are formed into five separate Governments:—

|  | Chief Towns.            |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. BAHAMAS, . . . . .                              | Nassau.                 |
| 2. JAMAICA, . . . . .                              | Spanish Town, Kingston. |
| 3. LEeward ISLANDS, comprising—                    |                         |
| TORTOLA, . . . . .                                 | Tortola.                |
| ANEGADA, and VIRGIN GORDA, . . . . .               |                         |
| ANGUILLA, . . . . .                                |                         |
| BARBUDA, . . . . .                                 |                         |
| ST CHRISTOPHER, (St Kitts), . . . . .              | Basseterre.             |
| NEVIS, . . . . .                                   | Charlestown.            |
| ANTIGUA, . . . . .                                 | St John.                |
| MONTSEARAT, . . . . .                              | Plymouth.               |
| DOMINICA, . . . . .                                | Roseau.                 |
| 4. WINDWARD ISLANDS, comprising—                   |                         |
| St LUCIA, . . . . .                                | Castries.               |
| St VINCENT, . . . . .                              | Kingston.               |
| DARADEOES, . . . . .                               | Bridgetown.             |
| G. ENADIMES, (cluster of small islands), . . . . . |                         |
| GRENADA, . . . . .                                 | St George.              |
| TOBAGO, . . . . .                                  | Scarborough.            |
| 5. TRINIDAD, . . . . .                             | Port of Spain.          |
| BERMUDAS, . . . . .                                | St George.              |

1. The *Bahamas* (35,000) are the most northerly of the West India Islands, and comprise about 500 islands, very few of which are inhabited. They are generally low, barren, and rocky, surrounded by coral reefs. The Gulf Stream sweeps through the channel between Florida and the Great Bahama Bank, from which most of the Bahama Islands rise, at the rate of five miles an hour, rendering navigation very dangerous, and wrecks frequent. The principal islands are—*Bahama*, which gives its name to the group; *New Providence*, upon which is situated Nassau, (7000,) the capital; *Turk's Island*, celebrated for its salt; *San Salvador*, the first land reached by Columbus.

2. *Jamaica* (506,000), the largest and most valuable of the British Islands, is nearly three times the size of Prince Edward Island. It was taken from Spain in 1655. The *Blue Mountains*, rising over 7000 feet high, and covered with forests, traverse the island from east to west. They are more precipitous on the south than on the north side. The country is well watered by small streams, and produces large quantities of sugar, rum, coffee, and spices, which are chiefly exported to Britain. *Kingston* (35,000), the capital, is situated on the north side of Port Royal, a fine harbor, well defended. It carries on a large shipping trade, and is connected by railway with *Spanish Town*, the former capital, ten miles distant, *Montego Bay* is an important seaport.

3. *Leeward Islands* (117,000). Antigua is the principal island, containing *St John* (15,500), the capital, and seat of government. *St Christopher* possesses a very fertile soil. *Basseterre* (7000), its principal town, and *Roseau* (5000), the principal town of Dominica, export sugar, rum, and molasses largely.

direction from Aspinwall is Jamaica? New Orleans? New York? In what zone are the C. American States? What sea is between the W. India Islands and C. America? Which is the largest of the W. India Islands? In what position is Jamaica from Cuba? From Trinidad?



4. The *Windward Islands* (280,000) are the most easterly and southerly of the West India Islands. *Barbadoes* is the oldest British settlement, and is densely peopled, containing more than 800 persons to the square mile. *Bridgetown* (21,300), the largest town, is the capital and seat of government. In *St Vincent* is the volcano of *Morne Garou*. *Kingston* (5500), its chief town, carries on an extensive trade. *St George*, in *Grenada*, *Castries*, in *St Lucia*, and *Scarborough*, in *Tobago*, are important towns.

5. *Trinidad* (110,000) is the most southerly of the West India Islands, and is, next to *Jamaica*, the largest of the British Islands, being about the same size as *Prince Edward Island*. It is separated from *Venezuela* by the *Gulf of Paria*. It is distinguished for its fertility and beautiful scenery, and is covered with magnificent and valuable forests. On the south-west promontory is a lake of asphalt, or pitch, a mile and a half in diameter, and of unknown depth; and near it are a number of remarkable mud volcanoes. The exports are cocoa, sugar, and molasses. *Port of Spain* (12,000), on the west coast, is the capital.

The *Bermudas* (12,000) are a group of small coral islands, nearly 400 in number, of which only five are inhabited. They lie in the Atlantic, about 600 miles east of *South Carolina*. They are celebrated for their delightful climate, and are the favorite resort of invalids. The chief products are potatoes and arrowroot. *St George* is the largest island, and contains the principal town of the same name, with 3000 inhabitants. It has a good harbor, well fortified, and is an important British naval station.

What is the extent of the British west India Islands? Population? How are they divided? Name them, and point them out on the map. Describe the *Bahamas*. How are they situated? The chief islands? Describe *Jamaica*. How is it situated? What mountains does it contain? Describe its products. What are the chief towns? Describe the *Leeward Islands*. How are they situated? What are the principal islands, and their chief towns? Describe the *Windward Islands*. How are they situated? Describe the principal islands and their chief towns. Describe *Trinidad*. How is it situated? What remarkable lake, &c., does it contain? What are its exports? What is its chief town? Describe the *Bermudas*. Where are they situated? What is the principal island and town, and for what is it useful?

#### SPANISH ISLANDS.

Area, 52,000 square miles; population, 2,000,000; about the size of *New Brunswick* and *Nova Scotia*.

The *Spanish Islands* are *Cuba*, *Isla de Pinos*, and *Puerto Rico*.

*CUBA* (1,370,000) is the largest and most important of all the West India Islands. It is 760 miles long, and about 60 broad, and is traversed by an extensive chain of mountains from east to west, covered with valuable cabinet woods, such as mahogany, &c. The soil is very fertile, especially in the valleys in the north, producing sugar, coffee, and the best tobacco. It possesses valuable copper-mines in the east. Its climate is delightful, and hurricanes rarely occur. A very large proportion of the inhabitants are negro slaves, but as the Government of Spain, since the revolution in 1868, has decided to abolish slavery, they will probably be emancipated shortly, and thus the last remnant of negro slavery will have passed away.

*Havana* (230,000) is the capital and largest city, and possesses a magnificent harbor. It carries on a large trade, and is celebrated for its cigars. It is elegantly built, and the cathedral contains the remains of *Columbus*. It is connected by railway with *Matanzas* (36,000), a considerable seaport, as is also *Santiago* (24,000). *Puerto Principe* (33,000), a large town, is situated in the interior, and is poorly built.

*Puerto Rico* lies to the east of *Hayti*. It is beautifully diversified in surface, well watered, and very fertile. It exports chiefly sugar, coffee, and tobacco. *San Juan* (20,000), on the north coast, is the capital.

*Hayti*, or *St Domingo* (about 700,000), lying to the east of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, is the second of the West India Islands in size. For many years it was owned jointly by France and Spain; but in 1791, during the French Revolution, the negroes expelled the French, formed a kind of republic of their own, and were declared independent in 1800. The Spaniards held the other portion till 1821. Both portions now form the separate independent republics of *Hayti* and *Dominica*; but they are continually in a turmoil of revolutions. The island is fertile, producing sugar, tobacco, &c., and the condition of the country under the negroes is much better than that of the Central American States.

*Port au Prince* (21,000) is the capital of *Hayti*, and *Cape Haytien* a large and important town.

*St Domingo* (10,000) is the capital of *Dominica*, and is remarkable as having been the first city founded by the Spaniards in America. *Santiago* is also a large town.

*Samana*, on the north-east coast, has been purchased by the United States as a naval station.

The *French Islands* comprise—

*Martinique* (chief town, *St Pierre*), *Guadeloupe* (chief town, *Basseterre*), *Marie Galante*, *Desirade*, and the northern part of *St Martin*.

*St Pierre* (20,000) is the capital and largest town, and *Port Royal* the seaport of *Martinique*. *Guadeloupe* contains the volcano *La Soufrière*, or *Sulphur Mountain*. *Basseterre* is the capital, and *Point-à-Pitre* the largest town.

The *Dutch Islands* comprise—

*St Eustatius*, *Saba*, the southern part of *St Martin*, and *Buen Ayre*, *Curaçoa*, and *Oruba*, off the coast of *Venezuela*.

*St Eustatius*, on the island of the same name, and *Willemstadt*, on *Curaçoa*, are the principal towns, and carry on a considerable trade.

The *Danish Islands* comprise—

*St Thomas*, *St John*, and *Santa Cruz*.

*St Thomas*, on the island of the same name, is the principal station for the West India mail-steamers.

*Christianstadt*, on *Santa Cruz*, is an important town.

*Sweden* possesses *St Bartholomew*, with its capital *Gustavia*.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—WEST INDIES.—Which island is nearest to *Yucatan*? Which group is most northerly? Which most southerly? How is *Puerto Rico* situated? In what direction is *Havana* from *Key West*? *St Thomas* from *Kingston*. *Jamaica*? What islands are near *San*

*Domingo*? How is *Port au Prince* situated? Among what groups of islands are the French Islands? The Dutch Islands? The Danish Islands? How is *Trinidad* separated from *South America* on the West? In what groups are *St Kitt's*, *Nevis*, *Barbadoes*, *Barbuda*?







Which are the Spanish West India Islands? How are they situated? What is their extent? Population? Size? Describe Cuba. Its productions, soil, climate, &c. Which are its chief towns? Where are they situated? Describe Puerto Rico. Its chief town. Describe Hayti. How is it situated? How was it divided? What is its present position? Describe the soil,

&c. State of the country. What are the chief towns? What islands belong to France? Where are they situated? What are their chief towns? What islands belong to Holland? Where are they situated? What are their chief towns? What islands belong to Denmark? How are they situated? What island belongs to Sweden?

## SOUTH AMERICA.

Area, 7,150,000 square miles; greatest extent from north to south, 4600 miles; and from east to west, 3200 miles; population, 27,420,000; persons to square mile, 4.

SOUTH AMERICA comprises the southern portion of the American continent from the Isthmus of Panama. It is bounded on the North by the Caribbean Sea; on the West by the Pacific Ocean; on the South by the Antarctic Ocean; and on the East by the Atlantic Ocean.

Like North America, South America may be divided into four great regions, besides the narrow strip of land between the Andes and the Pacific: the north-eastern slope or valley of the Orinoco; the great central plain or valley of the Amazon, extending from the Andes on the Pacific coast to the Atlantic Ocean, across the widest part of the continent; the Atlantic slope from the mountains of Brazil eastward; and the south-eastern slope or valley of the La Plata, consisting chiefly of vast pampas or desert plains.

The great chain of the *Andes* extends from the extreme north to the southern point of the continent, more than 4000 miles in length, along the Pacific coast, from which it is never more than 200 miles distant. The Andes are only exceeded in height by a few peaks of the Himalayas, but are nowhere in the world equalled for the vast extent and size of their rugged masses. In the north they consist of three parallel chains, but do not reach their greatest height until they unite in the high tablelands of Quito in Ecuador, which are 6000 feet above the sea. Here they form a mass of enormous volcanoes from 18,000 to 22,000 feet above the sea, their summits covered with perpetual snow. Amongst these are Chimborazo; Cotopaxi, the most dreaded volcano; Antisana, and others. They then extend south in two parallel chains, enclosing Lake Titicaca, which is 12,000 feet above the sea, and 150 miles in length, and empties only into another small lake, which has no apparent outlet. On the tablelands between Bolivia and Peru they form another group of immense peaks of equal height, comprising Illimani, Sorata, Sahama, Arequipa, and others. From this they extend southwards in one chain, till, from occupying 400 miles in breadth, they gradually narrow down to 20 in Patagonia. The highest summits in the whole range are Sorata in Bolivia, 24,812 feet, and Aconcagua, near Valparaiso, in Chili, nearly 24,000 feet high.

In the north-east are the parallel chains of the Parimé and Acaray mountains, rising from 7000 to 10,000 feet high; and in the east, in Brazil, there are several chains of mountains.

generally stretching from north to south, but not of any great height.

The Andes contain the sources of some of the greatest rivers in the world. The *Amazon* rises in Peru, receives on the north bank the *Napo*, *Putumayo*, *Yapura*, and *Negro*—the latter forming a remarkable connexion with the Orinoco by means of the *Cassiquiare River*; and on the south bank, the *Ucayali*, *Purus*, *Madeira*, *Tapajos*, and *Xingu*; and flows into the Atlantic by an estuary 180 miles wide at its mouth, after a course of over 4000 miles. It is navigable to the mouth of the *Ucayali*, over 2000 miles, and most of its affluents for the greater part of their courses. On the *Madeira* are remarkable falls. The tide flows into the Amazon as far as 300 miles from its mouth; and at spring tides is headed by a bore, or tidal wave, which frequently swallows up and destroys any boats on the river.

The *La Plata* is formed by the junction of the *Uruguay* and *Parana Rivers*, rising in the high table-lands of Brazil, the latter receiving from the west the *Salado*, and *Paraguay*, which also has several large tributaries. It is 2700 miles long, and is navigable for large vessels for 1300 miles. At Buenos Ayres, 200 miles from its mouth, it is 30 miles wide.

The *Orinoco* rises in the Parimé Mountains, and flows into the Atlantic, by a number of mouths, a little south of the Island of Trinidad. Its length is about 1600 miles, and it is navigable for 1000 miles. The Orinoco connects with the Rio Negro and Amazon by the *Cassiquiare River*, forming a complete chain of inland navigation.

The other important rivers are the *Magdalena*, flowing into the Caribbean Sea; the *Essequibo*, *Para*, with its affluent the *Tocantins*, *Paranahyba*, and *San Francisco* in the north, and the *Colorado* and *Negro* in the south, flowing into the Atlantic. The Para may be considered as an arm of the Amazon, separating Marajo Island from the mainland.

West of the Andes are no rivers of consequence, the mountains being so close to the coast, and the intervening land being generally hot and dry.

South America is very compact, the coast-line being almost unbroken.

The principal capes are on the east coast,—*Gallinas*, *St Roque*, *Frio*, *St Antonio*; and *Horn*, at the southern extremity.

The bays, straits, &c., are few. The principal are:—

The *Gulfs of Darien*, *Maracaibo*, [lan. between Patagonia and Tierra and *Paria*, on the north; *All Saints* del Fuego; the *Gulfs of Guayaquil Bay*, *Gulfs of Matias* and *St George*, and *Panama* on the west; besides on the east; the *Strait of Magel-* the estuaries of the large rivers.

To the south are the *Falkland Islands*, *Tierra del Fuego*, *Cape Horn*, *Staten Island*, and numerous small groups of islands off the west coast of Patagonia, the principal of which are *Wellington Island* and *Chiloe Island*. To the west of Chili is *Juan Fernandez Island*, and off the coast of Ecuador are the *Galapagos* or *Turtle Islands*.

The climate of South America varies greatly even within a distance of a few miles. At the equator the snow-line is about 16,000 feet above the sea, and from this down to the base of

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—SOUTH AMERICA.—How is South America joined to North America? What oceans and sea wash the shores of South America? What rivers flow into the Atlantic? Into the Caribbean Sea? Do any rivers flow into the Pacific? What is the cause of

this? In what zone is the greater part of South America situated? Which countries border on the Caribbean Sea? On the Atlantic? On the Pacific? Which is the largest country? Which is entirely in the interior? What is the southern point of South America called?



the mountains are to be found the climate and vegetation of all the zones in succession. It is generally hot and unhealthy on the coast; on the east within the tropics it is very moist, but on some parts of the west coast rain never falls. No part of the world is so subject to volcanic eruptions and earthquakes as those countries situated near the Andes. Nearly all the principal cities in the western part of the continent have been more or less destroyed by them. An earthquake at one time permanently raised a great part of the coast of Chili from two to seven feet above its former level.

The soil of South America is remarkable for its fertility. Humboldt estimates the vegetable productions of South America at about one-third of all the varieties in the world. Along the banks of the Amazon the country is densely wooded, but the courses of the other large rivers are chiefly through vast grassy plains. Cassava, cocoa, indigo, sugar, cotton, coffee, Peruvian bark, and other medicinal plants, cinnamon, and all the tropical fruits and spices, are produced abundantly and with but little labor: but owing to the unsettled political state of the country, and the want of enterprise in the inhabitants, agriculture is greatly neglected, and the vast resources of the continent lie idle.

The animals peculiar to South America are—the llama and the alpaca; the first a species of camel, but smaller, and without a hump; the other resembling a sheep or goat, and yielding fine wool; the condor of the Andes, the sloth, taper, armadillo; monkeys, serpents, birds of brilliant plumage, and a great variety of insects swarm, especially in the forests of Guiana.

South America is also very rich in the most valuable minerals: gold, diamonds, and precious stones are extensively found in Brazil and other parts; silver in Peru and Bolivia; and iron and other metals in Brazil.

The Portuguese formerly possessed Brazil, and the Spaniards the rest of the continent, except Patagonia, which is little known and little valued; but all the States are now independent.

When South America was first conquered by the Spaniards, the inhabitants of Peru were to a great extent civilised, had a regular form of government, and built fine cities, temples, and monuments; but most of the other Indians, as they were called, were ignorant and barbarous. The present population consists chiefly of Indians, and mixed races of whites, Indians, and negroes. The whites probably number less than one-third of the whole.

South America is divided into nine republics, one limited monarchy (Brazil), and one European possession (Guiana), Patagonia being still in the possession of the natives.

#### *The Countries are:—*

|  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| New Granada, or United States of Colombia. | Bolivia, or Upper Peru. |
| Venezuela.                                 | Chili.                  |
| Ecuador.                                   | La Plata or Argentina.  |
| Guiana.                                    | Paraguay.               |
| Brazil.                                    | Uruguay.                |
| Peru.                                      | Patagonia.              |

What is the area of South America? Extent? Population? What does South America comprise? How is it bounded? How may it

be divided? Describe the divisions. Describe the Andes. Trace them on the map. Describe their appearance in the different coun-

tries. What other mountains are there? Point them out on the map. Name the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the Amazon, La Plata, Orinoco. Describe the coast-line of South America. Name the principal gulfs, bays, straits, &c. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal capes, and point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal islands, and point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of South America. To what is South America subject? Describe the soil, vegetable productions, state of the country. Describe the animals, minerals, and where they are found. What was the condition of Peru when first conquered? Describe the present inhabitants. How is South America divided? Name the countries, and point them out.

#### NEW GRANADA, OR UNITED STATES OF COLOMBIA.

Area, 520,000 square miles; population, 2,900,000; persons to square mile, 5½; three times the size of Ontario.

Capital, BOGOTA.

The UNITED STATES OF COLOMBIA occupy the north-west part of the continent, and join Central America by the Isthmus of Panama or Darien, which is from 30 to 50 miles wide. Along with the adjoining states Venezuela and Ecuador, it formed the republic of Colombia, after the Spanish colonies had gained their independence; but the confederation was broken up in 1832, and each State now forms an independent republic.

The Andes traverse the western part of the country in three chains, but in the south and east it is a level plain, forming part of the llanos, or vast grassy plains annually inundated by the Orinoco. The *Magdalena River* flows northward, between the parallel chains of the Andes, into the Caribbean Sea, after a course of about 860 miles.

The climate in the lower parts of the country is hot, damp, and unhealthy; but most of the cities are built on the high tablelands of the Andes. The forests in the mountains contain mahogany, caoutchouc, and other valuable trees. The soil is fertile; and cotton, sugar, indigo, coffee, cocoa, cinnamon, and other tropical products grow in great abundance; but agriculture and commerce are at a low ebb. On the llanos vast herds of cattle roam; and hides and tallow form important articles of export. Gold, platinum, and precious stones are also found in the mountains.

The Isthmus of Panama, belonging to the United States, is now traversed by a railway from Aspinwall, on the Caribbean Sea, to Panama, on the Pacific; affording great facilities for the commerce of the Eastern States with California and the Pacific.

The only religion tolerated is the Roman Catholic.

*Bogota* (50,000), the capital, is a well-built city, situated on a level plain, nearly 9000 feet above the sea. Coal is found in the vicinity. Near the city the *Bogota River* falls over a perpendicular precipice 600 feet high. *Cartagena* is the principal seaport.

What is the area of New Granada? climate, productions, soil. What is the population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how is it bounded? Of what did it once form part? Describe the surface, mountains, rivers, &c. Describe the climate, productions, soil. What are found on the llanos? What minerals are found? For what is Panama famous? Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SOUTH AMERICA.—What strait divides the most southern part of South America from the mainland? What islands lie to the east of the Strait of Magellan? What is the north-eastern point of South America called? What river flows through New

Granada? For what is the north-western part of New Granada important? What large river flows through Venezuela? What important island belonging to Britain lies on the north-east of Venezuela? What countries adjoin Venezuela? What large gulf is on the north-west?

## VENEZUELA.

Area, 400,000 square miles; population, 1,600,000; persons to a square mile, 4; twice the size of the province of Quebec.

Capital, CARACAS.

VENEZUELA lies to the east of New Granada, on the Caribbean Sea, and south of the Lesser Antilles. It formed one of the States of the republic of Colombia, which was dissolved in 1832, and is now an independent republic.

The Parime Mountains separate it from Brazil; and one of the chains of the Andes is continued from New Granada in a north-easterly direction along the coast. It is watered by the Orinoco, which flows through extensive llanos, or level grassy plains, supporting vast herds of cattle. The climate, soil, products, and religion are the same as those of New Granada.

Lake Maracaybo is situated in the north-west; and on its shores is an inexhaustible mine of asphalt, or pitch.

Caracas (50,000) is the capital. It was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1812, when 12,000 persons lost their lives. Valencia (15,000) is the next largest town. Maracaybo and Cumana are the chief seaports, and are very unhealthy.

What is the area of Venezuela? compose part? Describe the surface, climate, &c. Describe Lake Maracaybo. Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated? Of what did it formerly

## ECUADOR.

Area, 300,000 square miles; population, 1,100,000; persons to a square mile, 4; ten times the size of New Brunswick.

Capital, QUITO.

ECUADOR is situated to the south of New Granada, and is directly under the equator, as its name implies. It also formed one of the states of the republic of Colombia.

In the west it is traversed by the Andes, which have there some of their highest summits and most remarkable volcanoes. Cotopaxi is the most tremendous volcano in the world, and rises to the height of 18,875 feet, in the form of a perfect cone; its summit covered with eternal snow. The flames from its crater sometimes rise 3000 feet above its summit, with a terrific roaring noise. Chimborazo is also a conical peak, upwards of 21,000 feet high. Pichincha, on the slope of which the city of Quito is built, and Antisana, are also formidable volcanoes. In the east, Ecuador includes part of the level wooded valley of the Amazon. The climate, soil, productions, and religion resemble those of New Granada. The Galapagos, or Turtle Islands, in the Pacific Ocean, 650 miles to the west, belong to Ecuador.

Quito (75,000), the capital, is 9500 feet above the level of the sea, and is built in a valley on the east side of the volcano Pichincha. It enjoys a most delightful climate; but, like most of the towns in the republic, has suffered much from earthquakes. Cuenca (20,000) is the next most important town, and, with Loja, exports Peruvian bark. Guayaquil (20,000) is the principal seaport.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SOUTH AMERICA.—What countries adjoin Ecuador? Guiana? Brazil? On what ocean is Ecuador situated? Guiana? Brazil? What river separates Ecuador from Peru? What great rivers flow through Brazil? How is Brazil separated from Guiana?

What is the area of Ecuador? Describe the celebrated volcanoes. Population? Size? Capital? From it contains. Describe the climate, what does it receive its name? &c. What islands belong to Ecuador? Where is it situated, and how bounded? Describe the chief towns. Describe the surface. Where are they situated?

## GUIANA.

Area, 195,000 square miles; population, 270,000; persons to a square mile, 1½; rather larger than Ontario.

GUIANA is situated on the Atlantic, between Venezuela and Brazil. It is the only part of the continent possessed by European nations. It is divided into:—

|                           | Chief Towns. |
|---------------------------|--------------|
| BRITISH GUIANA,           | Georgetown.  |
| DUTCH GUIANA, or SURINAM, | Paramaribo.  |
| FRENCH GUIANA,            | Cayenne.     |

The Accray Mountains separate it from Brazil. From being low and marshy on the coast, the land gradually rises towards the interior, and becomes more mountainous. The climate is the mildest of any country situated in the tropics, owing to the trade winds, and cool land and sea breezes. The soil is remarkably fruitful, and produces sugar, coffee, rice, various medicinal plants, Cayenne pepper, and other tropical spices in the greatest abundance. Vegetation is most luxuriant; and the forests swarm with monkeys, birds of brilliant plumage, insects, &c.

British Guiana, the largest of the three divisions, was conquered from the Dutch in 1803. It is divided into three districts—Berbice, Demerara, and Essequibo. Georgetown (30,000), the capital, is situated at the mouth of the Demerara River. Most of the inhabitants of the town and country are negroes.

Dutch Guiana is the central portion of the country, and is sometimes called Surinam. Paramaribo, the capital, is situated on the Surinam River.

French Guiana is used as a penal settlement. Cayenne, the capital, is situated on an island of the same name, and gives its name to the spices of red pepper, or capsicum, grown in Guiana, and known as Cayenne pepper.

What is the area of Guiana? products, &c. Describe British Guiana. Its chief town. Its inhabitants. Describe Dutch Guiana. Its capital. Describe French Guiana. Its capital.

## BRAZIL.

Area, 3,134,000 square miles; population, 12,000,000; persons to a square mile, 4; about the same size as the Dominion of Canada.

Capital, RIO JANEIRO.

The Empire of BRAZIL is bounded on the North by Guiana and Venezuela; on the West by New Granada, Ecuador, and Peru; on the West and South by Bolivia, Paraguay, La Plata, and Uruguay; and on the East by the Atlantic.

This immense country formerly belonged to Portugal, but was acknowledged independent in 1825, and now constitutes an hereditary monarchy under a branch of the royal family of Portugal.

It is intersected by a number of chains of mountains, generally extending from north to south, and by high table-

From Paraguay? To whom does the largest portion of Guiana belong? How is Rio Janeiro situated? How is Bahia situated? Maranhao? Pernambuco? Quito? In what direction from Rio Janeiro is Bahia? Cayenne? Quito? Caracas? Maranhao? Pernambuco?



lands, stretching westward, and dividing the tributaries of the Amazon from those of the Paraguay. The Amazon forms the great feature of the northern part of the empire, and most of its large tributaries flow through Brazil. There are, besides these, the *Para*, *Paranahyba*, and *San Francisco Rivers*; so that no country in the world possesses within the same limits so many or such extensive navigable rivers. The valley of the Amazon is celebrated for its valuable forests of mahogany, logwood, and Brazil wood. From the south-west portion of the central table-lands, the vast pampas, or level plains covered with grass and small shrubs, commence, and extend as far south as Patagonia.

The climate of Brazil is one of the most delightful in the world, especially in the south and east, where it is almost perpetual summer. In the valley of the Amazon it is hotter and more moist, rain falling almost every day; but on the table-lands it is cooler and more healthy. There is no country in the world so favored by nature as Brazil, and yet so little improved. Sugar, rice, coffee, tobacco, and drugs grow extensively in the north, and grain and fruits in the southern and more elevated parts. Vast herds of cattle are raised, and hides and tallow are largely exported; but agriculture and commerce are greatly neglected. Brazil is also rich in gold and other precious metals, and celebrated for its diamonds, which are principally found on the San Francisco River. Most of the animals of South America are found in Brazil, besides a vast variety of every species of vegetation. About three-fourths of the whole population consist of Indians and negroes.

The Roman Catholic is the prevailing religion.

*Rio Janeiro* (400,000), the capital, is situated on a magnificent bay, and is the largest city in South America. It contains many fine buildings, and is the chief centre of commerce in the country. *Bahia* or *San Salvador* (120,000), the former capital, is situated on the Bay of All Saints, and exports large quantities of sugar. *Pernambuco*, *Maranhao*, and *Para* are also important commercial towns, and are all situated on the coast. The inland towns are small and unimportant.

What is the area of Brazil? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how bounded? Describe the climate, products, To whom did it formerly belong? Describe the surface. What are its principal rivers? Trace them on the map. For what is the valley of the Amazon celebrated? What commences in the south-west? Describe the climate, products, minerals, and where they are found. Animals, inhabitants. Religion. Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated? For what noted?

#### PERU.

Area, 600,000 square miles; population, 3,000,000; persons to a square mile, 5; three times the size of Ontario.

Capital, LIMA.

PERU is situated on the Pacific, to the south of Ecuador, and west of Brazil and Bolivia. It was conquered by the Spaniards under Pizarro in 1532, and remained in their possession till 1821, when it became an independent republic.

It is traversed by the double chain of the Andes, between which are high table-lands about 8000 feet above the sea,

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SOUTH AMERICA.—On what ocean are Peru and Chili situated? How is Peru separated from Bolivia? Chili from La Plata? What countries adjoin Bolivia? What are the principal cities on the Pacific coast? Are Peru, Bolivia, and Chili north or

where are situated most of the large towns. The climate is there cool and delightful, and the soil rich and fertile, yielding all the ordinary grains. The products resemble those of Brazil; and Peruvian bark, guano, and various dyewoods are largely exported. In the eastern range of the Andes are the valuable gold and silver mines, for which Peru has long been famous. The tract between the Andes and the Pacific is chiefly a hot desert sandy plain. To the east the country forms part of the vast forest plain or valley of the Amazon. About fifteen miles from the coast are the Chinch Islands—three in number—celebrated for their extensive deposits of guano, which is largely exported. Nearly everything has to be carried into or out of the interior of the country on the backs of mules or llamas. The Andes are celebrated for their rugged and dangerous, but picturesque scenery. Travelling is very difficult, men and mules often requiring to be taken across a torrent, slung to a single rope. Earthquakes are frequent, and some of the largest volcanoes of the Andes rise on the borders of Peru and Bolivia. The only religion tolerated is the Roman Catholic.

*Lima* (150,000), the capital, is situated in the midst of a fertile plain, and is connected by railway with *Callao*, its seaport. *Cuzco*, the ancient capital of the Incas of Peru, is situated in the interior, and still contains the remains of the magnificent Temple of the Sun, and other monuments attesting the ancient civilization of the inhabitants. *Arequipa* and *Passo* are the next most important towns.

What is the area of Peru? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how bounded? Describe the climate, products, To whom did it formerly belong? Describe the surface. Climate. Products. Minerals. What islands belong to Peru? For what are they famous? Describe the difficulties of the Andes. To what is the country subject? What is the religion? Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated?

#### BOLIVIA.

Area, 500,000 square miles; population, 2,000,000; persons to a square mile, 4; more than twice the size of Quebec.

Capital, CHUQUISACA.

BOLIVIA, up to the year 1825, formed part of Peru, and now takes its name from Bolivar, the leader who was chiefly instrumental in gaining its independence.

It is situated almost entirely in the interior, between Peru and Brazil, to the north of La Plata, possessing only a small portion of coast-line with one small seaport, Cobija.

On the borders of Bolivia and Peru the double chain of the Andes encloses *Lake Titicaca*, the sacred lake of the ancient Peruvians. It is nearly 13,000 feet above the level of the sea. Between the Andes and the Pacific is a sandy desert, but to the east of the Andes the country consists of a vast forest plain, watered by the tributaries of the Amazon and Paraguay. The products are the same as those of Brazil and Peru. The wool of the alpaca is also largely exported. Silver was once found in great quantities, but latterly the mines have not been nearly so productive. The Roman Catholic is the only religion tolerated.

*Chuquisaca* (25,000) is the capital. *Potosi* (22,000) is 13,000 feet above the sea, and contains the famous silver

mine of the equator? In what direction from Valparaiso is Lima? Chuquisaca? Rio Janeiro? What celebrated island lies to the west of Chili? What valuable islands lie to the west of Peru? What seaport town has Bolivia? Has it any other seaports? In what zone is it?



mines. A century ago it contained 150,000 inhabitants. *La Paz* (75,000) is the largest town, situated near the lofty volcanoes, Illimani and Sorata. *Cochabamba* is a town of some importance.

What is the area of Bolivia? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how is it bounded? Of what did it form part? From what does it take its name? When did it become independent? Describe Lake Titicaca. Describe the surface of Bolivia. Products. Minerals. Religion. Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated?

### CHILI.

Area, 140,000 square miles; population, 2,000,000; persons to a square mile, 14; two-thirds the size of Quebec.

Capital, SANTIAGO.

CHILI consists of a long, narrow strip of land between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean, and extending from Bolivia southwards for 1200 miles. It is about 150 miles in width at the broadest part. It also claims Patagonia. *Chiloe Island*, a large, well-wooded island, and *Juan Fernandez*, or Robinson Crusoe's Island, belong to Chili.

The surface is mountainous or hilly from the Andes to the coast. The Andes here form only one chain, and rise in the peak of Aconcagua to the height of 24,000 feet. Between the mountains are beautiful and fertile valleys. In the north is the desert of Atacama.

The climate in the northern and middle regions is hot and dry, but becomes cooler towards the south. Earthquakes are frequent, and often very destructive. The soil is very productive. Potatoes, wheat, and maize are extensively cultivated, besides olives, figs, and vines. Chili is supposed to be the native country of the potato. The seasons are reversed from what they are in the northern hemisphere, winter being in the months of June and July. Gold, silver, and copper are found to a great extent near Copiapo, in the north. Chili is the most progressive of the states of South America, and exports largely guano, copper, and saltpetre. Its trade is chiefly with Great Britain.

*Santiago* (150,000), the capital, is situated in a beautiful and fertile district, about 60 miles from the coast. *Valparaiso* (72,000), the port of Santiago, is the principal commercial city, and carries on a large trade, chiefly with Britain. *Concepcion* and *Copiapo* are the next towns of importance.

What is the area of Chili? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how bounded? Of what did it form part? From what does it take its name? When did it become independent? Describe the surface. What is the climate? Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated?

### LA PLATA.

Area, 900,000 square miles; population, 1,800,000; persons to square mile, 2; more than twice the size of all the eastern provinces of the Dominion.

Capital, BUENOS AYRES.

LA PLATA, or the Argentine Confederation, occupies the central country between the Andes and the rivers Paraguay and Uruguay, and extends from Bolivia to

Patagonia. It comprises twelve federate States, which obtained their independence between 1810 and 1816.

The surface consists chiefly of flat level plains, called pampas, covered with coarse grass or sand. The largest is in the north-east, called the desert of *El Gran Chaco*, and from it others extend west to the Andes, and south as far as Patagonia. In the south-west are numerous swamps and salt lakes. On these pampas vast herds of cattle and wild horses roam, and form the chief wealth of the country. Hides, tallow, and bones are largely exported. The rivers of La Plata are large and important, including the *Uruguay* and the *Parana*, with its tributaries, the *Paraguay*, *Pilcomayo*, *Vermejo*, and *Salado*, flowing into the estuary called the Rio de la Plata; and the *Colorado* and *Negro* further south. The climate is hot, and violent hurricanes, called pamperos, occur on the pampas. The soil in the middle region is fertile, producing wheat, cotton, sugar, and rice, but agriculture is little attended to. The greater part of the inhabitants are Indians or mixed races. The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic.

BUENOS AYRES, the most important State of the Confederation, extends from the estuary of the La Plata to the Negro River, which separates it from Patagonia. It separated from the Argentine Confederation in 1853, but joined it again in 1861. Grain is now cultivated to a limited extent.

*Buenos Ayres* (177,000), the capital, and largest city in the Confederation, is situated near the head of the estuary of the La Plata, the navigation of which is rendered dangerous by numerous shoals, and by the pamperos, or hurricanes from the pampas. It is an important commercial port, and is rapidly increasing. It exports chiefly hides, tallow, wool, and skins.

*Parana* (8000), the former capital, is situated on the river Parana, 240 miles north-west of Buenos Ayres. *Corrientes* (20,000), *Cordoba*, *Mendoza*, and *San Juan* are the principal towns. The pass of Mendoza is upon the great commercial road across the Andes between Valparaiso and Buenos Ayres.

What is the area of La Plata? Population? Size? Capital? Where is it situated, and how bounded? Of what is it composed? Describe the surface. Which is the largest of the pampas? What do the pampas supply? Describe the rivers, and trace them on the map. Describe the climate. Soil. Productions. Religion. Describe Buenos Ayres. Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated?

### PARAGUAY.

Area, 80,000 square miles; population, 1,340,000; persons to square mile, 17; three times the size of New Brunswick.

Capital, ASUNCION.

PARAGUAY lies wholly in the interior, between the Paraguay and Parana Rivers. It resembles La Plata in physical features, climate, products, and religion; but in the north is more mountainous, and produces a species of holly, about one and a half feet high, called *Matte* or *Paraguay tea*, which is largely used as tea in South America.

Paraguay gained its independence from Spain in 1813, and

is Monte Video situated? In what direction from Buenos Ayres is Rio Janeiro? Valparaiso? Callao? Asuncion? Santiago? What is the southern coast of Chili remarkable for? Which is the largest island? In what direction from the capital is Valparaiso?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SOUTH AMERICA.—What countries adjoin La Plata? How is it separated from Uruguay? From Brazil? From Paraguay? From Chili? Which country occupies the most southern part of South America? How is Buenos Ayres situated? How

## PATAGONIA.

up to the year 1340 was ruled by a native creole, Dr. Franchin, who strictly excluded all foreigners. After his death this restriction was removed. The late Dictator, Lopez, pursued a similar course, and indulged in many cruelties both to natives and foreigners. Brazil and La Plata at last joined in declaring war against him, which lasted till his death, in 1870, after a heroic struggle, worthy of a better cause.

*Asuncion* (20,000), the capital, is situated near the junction of the Pilcomayo and Paraguay rivers.

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| What is the area of Paraguay?      | What does it produce? How was  |
| Population? Size? Capital? Where   | it formerly governed? Describe |
| is it situated, and how bounded?   | the capital.                   |
| Describe its surface, climate, &c. |                                |

## URUGUAY.

Area, 71,000 square miles; population, 337,000; persons to a square mile, 6; about one-third the size of the province of Quebec.

Capital, *Monte Video*.

URUGUAY, or *Banda Oriental* as it was called, lies between the Uruguay River and the Atlantic Ocean, and between Brazil and the estuary of the La Plata.

It formerly belonged to Buenos Ayres, with which it was long engaged in hostilities, until it was acknowledged independent in 1828.

In physical features, climate, products, and religion it resembles La Plata. Its exports are chiefly hides and tallow to Great Britain, and dried beef to the West Indies. Within the last thirty years it has largely increased in population, and greatly improved.

*Monte Video* (100,000), the capital, possesses the best harbor on the La Plata, and carries on the chief trade of the country.

|                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| What is the area of Uruguay?     | Describe its surface, climate, &c. |
| Population? Size? Capital? Where | What progress has it made? De-     |
| is it situated, and how bounded? | scribe its capital. Where is it    |
| To whom did it formerly belong?  | situated?                          |

Area, 300,000 square miles; nearly as large as Ontario and Quebec.

PATAGONIA comprises the southern extremity of South America, but little is known of the country or its people.

It consists chiefly, however, of level pampas, which are cold and barren. The Andes extend along the Pacific coast. It is thinly inhabited by a tall, well-formed race of Indians, who subsist on the flesh of wild animals, and live much on horseback. They were described as giants by early travellers, who were probably misled by their long mantles of hide, which reach to the ground, and give them the appearance of extraordinary height. They are the only independent aboriginal race on the continent. The pampas abound with wild cattle and horses. The Pacific coast is claimed by Chili.

*Tierra del Fuego* is an island, or rather a cluster of islands, separated from Patagonia by the Strait of Magellan. The natives are described as the most wretched race of ugly, stunted savages in the world, and subsist chiefly on fish. The islands are generally thickly wooded. *Cape Horn*, or *Hermite Island*, is a huge dark rock, covered with trees, rising about 600 feet high. It is the most southerly point of South America, and is 1470 miles farther south than any point of Africa. It is in about the same latitude, south of the equator, as the southern part of Hudson Bay is north of it.

The *Falkland Islands*, about 300 miles east of Patagonia, belong to Britain, and consist of 2 large, and about 200 small islands, with an area of about 6500 square miles. They are destitute of trees, but nearly covered with peat bogs. Large herds of cattle and horses roam wild. They contain many fine harbors, and are valuable as places of refuge for shipping frequenting the southern seas. They were erected into a colony in 1833, and contain about 700 inhabitants.

|  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Where is Patagonia situated?           | How. What position would it oc-   |
| What is known of it? Describe its      | cupy in North America? Describe   |
| surface. Inhabitants. Animals.         | the Falkland Islands. Where are   |
| Describe <i>Tierra del Fuego</i> . Its | they situated? For what are they  |
| inhabitants. What separates it         | valuable? When formed into a      |
| from Patagonia? Describe <i>Cape</i>   | colony? What is their population? |

## EUROPE.

Area, 3,800,000 square miles, comprising about one-fourteenth part of the land surface of the globe; greatest extent from north to south, 2400 miles; and from north-east to south-west, 3400 miles; population about 300,000,000.

EUROPE is bounded on the North by the Arctic Ocean; on the West by the Atlantic Ocean; on the South by the Mediterranean Sea, the Sea of Marmora, the Black Sea, and Mount Caucasus; and on the East by the Caspian Sea, the Ural River, and Ural Mountains, which separate it from Asia.

Although the smallest of the great divisions of the earth in extent, it is second in population, and by far the most important in power and influence, as well

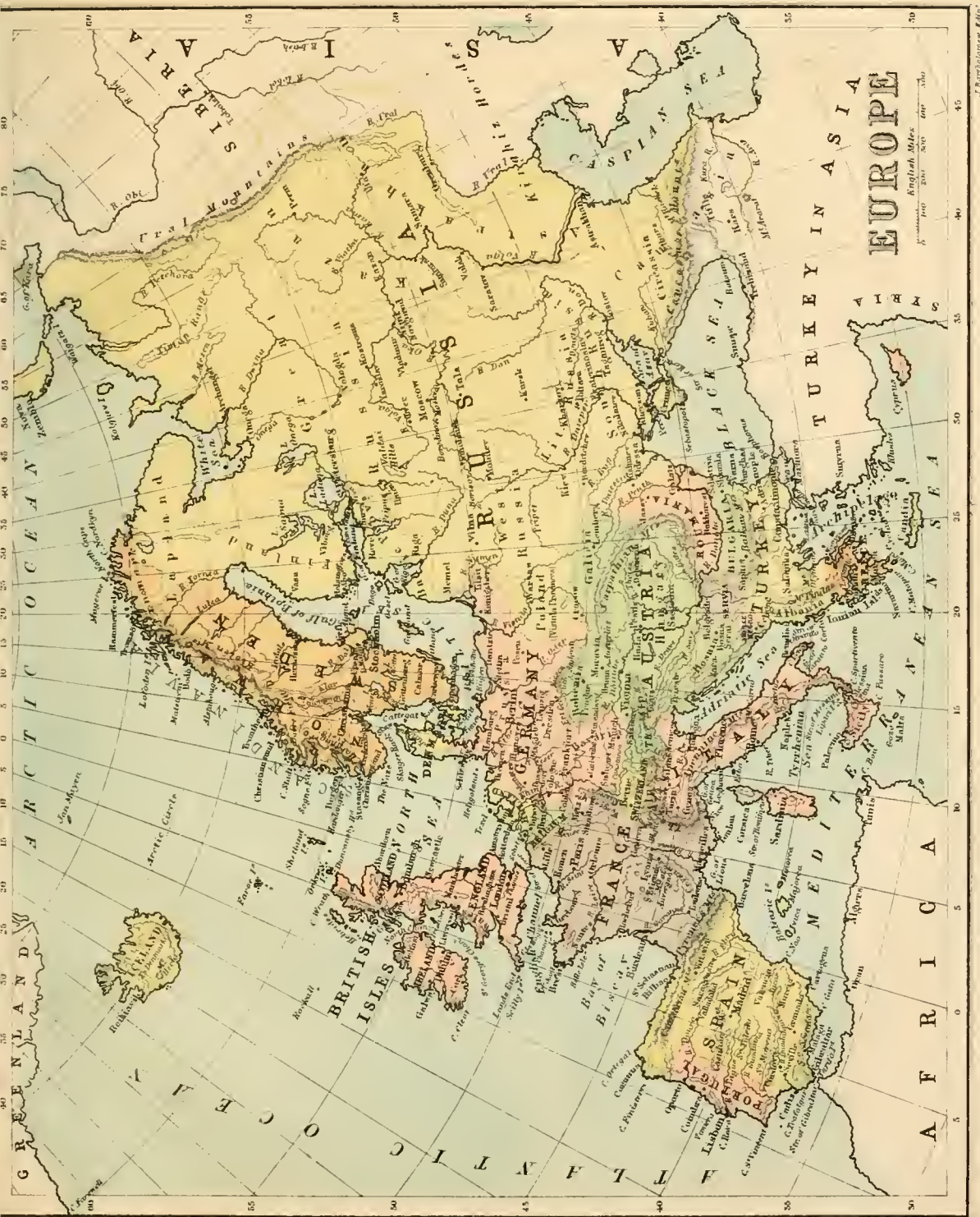
as the most advanced in learning, arts, and manufactures.

The surface of Europe is divided by mountain ranges into a north-west and south-east slope, as all the great rivers on the continent flow in these directions. The north and east, with the exception of Norway and Sweden, consists of a vast plain, with occasional small elevations, and comprises about two-thirds of the whole surface, extending from Holland to the Ural Mountains, and including all Russia; in the south and west it is mountainous or hilly.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SOUTH AMERICA.—What States are crossed by the equator? Which are north of the equator? Which are south? Are any of them in the temperate zone? What cities lie near the equator? What States are crossed by the tropic of Capricorn? Which States

are in the torrid zone? What island is at the mouth of the Amazon? In what State is the Cassiquiare River? What two rivers does it join? What cities are on the La Plata River? On the Parana? In what State does the Amazon rise? The Orinoco? The Paraguay?









Unlike the Mountain ranges of the New World, those of Europe occur in smaller and more detached chains. The principal are :—

The *Dovre* field mountains, in the Scandinavian peninsula; the *Grampians*, in Scotland; the *Penine Range*, in England; and *Cambrian Range*, in Wales; the *Alps*, in Switzerland and the adjacent countries; the minor ranges of the *Jura*, and the *Cevennes* mountains in France; the *Pyrenees*, between France and Spain; and the parallel ranges of the *Castile*, *Morena*, and *Sierra Nevada* mountains, in Spain; the *Apennines*, in Italy, with the volcanoes, *Vesuvius* near Naples, and *Etna* in Sicily; the *Balkan* in Turkey; the *Carpathian*, in Austria, with the smaller ranges of the *Black Forest*, *Harz*, *Ers*, and *Sudetic Chains*, in Germany; the *Caucasus*, between the Black and the Caspian Seas; and the *Ural Mountains*, between Europe and Asia.

#### The principal Rivers of Europe are :—

Those flowing north-west or west, —the *Petchora*, *Volga*, *Vistula*, *Oder*, *Elbe*, *Rhine*, *Seine*, *Loire*, *Garonne*, *Douro*, *Tagus*, and *Gwadiana*; the *Thames*, in England; and those flowing south and east —the *Ebro*, *Rhone*, *Po*, *Danube*, *Dnieper*, *Don*, and *Volga*.

The *Volga* is the largest river of Europe, rising in the *Valdai* hills, in the north-west of Russia, and flowing into the *Caspian Sea*, after a course of about 2100 miles.

The *Lakes* in Europe are generally small, but celebrated for their beautiful scenery. The principal are :—

*Vener*, and *Wetter*, in Sweden; *Ladoga*, *Onega*, and *Saima*, in Russia; *Geneva* and *Constance*, in Switzerland; *Maggiore* and *Como*, in Italy; *Derwentwater* and *Windermere*, in England; *Lozond* and *Katrine*, in Scotland; and *Neagh* and *Killarney*, in Ireland.

Europe is remarkable for the irregularity of its outline or coast, having numerous islands, peninsulas, seas, bays, and gulfs, giving it about 20,000 miles of coast-line,—a very much greater length, in proportion to its size, than is possessed by any of the other great divisions of the globe. Almost every country in Europe has some sea-coast, and nowhere, except in the east of Russia, is there any place more than 400 miles distant from the sea.

#### The principal Islands are :—

In the Arctic Ocean, *Nova Zembla* and *Spitzbergen*. In the Baltic, *Zealand*, *Funen*, *Gottland*, &c. In the Atlantic, *Iceland*, *Great Britain*, *Ireland*, *Orkney*, *Shetland*, and *Hebrides Islands*, and the *Azores*. In the Mediterranean, *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ivica*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, *Sicily*, *Malta*, *Ionian Isles*, *Candia*, and *Negropont*; and the *Cyclades*, in the Archipelago.

#### The principal Peninsulas are :—

In the north, *Scandinavia*, (Norway and Sweden,) and *Jutland*, in Denmark. In the south, the *Iberian*, (Spain and Portugal,) *Italy*, the *Morea*, in Greece, and the *Crimea*, in the south of Russia.

#### The principal Isthmuses are :—

*Corinth*, joining the *Morea* to the mainland of Greece; and *Perekop*, joining the *Crimea* to Russia.

#### The principal Seas and Gulfs are :—

In the north, the *White Sea*, the *Baltic Sea* with the *Gulfs of Bothnia*, *Finland*, and *Riga*, the *Cattagat* and *Skager Rack*; and the *North Sea* or German Ocean. In the west, the *Irish Sea* and *Bay of Biscay*. In the south, the *Mediterranean Sea*, the *Gulfs of Lyons*, *Genoa*, and *Taranto*, the *Adriatic Sea*, with the *Gulf of Venice*, the *Archipelago*, *Sea of Marmora*, *Black Sea*, and *Sea of Azov*.

#### The principal Straits and Channels are :—

In the north, the *Sound*, *Great Belt*, and *Little Belt*. In the west, the *Strait of Dover* and *English Channel*, *St Georges*, and *North Channels*. In the south, the *Straits of Gibralter*, *Bonifacio*, between *Cercica* and *Sardinia*, *Messina*, *Dardanelles*, the *Bosphorus* or *Strait of Constantinople*, and *Kertch* or *Yeuikale*.

#### The principal Capes are :—

In the north, *North Cape*, *Naze*, and *Skaw*. In the west, *Duncansby Head*, *Clear*, *Land's End*, *La Hogue*, *Ortega*, *Finisterre*, and *St Vincent*. In the south, *Tarifa*, *Passaro*, *Spartivento*, and *Malapan*.

The climate of Europe is warmer than that of the other great divisions of the globe in the same latitude, and not subject to the same extremes of heat and cold, owing in part to the influence of the *Gulf Stream*, and to every part of it being so near the sea. In the west it is more moist than in the east: and although cold in the north, it is in general mild and salubrious, and in the south warm and delightful. The soil, especially in the south, is fertile; and is everywhere, except in Russia, most industriously cultivated. Wheat is grown as far north as the middle of Norway, and barley much farther; in the middle latitudes all kinds of grain grow in abundance; and in the south the vine, olive, orange, fig, and other southern fruits flourish. Europe also contains great quantities of valuable minerals,—iron, lead, copper, tin, coal, and salt being found in almost every part.

Very few wild animals are found in Europe, the principal being the bear, wolf, and wild boar; but useful animals, such as the horse, ox, &c., are very numerous. It has a great variety of birds of song; in the north, aquatic birds abound; and in the mountain regions, eagles and other birds of prey are found. The seas abound with valuable fish, including the whale, cod, herring, and salmon, and in the Mediterranean the anchovy and other small but delicate fish.

The commerce of Europe is greater than that of any of the other divisions of the globe, although it is the smallest in extent. This is owing in a great measure to its vast extent of coast-line, its large population, and its valuable mineral resources, but chiefly to the energy and advanced civilization of the people.

The inhabitants of Europe are of the Caucasian race, forming four branches—the Celtic in the west, the Teutonic, including the Scandinavian, in the middle and north, the Latin in the south, and the Slavonic in the east. The Christian is the prevailing religion, under the three forms of the Protestant, Roman Catholic, and Greek Churches; except in Turkey, where the principal religion is the Mahomedan.

#### The Countries of Europe are :—

|                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| Great Britain and Ireland. | Portugal.         |
| Norway and Sweden.         | Germany.          |
| Russia.                    | Austro-Hungary.   |
| Denmark.                   | Italy.            |
| Holland.                   | Switzerland.      |
| Belgium.                   | Turkey in Europe. |
| France.                    | Greece.           |
| Spain.                     |                   |

Great Britain, France, Russia, Germany, and Austria are considered the five great Powers of Europe; and the kingdom of

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—EUROPE.—What large sea is there to the south of Europe? How is it connected with the Atlantic? With what seas is it connected on the east? How is Europe separated from Asia? Which European islands are situated in the Atlantic? Which in the

Mediterranean? What sea is between Britain and Denmark? Between Sweden and Russia? What countries border on the Atlantic? On the North Sea? On the Baltic? What mountains separate Europe from Asia? In what directions do they run? How long are they?

Italy, although formed only in 1859, is gradually gaining a position scarcely secondary to them.

What is the size of Europe? What is its extent? Population? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. For what is Europe remarkable? How is its surface divided? Describe the divisions. What is said of the mountains? Name the principal mountain ranges. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal rivers. Point them out on the map. Describe their courses. Which is the largest? Name the principal lakes. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the coast-line of Europe. Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Name the principal peninsulas. Point them out on the map. Name the principal isthmuses, and point them out on the map. Name the principal seas and gulfs. Point them out on the map. What countries do they wash? Name the principal straits and channels. Point them out on the map. Between what countries are they situated? Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Europe. What influences act upon it? Describe the soil. Products. Minerals. Animals, &c. What is said of the commerce of Europe? To what races do the inhabitants belong? What are the prevailing religions? Name the countries of Europe. Which are the principal?

## BRITISH EMPIRE.

THE BRITISH EMPIRE is composed of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, and of numerous colonies and possessions in every quarter of the globe. The British Islands consist of Great Britain, including England, Wales, and Scotland; Ireland lying to the west of Great Britain; and a number of small islands adjoining them.

The British Colonies and Possessions are:—

### *In Europe.*

Heligoland, a small island near the mouth of the Elbe.  
Gibraltar, an important fortress at the southern extremity of Spain.

commanding the entrance to the Mediterranean.  
Malta, with the small islands of Gozo and Cumino in the Mediterranean.

### *In North America.*

The Dominion of Canada, including Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward Island, British Columbia, Manitoba, and the North-West Territory.  
Newfoundland.

Bermudas.  
British Honduras in Central America.  
The West India Islands, including the Bahamas, Jamaica, Leeward Islands, Windward Islands, and Trinidad.

### *In South America.*

British Guiana.

The Falkland Islands

### *In Asia.*

India, comprising the presidencies of Bengal, Madras, and Bombay, with their dependencies.  
Ceylon, an important island at the south-eastern extremity of India.  
Aracan, Pegu, and Tenasserim; with the "Straits settlements," including the Islands of Singapore

and Penang, and a part of the Malacca peninsula.  
Hong-Kong, an island at the mouth of the Canton River.  
Labuan Island, off the coast of Borneo.  
Aden, an important town at the entrance of the Red Sea.

### *In Africa.*

Cape Colony and Natal, at the southern extremity.  
Mauritius Island and its dependencies.  
Seychelles Islands.

Ascension and St Helena Islands, in the Atlantic.  
Sierra Leone, and various settlements on the Gold Coast and the Gambia.

### *In Australasia.*

Australia, comprising Western Australia, Queensland, South Australia, New South Wales, and Victoria; Tasmania, or Van Diemen's Land; New Zealand; Norfolk Island.

The British Isles, with these numerous and extensive colonies and possessions, cover an area of more than 8,000,000 square miles, with a population of about 236,000,000; so that, although small in the extent of home territory and population, Great Britain is the most important country in the world, ruling over nearly one-sixth of the whole land surface of the globe, and nearly one-sixth of its population.

It is also the first country in the world for commerce and manufactures, exporting annually goods to the value of 1,200,000,000 dollars, consisting chiefly of cotton, woollen, and iron manufactures, and importing annually to the amount of 1,500,000,000 dollars. The great wealth of Britain is derived from its mines and manufactures. Its coal and iron mines are almost inexhaustible; and its lead, copper, and tin mines are very extensive. The cotton manufacture alone employs 500,000 persons, and it is estimated that four millions of people derive their support from it.

As a natural consequence of the extensive commerce, the facilities for internal communication are very great. Nearly 16,000 miles of railway are now completed, and canals connect every important point. The number of vessels belonging to Great Britain is nearly 22,000, of which more than 1600 are steam-vessels; and the number of seamen employed is about 200,000. The British navy is nearly as powerful as all the navies of the world put together, although the vessels are not so numerous. The annual revenue of Great Britain is 340,000,000 dols., not including that of India or other colonies, and is equal to more than a fourth of the revenue of all the states of Europe. The national debt is enormous, amounting to nearly 4000 millions of dollars, and has been contracted chiefly in various European wars.

Many of the advantages enjoyed by Great Britain are derived from the excellence of the system of government, which is perhaps the most perfect in existence, combining in a great measure the advantages of other forms, without their defects. It is a limited monarchy. The Queen is the head of the State, and carries on the government through her ministers, who must also possess the confidence of the people, as represented by the House of Commons; and of the aristocracy and clergy, as represented by the House of Lords. No law can take effect without receiving the sanction of the Queen and of both Houses of Parliament.

How is the British Empire composed? Name the colonies and possessions in Europe. Point them out on the map. Name those in North America. Point them out on the map. Name those in South America. Point them out on the map. Name those in Asia. Point them out on the map. Name those in Africa. Point them out on the map. Name those in Australasia. Point them out on the map. What extent and population do these colonies and possessions comprise? For what is Britain the first country in the world? From what does it derive a great part of its wealth? What is said of its railways, &c.? Of its shipping and navy? What is said of its revenue, &c.? Of its government. Describe the form of government.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—EUROPE.—What countries border on the Mediterranean Sea? What countries adjoin Asia? What countries are in the interior? Which is the largest? In what zone is the west of Europe? What parts of it are in the same latitude as the place you

live in? What is the most southern point of Europe called? The south-west point? The most northern point? What large rivers flow into the Black Sea? The Mediterranean? The North Sea? The Baltic? In what direction is Iceland? From Norway?







## ENGLAND AND WALES.

Area, 68 320 square miles; population, 22,700,000; persons to square mile, 391; rather more than twice the size of New Brunswick.

Capital, LONDON.

ENGLAND and WALES occupy the southern portion of the island of Great Britain. England is bounded on the North by the River Tweed, Cheviot Hills, and Solway Firth, which separate it from Scotland; on the West by the Irish Sea and St George's Channel; on the South by the English Channel; and on the East by the North Sea.

ENGLAND is divided into 40 counties or shires, and Wales into 12.

## The Counties of England are:—

## Six Northern.

| Counties.             | Principal Towns.                           |
|-----------------------|--|
| NORTHUMBERLAND, . . . | Newcastle, Berwick, Alnwick.               |
| CUMBERLAND, . . .     | Carlisle, Whitehaven, Penrith.             |
| WESTMORELAND, . . .   | Appleby, Kendal.                           |
| DURHAM, . . .         | Durham, Sunderland, Stockton.              |
| YORKSHIRE, . . .      | York, Leeds, Sheffield, Hull, Bradford.    |
| LANCASHIRE, . . .     | Lancaster, Liverpool, Manchester, Preston. |

## Four Western.

|                      |                                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| CHESHIRE, . . .      | Chester, Stockport, Macclesfield. |
| SHROPSHIRE, . . .    | Shrewsbury, Ludlow, Bridgenorth.  |
| HEREFORDSHIRE, . . . | Hereford, Leominster.             |
| MONMOUTHSHIRE, . . . | Monmouth, Chepstow, Abergavenny.  |

## Four Eastern.

|                     |                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| LINCOLNSHIRE, . . . | Boston, Lincoln, Stamford, Grimsby. |
| NORFOLK, . . .      | Norwich, Yarmouth, Lynn.            |
| SUFFOLK, . . .      | Ipswich, Eury St Edmund's, Sudbury. |
| ESSEX, . . .        | Chelmsford, Colchester, Harwich.    |

## Ten North Midland.

|                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| NOTTINGHAMSHIRE, . . .  | Nottingham, Newark.               |
| DERBYSHIRE, . . .       | Derby, Chesterfield.              |
| STAFFORDSHIRE, . . .    | Stafford, Wolverhampton, Stoke.   |
| WOLCESTERSHIRE, . . .   | Worcester, Dudley, Kidderminster. |
| WARWICKSHIRE, . . .     | Warwick, Birmingham, Coventry.    |
| LEICESTERSHIRE, . . .   | Leicester, Loughborough.          |
| RUTLANDSHIRE, . . .     | Oakham.                           |
| NORTHAMPTONSHIRE, . . . | Northampton, Peterborough.        |
| HUNTINGDONSHIRE, . . .  | Huntingdon, St Ives, St Neot's.   |
| CAMBRIDGESHIRE, . . .   | Cambridge, Ely, Newmarket.        |

## Ten South Midland.

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| GLOUCESTERSHIRE, . . . | Gloucester, Bristol, Cheltenham, Stroud. |
| OXFORDSHIRE, . . .     | Oxford, Woodstock.                       |
| BUCKINGHAMSHIRE, . . . | Buckingham, Aylesbury, Eton.             |
| BEDFORDSHIRE, . . .    | Bedford, Biggleswade, Dunstable.         |
| HERTFORDSHIRE, . . .   | Hertford, St Albans.                     |
| MIDDLESEX, . . .       | London, Westminster.                     |
| SURREY, . . .          | Guildford, Southwark, Kingston.          |
| BESSKIRE, . . .        | Reading, Windsor.                        |
| WILTSHIRE, . . .       | Salisbury, Devizes, Cricklade.           |
| SOMERSETSHIRE, . . .   | Bath, Taunton, Bridgewater, Bridport.    |

## Six Southern.

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| KENT, . . .        | Maidstone, Canterbury, Dover, Chatham. |
| SUSSEX, . . .      | Brighton, Chichester, Lewes, Hastings. |
| HAMPSHIRE, . . .   | Winchester, Portsmouth, Southampton.   |
| DORSETSHIRE, . . . | Dorchester, Weymouth, Poole.           |
| DEVONSHIRE, . . .  | Exeter, Plymouth, Devonport.           |
| CORNWALL, . . .    | Falmouth, Truro, Bodmin.               |

## The Counties of Wales are:—

## Six in North Wales.

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| FLINTSHIRE, . . .      | Mold, Holywell.     |
| DENBIGHSHIRE, . . .    | Denbigh, Ruthin.    |
| CAERNARVONSHIRE, . . . | Caernarvon, Bangor. |

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—ENGLAND.—What seas, atraits, and channels nearly surround England? What countries do they separate England from? What rivers flow into the North Sea? Into the Irish Channel? What is the south-western point of England called? What island is in

| Counties.              | Principal Towns.               |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ANGLEREY, . . .        | Beaumaris, Holyhead.           |
| MERIONETHSHIRE, . . .  | Dolgelly, Bala.                |
| MONTGOMERYSHIRE, . . . | Montgomery, Welshpool, Newton. |

## Six in South Wales.

|                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| RADNORSHIRE, . . .      | New Radnor, Presteign.            |
| CARDIGANSHIRE, . . .    | Cardigan, Aberystwith.            |
| PEMBROKESHIRE, . . .    | Pembroke, Haverfordwest, Milford. |
| CAERNARTHENSHIRE, . . . | Caernarthen, Llanelly.            |
| BRECKNOCKSHIRE, . . .   | Brecon.                           |
| GLAMORGANSHIRE, . . .   | Cardiff, Swansea, Merthyr-Tydvil. |

The surface of England is generally level or gently undulating, and the hills rise to no great height; while that of Wales is mountainous. The principal mountains are the *Pennine* range in the north, extending from the Cheviot Hills to the *Peak* in Derbyshire; the *Cumbrian* group, between the *Pennine* range and the Irish Sea, enclosing the beautiful lakes, *Windermere*, *Ullswater*, and *Derwentwater*, so celebrated for their picturesque scenery; the *Cambrian* mountains, occupying the greater part of Wales; and the *Devonian* range, extending from Somerset, through Devonshire and Cornwall. *Skawfell*, in the Cumbrian range, rises 3200 feet, and *Snowdon*, in Wales, 3600 feet; they are the highest summits in England and Wales. Besides these are a large number of smaller hills, as the *Malvern*, *Mendip*, and *Cotswold* hills, near the mouth of the Severn; the *Dorset* hills, and others.

The rivers are numerous, and although short, are valuable for navigation. The principal are—the *Medway*, *Thames*, *Trent*, *Ouse*, *Humber*, *Tees*, *Tyne*, and *Great Ouse*, flowing into the North Sea; the *Mersey* and *Severn*, with its tributaries the *Wye* and *Aron*, flowing into the Irish Sea and Atlantic Ocean.

The coast-line is much broken, the rivers widening at their mouths, and forming excellent harbors. Besides the mouths of the rivers, there are, on the east—the *Wash*; the *Yarmouth Roads*, off the coast of Norfolk; and the *Downs*, off Kent, protected by sand-banks, and affording secure anchorage to shipping. On the south, the *Strait of Dover*, 21 miles across, separates England from France; and on the coast are *Southampton*, *Weymouth*, *Plymouth*, and *Falmouth* harbors. On the west, are—the *Bristol Channel*, with a number of excellent harbors,—*Cardigan Bay*, *Morecambe Bay*, and *Solway Firth*.

The principal capes are—on the east, *Flamborough Head*, *Spurn Head*, the *Naze*, *North* and *South Foreland*; on the south, *Beachy Head*, the *Needles*, off the Isle of Wight, *Portland Point*, *Start Point*, *Lizard Point*, and *Land's End*; on the west, *St David's Head* and *Holyhead*.

The islands are—*Man*, *Anglesea*, and *Holyhead*, on the west; the *Scilly Islands*, *Channel Islands*, (including *Jersey*, *Guernsey*, *Alderney*, and *Sark*), and the *Isle of Wight* on the south; *Thanet* and *Sheppey* off the coast of Kent; and *Holy Island* on the north-east.

The Isle of Wight, the Channel Islands, and Isle of Man, are important islands. Near Cowes, in the Isle of Wight, is Osborne House, a favorite residence of the Queen. St Helier, in Jersey, contains 30,000 inhabitants. St Pierre, in Guernsey, Ryde and Newport, in the Isle of Wight, and Douglas and Ramsay, in the Isle of Man, are large towns. Anglesey is joined to the mainland by the Menai Suspension Bridge, stretching across the Menai Strait.

the Irish Sea? What island is on the south coast? Where is Holyhead? In what direction from Dublin? In what direction from Liverpool? Which is the largest county? The smallest? The most northern? What French and English towns are nearest each other?



The climate of England is damp and changeable, but healthy; and the soil fertile and well cultivated. The prevailing westerly winds bring a great deal of moisture from the Atlantic Ocean, causing an almost perpetual verdure; and, owing to its insular position, the extremes of heat and cold are not nearly so great as in the same latitude on the continent.

The English are chiefly of the ancient Anglo-Saxon race, with some proportion of Danish and Norman-French; the Welsh are Celts, descended from the ancient inhabitants of Britain.

The form of religion established by Government is that of the Protestant Episcopal Church; but every form of religion is equally allowed. There are two Archbishops,—Canterbury and York, (the former being primate of all England,) and twenty-six bishops.

No country in the world contains so many large cities within the same compass. The principal in England are:—

**London**, (3,445,000,) the capital of England, on the Thames, about 50 miles from its mouth. It is the largest, most wealthy, and most populous city in the world. It includes the City proper and Westminster in Middlesex, with Southwark and Lambeth in Surrey, on the opposite side of the Thames, which is spanned by a number of beautiful and massive bridges. It is nearly 10 miles long by 7 broad, and is gradually extending, and including large villages which a few years ago were surrounded by fields. London is nearly in the centre of the land portion of the globe, and is the great emporium of the world for wealth and commerce. Some of the principal buildings are Buckingham Palace, the Tower, St Paul's Cathedral, Bank of England, Westminster Abbey, and Houses of Parliament. The tunnel, docks, parks, bridges, and churches are also objects of interest. Near London are **Greenwich**, (169,000,) with its celebrated Observatory and Hospital for sailors; **Kensington**, **Kew**, and **Richmond**, with magnificent gardens; **Hampton Court** and **Windsor**, with royal palaces; and many other places of present or historic interest.

**Liverpool**, (516,000,) on the Mersey, next to London in commerce and wealth, is famous for the vast extent of its docks, covering 700 acres, and quays upwards of six miles in length. It is the great emporium for trade with America, the West Indies, and Ireland. The other principal ports are—**Hull**, on the Humber; **Southampton**; **Bristol**, on the Avon, near Bristol Channel; **Newcastle**, on the Tyne; **Sunderland**, on the Wear; **Stockton**, on the Tees; **Yarmouth**, **Plymouth**, **Falmouth**, and **Dover**. **Portsmouth** is strongly fortified, and is the principal dockyard and station for the British navy. **Plymouth** and **Devonport**, on the south coast, and **Chatham**, **Sheerness**, **Woolwich**, and **Deptford**, on the Thames, have also extensive dockyards. **Woolwich** has the largest arsenal and manfactories of war materials in Great Britain.

**Manchester**, with **Salford**, (500,000,) is the centre of the cotton-manufacturing trade, and the second city in population. **Oldham**, **Preston**, **Bolton**, **Blackburn**, **Bury**, **Stockport**, **Rochdale**, and other cities, have large cotton manufactures.

**Birmingham** (366,000,) is celebrated for the extent, variety, and excellence of its metallic manufactures; **Sheffield** (240,000) for cutlery, hardware, and plated goods. **Dudley**, **Walsall**,

and **Wolverhampton** are the chief seats of the iron trade; and **Newcastle**, **Sunderland**, and **Shields** of the coal trade.

**Leeds** (259,000,) is the chief centre for the woollen manufactures, which are also largely carried on in **Bradford**, **Halifax**, and **Huddersfield**; **Nottingham** is celebrated for its lace manufactures; **Macclesfield**, **Derby**, and **Coventry** for silks; **Kidderminster** for carpets; **Worcester** for porcelain; **Stoke**, **Hanley**, and **Newcastle-under-Lyne** for pottery; **Canterbury** and **York** are distinguished for their magnificent cathedrals, and as the seats of the archbishops; **Oxford** and **Cambridge** for their celebrated universities and magnificent buildings.

**Lancashire** is the chief county for cotton manufactures; **Yorkshire** for woollens; **Staffordshire** for pottery; **Durham** and **Northumberland** for coal mines; **Cornwall** and **Devon** for tin and copper; the counties of **Wales** for iron and coal.

**Merthyr-Tydvil** (97,000,) is the largest city in Wales, and is distinguished for its extensive coal mines and iron works. **Cardiff** is its seaport. **Pembroke** has a Government dockyard, and **Milford Haven** a magnificent harbor.

What is the area of England and Wales? Population? Size? Capital? How are they bounded? What countries do these boundaries separate them from? How are they divided? Name the counties of England. How is each bounded? What are the chief towns? Where are they situated? Name the counties of Wales. How are they bounded? Name the chief towns. Where are they situated? Describe the surface of England. Of Wales. Name the principal mountains. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. What cities do they flow past? Describe the coast-line. Name the principal straits, bays, &c. Where are they situated? Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What is said of the largest? Describe the climate of England. Of what races are the inhabitants composed? What is the religion? What is said of the cities? Describe the principal. Where are they situated?

## SCOTLAND.

Area, 30,685 square miles; population, 3,360,000; persons to square mile, 109; rather larger than New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island.

Capital, **EDINBURGH**.

**SCOTLAND** forms the northern part of the Island of Great Britain, and is bounded on the North by the Atlantic Ocean; on the West by the Atlantic Ocean and North Channel; on the South by England; and on the East by the North Sea.

It is divided into 33 counties or shires.

### Eleven Northern

| Counties.                    | Principal Towns.                                      |
|------------------------------|---|
| ORKNEY and SUTCLIFF, . . . . | Kirkwall, Stromness, Lerwick.                         |
| CAITHNESS, . . . .           | Wick, Thurso.   |
| SUTHERLAND, . . . .          | Dornoch.  |
| ROSS, . . . .                | Dingwall, Tain, Fortrose, Stornoway, (Isle of Lewis.) |
| CROMARTY, . . . .            | Cromarty.   |
| INVERNESS, . . . .           | Inverness, Portree, (Isle of Skye.)                   |
| NAIRN, . . . .               | Nairn.  |
| ELGIN, . . . .               | Elgin, Forres, Forchabers.                            |
| BANFF, . . . .               | Banff, Cullen, Portsoy, Keith.                        |
| ABERDEEN, . . . .            | Aberdeen, Peterhead, Fraserburgh, Huntly.             |
| KINCARDINE, . . . .          | Stonehaven, Bervie, Laurencekirk.                     |

**EXERCISES ON THE MAP—ENGLAND.**—What counties of England border on the North Sea? On the English channel? On the Atlantic Ocean and Bristol Channel? On St George's Channel? On the Irish Sea? What large cities are on the Thames? On the Severn? On the

Trent? On the Humber? On the Wash? On the Mersey? What large cities are on the southern coast? On the eastern? On the western? In what direction from London is Dublin? Edinburgh? Manchester? Bristol? York? Birmingham? Brighton, &c.?

# SCOTLAND

English Miles

0 10 20 30 40 50



SHEPHERD

ISLANDS

S. Magnus

Ma

Orkney

Shetland

English Miles

0 10 20 30





*Nine Middle.*

| Counties.                      | Principal Towns.                                    |
|--------------------------------|---|
| FORFAR, . . . . .              | Forfar, Dundee, Montrose, Arbroath, Brechin.        |
| PERTH, . . . . .               | Perth, Crieff, Dunkeld, Duablane.                   |
| FIFE, . . . . .                | Cupar, St. Andrews, Dunfermline, Kirkcaldy, Dysart. |
| KINROSS, . . . . .             | Kinross.  |
| CLACKMANNAN, . . . . .         | Clackmannan, Alloa.                                 |
| STIRLING, . . . . .            | Stirling, Falkirk, Bannockburn.                     |
| DUMBARTON or LENNOX, . . . . . | Dumbarton, Kirkintilloch, Helensburgh.              |
| AROYLE, . . . . .              | Inverary, Campbellton, Oban.                        |
| BUTE, . . . . .                | Rothsay, Lamlash, (Isle of Arran)                   |

*Thirteen Southern.*

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| HADDINGTON or EAST-LOTHIAN, . . . . . | Haddington, Duobar.   |
| EDINBURGH or MID-LOTHIAN, . . . . .   | Edinburgh, Leith, Musselburgh, Portobello, Dalkeith.          |
| LINLITHGOW or WEST-LOTHIAN, . . . . . | Linlithgow, Borrowstounness, (or Bonness) Bathgate.           |
| BERWICK, . . . . .                    | Greenlaw, Dunse, Coldstream.                                  |
| ROXBURGH, . . . . .                   | Jedburgh, Kelso, Hawick, Melrose.                             |
| SELKIRK, . . . . .                    | Selkirk, Galashiels.  |
| PEEBLES, . . . . .                    | Peebles, Inverleithen.  |
| LANARK, . . . . .                     | Glasgow, Lanark, Airdrie, Hamilton.                           |
| RENFREW, . . . . .                    | Renfrew, Paisley, Greenock, Port-Glasgow.                     |
| AYRESHIRE, . . . . .                  | Ayr, Kilmarnock, Irvine, Girvan, Ardrossan, Troon, Saltcoats. |
| DUMFRIES, . . . . .                   | Dumfries, Annan, Moffat, Langholm.                            |
| KIRKCUDBRIGHT, . . . . .              | Kirkcudbright, New Galloway.                                  |
| WIGTON, . . . . .                     | Wigton, Stranraer, Portpatrick.                               |

Scotland is very mountainous, especially in the north and west. The *Grampian Mountains* form the principal chain, and extend from Argyleshire in a north-easterly direction to Aberdeenshire; *Ben Nevis*, the highest summit, rises 4406 feet above the sea. The north-west is entirely occupied by rugged masses of mountains, and is called the Northern Highlands; the highest summit is *Ben Attow*, 4000 feet high. The south and east consist chiefly of gently undulating plains, crossed by smaller ranges of hills, as the *Lowther* and *Cheviot Hills* in the south, the *Lammermuir* and *Ochil Hills* in the east, besides other small ranges.

The mountains in the north and west divide the country into the Highlands and Lowlands; the former, as the name implies, being mountainous, and the latter more level. The inhabitants of the Highlands are Celts, and still speak the Celtic or Gaelic language, while those of the Lowlands are chiefly of Saxon origin, like the English.

The general slope of the country is easterly from the Highlands, the Clyde being the only river of importance flowing westwards. The principal rivers are—the *Tweed*, *Forth*, *Tay*, *Dee*, and *Spey*, flowing east; the *Clyde*, flowing west; and several small rivers, flowing into the Solway Firth.

Scotland abounds with lakes celebrated for their picturesque beauty, being generally surrounded by lofty rugged mountains. Among the Grampians are *Loch Lomond*; *Loch Katrine*, *Loch Earn*, *Loch Tay*, *Loch Rannoch*, in Perthshire; *Loch Awe*, in Argyll. In the Northern Highlands are *Loch Ness* and *Loch Lochy*, in the great Caledonian valley connecting the Moray Firth with the Atlantic Ocean; and farther north, *Loch Maree*, *Loch Shin*, and *Loch Assynt*; *Loch Erich* and others in Inverness, and *Loch Leven* in Kinross-shire.

Scotland is remarkable for its irregular coast-line, numerous *friths* and *lochs* extending deep into the land. The *Firth of*

*Forth* and *Firth of Clyde* almost intersect the southern part, and are connected by a canal 38 miles long; while the Moray Firth and Loch Linnhe, almost connected by *Locha Ness* and *Lochy*, intersect the northern part. Besides these, on the east are the *Firth of Tay*, *Cromarty Firth* running into Moray and *Dornoch Firth*; on the west are *Loch Broom*, *Loch Fine*, and *Loch Long*; and on the south *Luce* and *Wigton Bays*, and *Solway Firth*. The sea between the Hebrides and mainland is called the *Minch*; the other channels are the *Little Minch* and sounds of *Sloat*, *Mull*, and *Jura*; and the *Pentland Firth*, between the Orkney Islands and the mainland.

The principal capes are—*Duncansby Head*, *Dunnet Head*, and *Cape Wrath*, on the north; *Mull of Cantyre* and *Mull of Galloway*, on the south-west; *Kinnaird's Head*, *Fife Ness*, and *St Abb's Head*, on the east.

The islands on the coast of Scotland are very numerous, but are rocky and barren, and important chiefly from their fisheries. The principal are the *Shetland* and *Orkney Islands*, on the north; and the *Hebrides*, divided into the Inner and Outer, and comprising most of the islands on the west coast. The principal in the Outer or Western Hebrides are—*Lewis*, *North* and *South Uist*; in the Inner are *Skye*, *Mull*, and *Islay*, with *Arran* and *Bute* in the Firth of Clyde. *Staffa*, a small island in the Inner Hebrides, is celebrated for its basaltic columns and caverns, the principal of which is *Fingal's Cave*.

The climate in the north and west, or mountainous part of Scotland, is generally moist and mild, but the soil is barren, although admirably adapted for grazing; and vast herds of sheep and cattle are reared. In the south and east, or in the Lowlands, it resembles England, and is warmer and more fertile, and in a high state of cultivation.

The principal minerals are coal, iron, lead, stone, and slate. The coal region extends across the country from Fifeshire to Ayrshire. Iron is chiefly found in the neighborhood of Glasgow, lead in the Lowther Hills, and slate in Argyleshire.

Cotton, linen, woollen, and iron manufactures are extensively carried on, and the Clyde is celebrated for its iron ship-building trade. The fisheries on the coast and on the islands are important, especially those of the herring and salmon.

Scotland and England were united under one king in 1603, when James VI. of Scotland ascended the throne as James I. of England; the parliaments of the two countries, however, were not united till 1707. The established religion is the Presbyterian, of which there are several branches.

*Edinburgh*, (212,000,) the capital, is situated near the Firth of Forth. It is divided into the Old and New Towns. The former is very ancient, and is built on hills, giving it a very picturesque appearance; and the latter is celebrated for its beauty, and for its numerous fine monuments and buildings. Edinburgh has long been distinguished as a seat of learning and literature, and possesses a fine university. It has few manufactures, but carries on an extensive trade through its seaport, *Leith* (44,000). *Glasgow* (534,000), on the river Clyde, is the largest and most important city in Scotland, and the second in Great Britain in population. It carries on large manufactures, and is celebrated for its iron steam-ship building. It possesses a fine cathedral, and is the seat of a university.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SCOTLAND.—How is Scotland separated from England? From Ireland? From what countries does the North Sea separate Scotland, (Europe)? What groups of islands lie to the north? Which counties border on the Atlantic? Which on the North

Sea? Which adjoin England? Which large cities are on the west coast? Which on the east coast? In what direction from Edinburgh is Glasgow? Aberdeen? Inverness? Dumfries? Paisley? Berwick? Stirling? Ayr? What is the nearest English town?

*Greenock*, on the Clyde, is an important seaport. *Paisley* (48,000) has extensive cotton and shawl manufactures. *Aberdeen* (88,000) is the principal city in the north, and is built chiefly of granite. It has a large shipping and shipbuilding trade, and is the seat of a university. Near it is *Balmoral*, the favorite Highland residence of the Queen. *Kilmarnock* and *Dumfries* are manufacturing towns. *Dundee*, (119,000,) *Arbroath*, and *Montrose*, are important seaports, with linen manufactures. *Dunfermline* also has extensive linen manufactures. *Perth* and *Stirling* are beautiful towns. Near *Perth* is *Scone*, where the Scottish kings were crowned. *Inverness* is the capital of the North Highlands.

What is the area of Scotland? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. How is each bounded? Where are the towns situated? Describe the surface of Scotland. What are the principal mountains? Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. How do the mountains divide the country? In what direction does the land slope? Name the principal rivers. Trace them on the map. What towns do they flow past? For what are the Scottish lakes celebrated? Name the principal. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Describe the coast-line of Scotland. Name the principal firths or bays. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Name the principal capes. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. What is said of the islands of Scotland? Name the principal. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Scotland. Soil. Products. Minerals, and where they are found. What is said of the manufactures and fisheries? When were Scotland and England united? What is the religion of the country? Describe the chief towns? Where are they situated?

### IRELAND.

Area, 31,874 square miles; population, 5,411,000; persons to a square mile, 170; one-seventh less than Newfoundland in size.

Capital, DUBLIN.

IRELAND is an island in the Atlantic Ocean to the west of Great Britain, from which it is separated by the North Channel, Irish Sea, and St George's Channel.

It is divided into four provinces,—*Ulster*, *Connaught*, *Leinster*, and *Munster*, which are subdivided into 32 counties.

#### Ulster, Nine Counties.

| Counties.          | Principal Towns.                            |
|--------------------|---|
| LONDONDERRY, . . . | Londonderry, Coleraine.                     |
| DONEGAL, . . .     | Lifford, Ballyshannon.                      |
| ANTRIM, . . .      | Belfast, Lisburn, Ballymena, Carrickfergus. |
| DOWNY, . . .       | Newry, Downpatrick, Donaghadee.             |
| ARMAGH, . . .      | Armagh, Portadown.                          |
| MONAGHAN, . . .    | Monaghan.                                   |
| TYRONE, . . .      | Omagh, Dungannon, Strabane.                 |
| FERMANAGH, . . .   | Enniskillen.                                |
| CAVAN, . . .       | Cavan.                                      |

#### Connaught, Five Counties.

|                  |                            |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| ROSCOMMON, . . . | Roscommon.                 |
| LEITRIM, . . .   | Carrick-on-Shannon.        |
| SLIGO, . . .     | Sligo.                     |
| MAYO, . . .      | Castlebar, Westport.       |
| GALWAY, . . .    | Galway, Tuam, Ballinasloe. |

#### Leinster, Twelve Counties.

|                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| DUBLIN, . . .         | Dublin, Kingstown.              |
| WICKLOW, . . .        | Wicklow, Arklow.                |
| WEXFORD, . . .        | Wexford, New Ross.              |
| KILKENNY, . . .       | Kilkenny.                       |
| CARLOW, . . .         | Carlow.                         |
| KILDARE, . . .        | Athy, Naas, Maynooth, Kildare.  |
| QUEEN'S COUNTY, . . . | Maryborough.                    |
| KING'S COUNTY, . . .  | Tullamore, Birr or Parsonstown. |

| Counties.                     | Principal Towns.                                    |
|-------------------------------|---|
| WESTMEATH, . . .              | Mullingar, Athlone.                                 |
| LONGFORD, . . .               | Longford.   |
| MEATH, . . .                  | Trim, Navan.  |
| LOUTH, . . .                  | Dundalk, Drogheda, Ardee.                           |
| <b>Munster, Six Counties.</b> |   |
| WATERFORD, . . .              | Waterford, Dungarvan, Lismore.                      |
| TIPPERARY, . . .              | Clomel, Cashel, Nenagh, Thurles, Tipperary.         |
|                               | Carrick-on-Suir, Templemore.                        |
| CLARE, . . .                  | Ennis.  |
| LIMERICK, . . .               | Limerick.   |
| CORK, . . .                   | Cork, Queenstown, Bandon, Youghal, Kinsale, Fermoy. |
| KERRY, . . .                  | Tralee, Killarney, Dingle.                          |

The surface of Ireland is generally low, and about two-fifths of it is covered with peat bogs. Mountains occur in detached masses, generally near the coast, and most frequently in the north and west. There are numerous beautiful lakes, and the scenery in the mountainous districts is exceedingly varied and picturesque. The principal mountains are—*Magillcuddy's Rocks*, with *Carn Tual*, the highest summit, in King's County, 3400 feet; *Mount Nephin* in Mayo, and *Lugnaquilla Mount* in Wicklow. Besides these are the *Donegal*, *Antrim*, and *Connemara Mountains*.

Owing to the level country through which they flow, the rivers of Ireland are slow, and navigable for the greater part of their courses. The principal rivers are—the *Shannon*, with its lake expansions, *Loughs Allen*, *Ree*, and *Derg*, flowing west, 224 miles long, and navigable for 213; the *Blackwater*, *Suir*, and *Barrow*, flowing south; the *Liffey* and the *Boyne*, flowing east; the *Bann*, draining *Lough Neagh*, the largest lake in Britain or Ireland, the *Erne*, draining several beautiful lakes, and the *Foyle*, flowing north. The Lakes of Killarney, celebrated for their beautiful scenery, are situated among the mountains of Kerry.

Ireland, like Scotland, is deeply indented with bays and loughs, especially on the west. The principal are—*Loughs Foyle* and *Swilly*, on the north coast; *Donegal*, *Clew*, and *Galway Bays*, mouth of the *Shannon*, *Dingle*, *Kenmore*, and *Bantry Bays*, on the west coast; *Cork*, *Waterford*, and other harbors on the south; and *Wexford Harbor*, *Dublin*, *Dundalk*, and *Carlingford Bays*, and *Belfast Lough*, on the east coast.

The principal capes are—*Houthead*, near Dublin, on the east; *Fair Head*, *Malin Head*, and *Bloody Foreland*, on the north; *Rossan Point*, *Slyne*, and *Dunmore Heads*, on the west; and *Cape Clear*, and *Carrigrohane Point*, on the south.

The climate of Ireland is mild and healthy, but very moist, owing to the prevailing westerly winds. To its moist climate it owes the beautiful verdure with which the fields are always clothed, and which has caused it to be named the "Emerald Isle." The soil is fertile, but is not so highly cultivated as in Britain, owing to the poverty of the people, and much of the land being in possession of non-resident owners. Flax and potatoes are the staple agricultural productions. Cattle are extensively reared, and exported to Britain, as well as all kinds of dairy and farm produce.

Ireland possesses valuable minerals, but these are little wrought. The peat bogs supply valuable fuel, peat being used instead of coal.

The linen manufacture is the chief branch of industry, and is carried on principally in the north.

"EXERCISES ON THE MAP—IRELAND.—What is the most northern point of Ireland called? What is the most southern point of Ireland called? How is Ireland separated from England? From Scotland? What is the nearest town in Scotland? Which counties are on the west coast?

On the north? On the east? On the south? What cities are on the Shannon? Which are the chief towns on the east coast? On the north? On the west? On the south? In what direction from Dublin is Londonderry? Cork? Belfast? Galway? Sligo? Limerick?



# IRELAND

English Miles  
0 10 20 30









# (SCANDINAVIA) SWEDEN, NORWAY & DENMARK.

English Miles  
0 50 100 150 200  
REFERENCE

SWEDEN. NORWAY.  
Lands or Districts. Amts or Bailiwicks.

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Norrbotten        | 1 Finnmarken         |
| 2 Västerbotten      | 2 Norrland           |
| 3 Jämtland          | 3 North Drontheim    |
| 4 West-Norrbotten   | 4 Romsdalen          |
| 5 Götterborg        | 5 South Drontheim    |
| 6 Bergslagen        | 6 Medelsund          |
| 7 Wernland          | 7 Nord-Bergenhus     |
| 8 Örebro            | 8 South Bergenhus    |
| 9 Westmanland       | 9 Lister & Mandel    |
| 10 Uppland          | 10 Salouus & Bohydel |
| 11 Stockholm        | 11 Kristianstad      |
| 12 Södermanland     | 12 Blekinge          |
| 13 Östergötland     | 13 Rikshuset         |
| 14 Skaraborg        | 14 Järnberg          |
| 15 Eleborg          | 15 Agershus          |
| 16 Göteborg & Bohus | 16 Christiania town  |
| 17 Halland          | 17 Smalsten          |
| 18 Jönköping        |                      |
| 19 Kalmar           |                      |
| 20 Kronoberg        |                      |
| 21 Blekinge         |                      |
| 22 Jönköping        |                      |
| 23 Malmhus          |                      |
| 24 Gotland          |                      |





The native Irish are Celts, but a large part of the population, especially in the north, came originally from the neighboring island. No religion is now established by law, but four-fifths of the population are Roman Catholic. Since the year 1800 the parliament of Ireland has been united with that of Great Britain. The Queen is represented in Ireland by the Lord-Lieutenant, who resides at Dublin.

Owing to the failure of the potato crop, and other causes, which led to extensive emigration to America, the population of Ireland has decreased 2,760,000 in 30 years, or about one-third of the entire population.

*Dublin*, (245,000,) the capital, is a large and beautiful city, and is celebrated for the number of its fine buildings, its beautiful bay, and the surrounding scenery. It is the see of an archbishop, the residence of the Lord-Lieutenant, and the seat of a university. Its trade is carried on chiefly with Liverpool. Near it is *Maynooth*, with a Roman Catholic college.

*Belfast* (174,000) is one of the most rising cities in the British Islands. It has risen into importance chiefly within the last century, and is now the second city in Ireland. It is the centre of the linen and sewed muslin trade. *Cork*, (78,000,) the third city in Ireland, has a magnificent harbor, and is the centre of a large trade. *Galway* is the largest town in Connaught, and possesses an excellent harbor. *Limerick* and *Waterford* are important towns, with large manufactures. *Londonderry*, *Newry*, *Dundalk*, *Drogheda*, *Wexford*, and *Sligo* are seaports, engaged in the export of provisions. *Kilkenny* and *Clonmel* are the most important inland towns. Near *Coleraine* is the celebrated Giant's Causeway, a mass of basaltic columns extending into the sea.

What is the area of Ireland? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? How is it divided? Name the counties and their chief towns. How are the counties bounded? Where are the towns situated? Describe the surface of Ireland. Name the principal mountains. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What is said of the rivers? Name the principal. Trace their courses on the map. What towns do they flow past? What are the principal lakes, and where are they situated? Describe the coast-line of Ireland.

Name the principal bays, &c. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Ireland. For what is it remarkable? Describe the soil, products, minerals, manufactures. To what races do the Irish belong? What is their religion? What government has Ireland? What is said of the decrease of population? Describe the principal towns. Where are they situated? What great natural curiosity exists in Ireland?

## SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

SWEDEN AND NORWAY form the peninsula of Scandinavia, situated between the Atlantic Ocean, Baltic Sea, and Gulf of Bothnia; and form one power under the same crown, but with separate governments. They are separated from Denmark by the Skager Rack, Cattegat, and the Sound.

### NORWAY.

Area, 121,400 square miles; population, 1,760,000; persons to a square mile, 14; two-thirds the size of Ontario.

Capital, CHRISTIANIA.

NORWAY occupies the western part of the peninsula, and extends from the Arctic Ocean to the Skager Rack. It is divided into six provinces.

The surface is very mountainous, being composed of high mountains or table-lands, extending the whole length of the peninsula, nearly 1100 miles, and called the *Kiölen Mountains* in the north, the *Dovrefield Mountains* in the middle, and the *Hardangerfield Mountains* in the south. These mountains rise chiefly from high plateaux, and are most abrupt and precipitous on the west, where they sometimes form the sea-coast, and in Sweden decline more gradually towards the Baltic Sea. The principal plateaux are *Langfeld*, *Sognefeld*, *Dovre-feld*, and *Hardangerfeld*.

The rivers, owing to the formation of the country, are comparatively short rapid torrents; the principal is the *Glommen*, flowing into the Skager Rack after a course of 340 miles.

The coast-line of Norway is remarkable for its deep indentations called fiords, narrow arms of the sea, extending sometimes 50 miles into the land between precipitous mountains, and abounding with grand and picturesque but wild scenery. The principal capes are the *North Cape*, the northern extremity of the country, and the *Naze*, the southern extremity.

Numerous small islands extend along the coast, the principal of which are the *Lofoden Isles*, with important fisheries. Near them is the dangerous and celebrated whirlpool, the *Maelstrom*, caused by the meeting of opposite tidal currents.

The climate of Norway is very severe but healthy, and owing to the Atlantic Ocean is much more moist than that of Sweden. The soil is in general rocky and barren, although some tracts are fertile and well cultivated. In the northern part, within the Arctic circle, the sun does not set for weeks together at midsummer, and is not seen for the same length of time at midwinter.

The chief wealth of Norway is derived from its mines, forests, and fisheries. Timber, iron, and eider-down are largely exported. It possesses also silver and copper mines.

Norway was an independent kingdom previous to 1397, when it was annexed to Denmark. It was ceded to Sweden in 1814, and is now governed by a Viceroy, but enjoys a free constitution. The religion is the Lutheran. It is the most thinly peopled country in Europe.

*Christiania*, (65,000,) the capital, is situated at the head of a fiord of the same name. It is largely engaged in commerce, and has a university. *Bergen* (30,000) is the second city in size, and an important seaport, with large exports of timber and dried fish. *Drontheim* is also an important town, and the former capital of Norway. *Roraa*s has extensive coppermines. At *Frederickshald*, Charles XII. of Sweden was killed while besieging it. *Hammerfest* is the most northerly town in the world. *Stavanger* (17,000) is an important seaport on the south-west. The other towns are small.

What countries compose Scandinavia? How is the peninsula situated? What is the area of Norway? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? Describe the surface. Name the principal mountains. Point them out on the map. Describe them. Name the principal plateaux. What is said of the rivers? Point out the principal on the map. Describe the coast-line of Norway. Point out the principal capes on the map. What is said of the islands? Point out the principal on the map. What famous whirlpool is near Norway, and where is it? Describe the climate. Soil. What happens in the northern part? Describe the products. What minerals are principally found? What is said of Norway? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SWEDEN AND NORWAY.—How is Sweden separated from Russia? From Prussia? From Denmark? How is Norway separated from Denmark? What islands are on the west coast of Norway? What islands are in the Baltic? How is Christiania situated?

ated? Bergen? Drontheim? Hammerfest? In what direction from London is Christiania? In what direction from Christiania is Stockholm? How is Stockholm situated? Gothenberg? In what direction from Stockholm is St Petersburg? Copenhagen? Warsaw?

## SWEDEN.

Area, 168,000 square miles; population, 4,200,000; persons to a square mile, 25; nearly the size of Ontario.  
Capital, STOCKHOLM.

SWEDEN occupies the eastern portion of the Scandinavian peninsula, including part of Lapland in the north, and extending along the western shores of the Gulf of Bothnia and the Baltic Sea.

It is divided into three great divisions, *Gothland*, *Sweden Proper*, and *Norrland*, and these are subdivided into 24 läns or governments.

Sweden resembles Norway in most of its characteristics, but the slope of the mountains is more gradual towards the sea. It has many rivers, but they are rapid and impetuous, and of no value for commerce. More than one-half of the surface is covered with vast forests.

The lakes of Sweden form the most striking feature of the country, and are numerous. The principal are *Lakes Wenner, Wetter, Mälar*, and *Hielmar*.

The islands of *Gottland* and *Oland* in the Baltic belong to Sweden.

The climate, like that of Norway, is severe, and agriculture is only carried on in the south.

The mines of Sweden are very valuable. It is celebrated for its iron, which is considered the best in the world; the copper mines of Dalecarlia are also famous. The principal mining districts are in the valley of the Dal.

The form of government is a limited monarchy, and the religion Lutheran.

*Stockholm*, (150,000,) the capital, is situated partly on the mainland and partly on some small islands at the junction of Lake Mälar with the Baltic. It possesses a safe and commodious harbor, and carries on an extensive trade. *Gothenburg* (64,000) is the second city, and an important seaport, with large exports of iron and timber. *Upsala* is famous for its university. *Carlsrona*, in the south, situated on five small islands, is the principal station of the navy. *Dannemora* has celebrated iron mines, and *Fahlun*, *Norckeping*, *Malmö*, and *Calmar*, are the only other towns of importance.

The island of *St Bartholomew*, in the West Indies, belongs to Sweden.

## LAPLAND.

LAPLAND lies to the north-east of Sweden, and is the most northerly part of Europe. It belongs nominally to Sweden and Russia, but the country is so poor, and the inhabitants are so wandering, that they are practically independent. They are small in stature, and subsist chiefly upon the flesh and milk of the reindeer. They profess Christianity, but mingle with it many Pagan superstitions.

What is the area of Sweden? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? How is it divided? What is said of Sweden? What is said of the lakes of Sweden? Name the principal. Point them out on the map. What islands belong to Sweden? Describe the climate, &c. For what is Sweden celebrated? What is the form of government and religion? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What foreign possessions has Sweden? Where is Lapland situated? To whom does it belong? Describe the people.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—EUROPE.—How is Russia separated from Asia? What five seas wash the shores of Russia? What countries adjoin Russia on the south-west? What large rivers flow into the Black Sea? The Caspian? What are the principal cities on the

## RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

Area, 2,128,000 square miles; population, 71,000,000; persons to a square mile, 33; rather larger than the Hudson Bay Territory.  
Capital, ST PETERSBURG.

RUSSIA IN EUROPE is bounded on the North by the Arctic Ocean; on the West by Sweden, the Gulf of Bothnia, the Baltic Sea, Prussia, Austria, and Turkey; on the South by Turkey, the Black Sea, and Mount Caucasus; and on the East by the Caspian Sea, the Ural River, and Ural Mountains, which also separate it from Siberia or Asiatic Russia.

The empire of Russia, of which by far the greater portion is in Asia, comprises about one-half of Europe and one-third of Asia; the whole extent being a little less than that of the empire of Great Britain, and about one-seventh of the whole land surface of the globe. In population, it is far inferior to the British Empire, containing altogether only about 80,000,000 inhabitants, of which Russia in Europe has the greater part.

Russia in Europe is divided into 51 governments. It consists of one vast level plain, with few hills, and without a single mountain, except on the boundaries. South and east of St Petersburg are the *Valdai Hills*, a raised tableland, in which most of the large rivers of Russia rise. In the south-east are vast *steppes* or desert sandy plains. The *Ural Mountains*, forming the eastern boundary, extend about 1200 miles from the Arctic Ocean southward, nearly to the Caspian Sea, rising in some parts upwards of 6000 feet in height. The *Mounts Caucasus* extend from the Sea of Azov along the north-eastern shore of the Black Sea and eastward to the Caspian Sea; *Mount Elburz*, the highest peak, being 18,571 feet high.

The rivers of Russia are large but slow, owing to the level nature of the country which they traverse. The principal are the *Petchora*, flowing into the Arctic Ocean; the *Drina*, flowing into the White Sea; the *Neva*, *Duna*, *Niemen*, and *Vistula* (the latter rising in Russian Poland, and flowing through Prussia) into the Baltic; and the *Dnieper*, *Don*, and *Volga*, flowing south into the Black Sea, the Sea of Azov, and the Caspian Sea respectively. The Volga is the largest river in Europe; it is about 2100 miles long, and is navigable for almost the entire length of its course.

A number of large lakes extend from near St Petersburg to the White Sea, and, by means of these and a series of canals, the White Sea is connected with the Baltic. St Petersburg is also connected with the Caspian Sea by the Volga River and canals. The principal lakes are *Ladoga*, *Onega*, and *Saima*, *Ilmen* and *Peipus*.

Russia possesses but little sea-coast compared with the extent of its territory; the *White Sea* and *Arctic Ocean* are on the north; the eastern portion of the *Baltic*, with the *Gulfs of Bothnia*, *Finland*, and *Riga*, on the west; the *Black Sea* and the *Sea of Azov* on the south; and the *Caspian Sea*, on the south-east.

The Islands belonging to Russia are *Waigatz*, *Nova Zembla*, and *Spitzbergen* in the Arctic Ocean; the *Aland Isles*, and *Dago* and *Oesel* in the Baltic. Between the Black Sea and Sea

Baltic? On the Black Sea? On the Volga? How is St Petersburg situated? Moscow? Sebastopol? Archangel? In what direction from St Petersburg is Moscow? Nijai Novgorod? Archangel? Odessa? Vienna? Warsaw? Helsingfors? Riga? London?





# HOLLAND & BELGIUM

English Miles

0 10 20 30 40 50

Railways

Canals

N O R T H

S E A



Long E. from Greenwich

Bartholomaeus

of Azov is the peninsula of the *Crimea*, joined to the mainland by the *Isthmus of Perceop*.

The climate is cold and severe in the north, but not so extreme as in North America in the same latitude. In the south it is warmer. The soil is barren in the north, and in the south-east where the vast steppes cover the country; but fertile in the south and west, where barley, oats, and wheat are extensively cultivated and exported. Hemp is grown in the west to a great extent.

The Ural Mountains contain valuable mines of gold, silver, copper, and iron. Manufactures are greatly neglected. The chief exports are timber, hemp, grain, flax, tallow, pitch, wool, and furs.

The government is an absolute monarchy, and the religion that of the Greek Church. The Czar is the absolute head both of the Church and of the State. Until March 1861, the peasants were serfs or vassals of the proprietors of the land upon which they were born. They are now free; and education, which was formerly altogether neglected, is now becoming more diffused, and the condition of the people improved. The nobles are wealthy, and live in a very magnificent but rude style.

*St Petersburg*, (670,000,) the capital, is situated on the left bank of the Neva, and on two small islands adjoining. It was founded by Peter the Great, and is one of the most magnificent and important commercial cities in Europe. *Kronstadt* is its port, and the chief station of the Russian navy. It is strongly fortified. *Riga*, *Revel*, and *Helsingfors* on the Baltic are important commercial towns, strongly fortified, with large exports of flax, hemp, timber, and grain. *Archangel*, on the Northern Dvina near its entrance into the White Sea, is an important commercial town. *Vilna*, the former capital of Lithuania, has a large trade. The greater part of the inhabitants are Jews. *Moscow*, (368,000,) the former capital, in the centre of the country, is the great emporium of trade in the interior. It is celebrated for having been destroyed by the Russians themselves in 1812, causing Napoleon Bonaparte to commence his disastrous retreat. *Odessa* (170,000) is the chief port on the Black Sea. It is strongly fortified, and makes large exports of grain. *Taganrog*, on the Sea of Azov, has a large trade in grain. *Sebastopol*, in the Crimea, is celebrated for its siege by the Allies in 1854-55; since the destruction of Sebastopol, *Nikolaiev* is the chief naval station of the Russians in the Black Sea. *Kiev*, on the right bank of the Dnieper, is one of the oldest cities in the empire. It was here that Christianity was first introduced, and it is regarded as a sacred city. *Tula*, about 100 miles south of Moscow, has large manufactures, chiefly of iron and steel. *Astrakhan*, on an island at the mouth of the Volga, is the emporium of the trade on the Caspian Sea with Persia and other eastern countries. *Nijni Novgorod*, at the junction of the Oka with the Volga, is celebrated for its annual fairs, lasting from July to September, and attracting upwards of 100,000 persons from all parts of Europe and Asia. *Kasan*, 430 miles east of Moscow, near the Volga, has a large trade with Siberia and Tartary.

*Circassia* is situated between the Black and Caspian Seas, on the north of Mount Caucasus. The men are celebrated for their bravery, and have long defied the power of Russia; and

the women are famous for their beauty. They are now deserting the country, and emigrating in large numbers to Turkey, rather than submit to Russian rule.

*Finland*, in the north-west, between the Gulfs of Finland and Bothnia, formerly belonged to Sweden, but was annexed to Russia in 1809.

What is the area of Russia in Europe? Population? Size? Capital? How is Russia bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. What is said of the Russian Empire? How is Russia in Europe divided? Describe the surface. The principal mountains. Trace them on the map. Describe the rivers of Russia. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the lakes of Russia. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the sea-coast. Its principal features. Point them out on the map. State where they are situated. Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map. What peninsula is in the south-east? Describe the climate. The soil and products. The minerals. The government. The state of the people. Describe the principal cities. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe Circassia and its people. Describe Finland. Where are these countries situated?

#### POLAND.

POLAND lies to the south-west of Russia, between Prussia and Austria. It was formerly a powerful independent kingdom, but towards the end of last century was seized and divided between Russia, Prussia, and Austria. It was formerly rather larger than France, and contained 12,000,000 inhabitants; the greater part is now subject to Russia.

It is level in surface, and well adapted for the production of grain, which is largely exported.

The Poles are a brave and patriotic people, and in 1830, and later in 1863, made determined but unsuccessful attempts to throw off the foreign yoke.

*Warsaw*, (250,000,) on the Vistula, was the ancient capital. It suffered greatly in the sieges of 1794 and 1831, and is now the principal station for the Russian army in Poland. Its university was suppressed in 1834. About 35,000 of the inhabitants are Jews.

Where is Poland situated? What was its former state? What was its former extent and population? Describe the surface. The people. The chief city in Russian Poland. Point it out on the map, and state where it is situated. Of what historic interest is it?

#### HOLLAND, OR THE NETHERLANDS.

Area, 12,761 square miles; population, 3,674,000; persons to a square mile, 290; nearly two-thirds the size of Nova Scotia.

Capital, AMSTERDAM.

HOLLAND is bounded on the North and West by the North Sea; on the South by Belgium; and on the East by Germany.

It is divided into twelve provinces, including those portions of the old Duchies of Limburg and Luxemburg (the latter lying to the south-east of Belgium) which belong to it. Until 1866, Dutch Luxemburg formed part of the German Confederation.

Holland is the lowest and most level country in Europe, a great part of the surface being below the sea-level at high water. It is protected from the encroachment of the sea by enormous dykes, or banks faced with stone and wood. Canals, which are very numerous, have long formed the chief highways for traffic, but railways now connect the principal points.

washes its shores? What countries adjoin Belgium? What large river flows through Holland? What other countries does it flow through or past? How is Amsterdam situated? How is Rotterdam situated? Antwerp? In what direction from Amsterdam is London? Brussels?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—EUROPE.—What countries adjoin Poland? On what river is Warsaw situated? Where does it empty? Through what countries does it flow?

HOLLAND AND BELGIUM.—What countries adjoin Holland? What sea



The coast-line is much broken by the estuaries of the *Rivers Rhine, Meuse, and Scheldt*, which enter the sea by a number of mouths, and form numerous large islands. The principal other inlets are the *Zuyder Zee*, and the *Dollart*. These were formerly inland lakes, but the sea has broken in upon them. From the mouth of the *Zuyder Zee*, a chain of islands extends north-east along the coast, the principal of which is *Texel*. There are many lakes near the coast, which are gradually being drained. The Salt Lake, near Dort, at the mouth of the Meuse, was, in 1440, formed by an inundation of the sea, which destroyed 72 villages, and more than 20,000 persons.

The climate is damp and cold, but the soil is rich and moist, and is industriously cultivated. Horticulture has been brought to great perfection; and cattle are reared in large numbers. The manufactures are large and valuable, consisting chiefly of linen and earthenware.

Holland, after throwing off the Spanish yoke, was the foremost commercial nation in the world; but successive wars, and rivalry of Great Britain and other commercial powers, have greatly diminished its trade.

Its foreign possessions now comprise—*Java, the Moluccas or Spice Islands, Sumatra, Borneo, Celebes, &c.*, in the East Indies; *Curaçoa* and several other islands in the West Indies (see page 38); *Surinam*, or Dutch Guiana, in South America; and some forts on the coast of Guinea in Africa.

*Amsterdam*, (278,000,) the capital, is one of the first commercial cities of Europe. The site of the city is marshy, and the houses are built on piles. It is intersected by canals, crossed by about 300 bridges. *Rotterdam* (123,000) is next in importance and commerce. North of it is "*The Hague*," (92,000,) the residence of the Court, and a beautiful city. *Leyden* is celebrated for its university, and for its heroic defence against the Spaniards in 1573. *Utrecht* is famous for its treaties, and has large woollen manufactures. *Bois le Duc* has linen manufactures. *Haarlem, Maastricht, and Luxemburg* are important towns.

What is the area of Holland? Population? Size? Capital? How is Holland bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. How is it divided? Describe its surface. What is said of the canals? Describe the coast-line. Its principal features. Point them out on the map. What rivers flow through Holland? Trace the whole of their courses on the map. Describe the islands. Point them out on the map. What is said of the lakes? Of the Salt Lake near Dort? Describe the climate and soil. Industry and manufactures. What is said of Holland? What foreign possessions has it? Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Describe the chief cities. Point them out on the map, and courses on the map. Describe the state where they are situated.

#### BELGIUM.

Area, 11,500 square miles; population, 5,100,000; persons to a square mile, 440; three-fifths the size of Nova Scotia.

Capital, BRUSSELS.

BELGIUM is bounded on the North by Holland; on the West by the North Sea; on the South by France; and on the East by Germany.

It is divided into nine provinces.

The surface is in general level, but not so much so, nor so low, as in Holland. More especially in the south and east it presents a pleasing variety of gentle eminences and undulating plains.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—HOLLAND AND BELGIUM.—To what direction from Brussels is Antwerp? Ostend? Liege? What is the length of Holland? Of Belgium? Their breadth?

FRANCE.—What is the latitude and longitude of France? How long

The principal rivers are the *Scheldt*, draining the west, and the *Meuse*, with its tributary the *Sambre*, draining the east; both flow through Holland into the German Ocean. The coast is low, and the country is protected from the sea by sand-hills or dunes.

The climate is mild and pleasant, and the soil productive, and most industriously cultivated. Belgium is the most densely peopled country in the world, and has large and important manufactures, chiefly of lace, cambric, woollen, and iron. It also possesses extensive iron and coal mines.

Belgium was at one time the foremost commercial country of Europe, but gave place to Holland, which in turn has given way to Great Britain.

Belgium, formerly called Flanders, belonged successively to Burgundy, Austria, Spain, and France. In 1814 it was joined to Holland, forming the Kingdom of the Netherlands. In the Revolution of 1830 it achieved its independence, and Leopold of Saxe-Coburg, uncle of Queen Victoria, was elected king.

*Brussels*, (260,000,) the capital, is one of the most beautiful cities of Europe, and has a large trade, with manufactures of lace and carpets. Seven miles to the south is the famous battle-field of Waterloo, where Napoleon was defeated by the British in 1815. *Antwerp* (126,000,) is the most important port, and carries on the largest trade. It was formerly the first city in Europe for commerce, and has a celebrated cathedral. *Ghent* and *Bruges* have large cotton manufactures. *Ostend* is an important seaport. *Mons* and *Namur* are important fortified towns, the first with iron and coal trade, the latter with manufactures of cutlery and hardware. *Louvain* has the principal university. *Malines* or *Mechlin* is famous for its lace manufactures. *Liege* is the most important iron manufacturing town on the continent.

What is the area of Belgium? Population? Size? Capital? How is Belgium bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map? How is it divided? Describe its surface. Its principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the coast-line. The climate and soil. What is said of the population and trade of Belgium? Of its mines? What is said of the former position of Belgium? What historical account is given? Describe the chief cities. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated?

#### FRANCE.

Area, 231,600 square miles; population, 36,100,000; persons to a square mile, 179; about the same size as the province of Quebec.

Capital, PARIS.

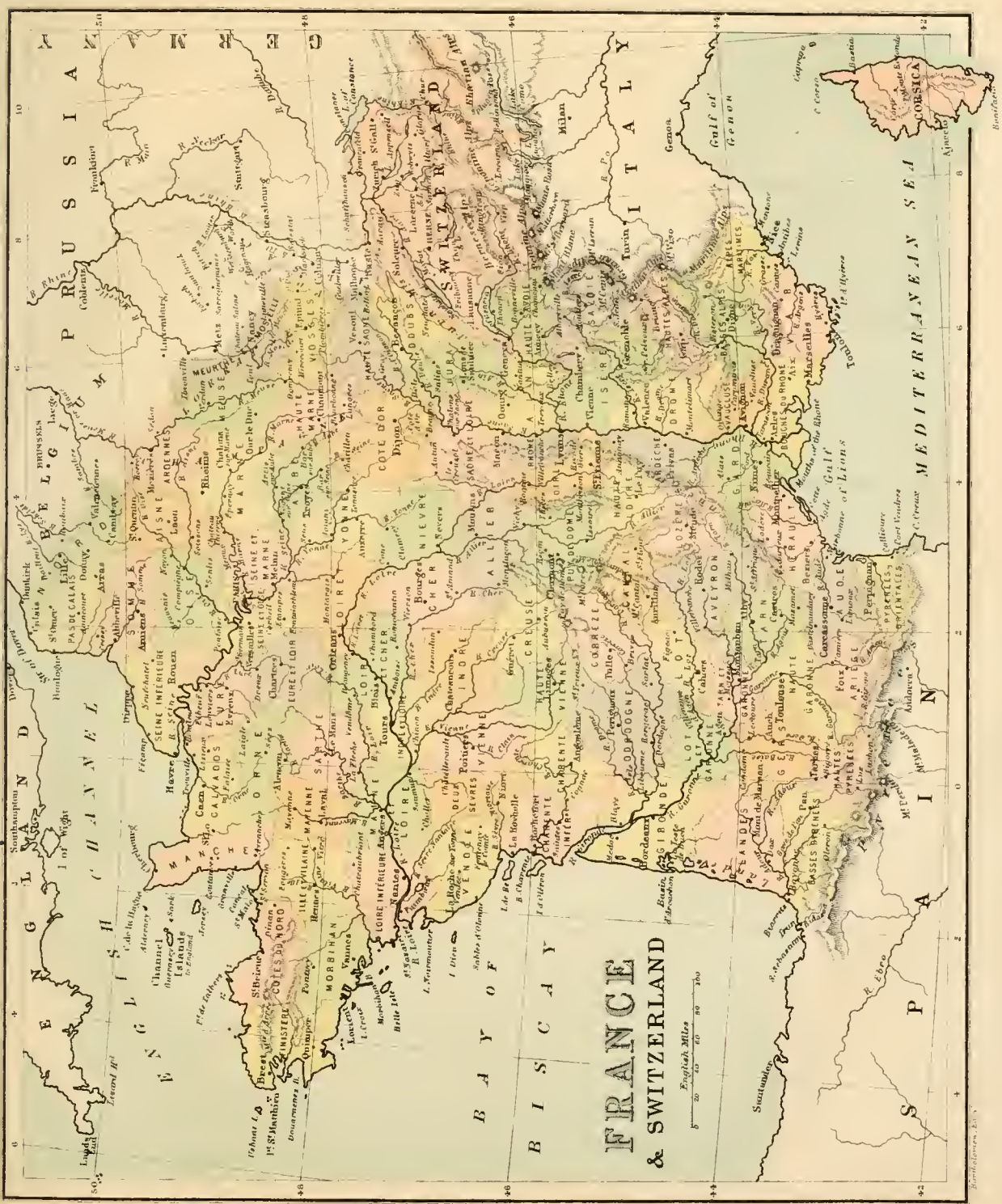
FRANCE is bounded on the North by Belgium and the English Channel; on the West by the Bay of Biscay; on the South by Spain and the Mediterranean; and on the East by Italy, Switzerland, and Germany.

Previous to the revolution in 1789, France was divided into 35 provinces; after that event it was divided into 86 departments, named from the rivers or mountains within their boundaries. In 1860, the Duchy of Savoy and county of Nice were ceded to France by the King of Italy. At the close of the late war (1871) Alsace and part of Lorraine were ceded by France to Germany.

The surface of France consists chiefly of undulating plains, except in the east, which is mountainous. The highest mountains in the south are the *Pyrenees*, forming the boundary

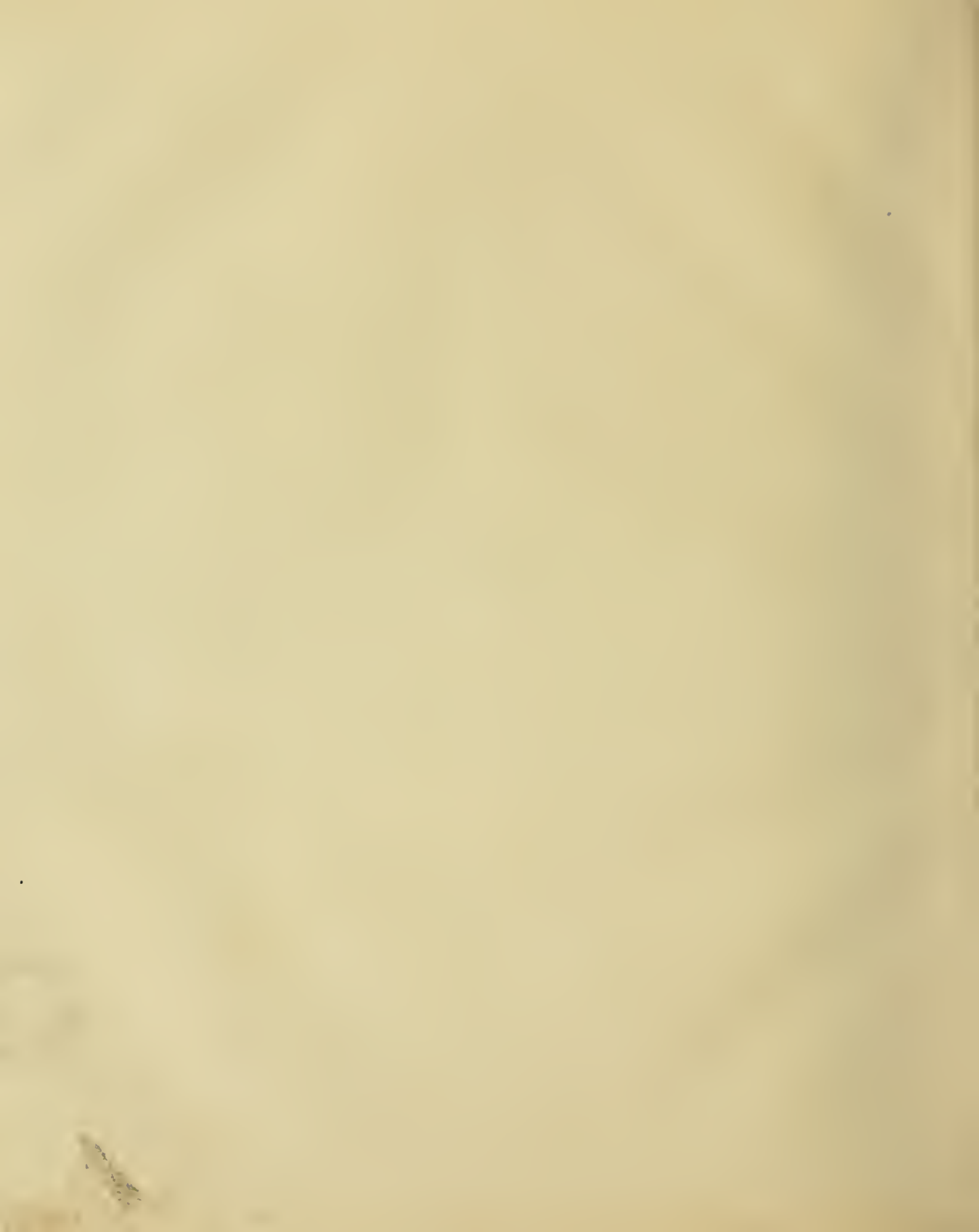
is it? How is France separated from Germany? From Switzerland? From Italy? From Spain? From England? What large bay is on the west coast? What islands belonging to Britain are off the north-west coast? What large island in the Mediterranean belongs to France?





FRANCE  
& SWITZERLAND

English Miles



between France and Spain. In the east are the *Alps*, forming the boundary between France and Italy, with Mont Blanc, 15,781 feet above the sea, the highest mountain in Europe; the *Jura Mountains* between France and Switzerland; and the *Vosges Mountains* between France and the lately ceded province of Alsace. To the west of the Jura Mountains is the plateau of Burgundy, from which the *Cevennes* extend south-west, forming the boundary between the basin of the Rhone and the rivers flowing west into the Bay of Biscay. To the west of the central Cevennes chain are the mountains of *Auvergne* and *Forez*.

France may be divided into four great river-basins, all sloping from the mountains in the eastern part of the country to the sea—that of the tributaries of the *Rhine*, the *Moselle*, and the *Meuse*, flowing north; the *Seine*, flowing into the English Channel; the *Loire* and *Garonne*, flowing west from the Cevennes to the Bay of Biscay; and the *Rhone*, flowing south into the Gulf of Lyons. The extent of navigable rivers and canals is upwards of 8000 miles.

France is very compact in territory, and is washed on three sides by the sea. The principal cape is *Cape de la Hogue*, in the north. The principal bays and gulfs are—*St Michael's Bay*, on the north-west; the *Bay of Biscay*, on the west; and the *Gulf of Lyons*, on the south. The only island of importance belonging to it is *Corsica*, which is mountainous, and celebrated as having been the birthplace of Napoleon Bonaparte. The *Hyères Islands*, near Toulon, in the Mediterranean, are celebrated for the salubrity of their climate. On the north-west is *Ushant*; and in the Bay of Biscay, *Belle Isle*, *Ré*, *Oleron*, and others.

The climate of France is one of the finest in Europe, as the country is situated about the middle of the temperate zone, and is protected from extremes by the influence of the Atlantic Ocean. The soil is fertile, and favorable for agriculture, which forms the occupation of three-fifths of the population. Its productions are various; in the north, wheat and grain; in the middle and south, the vine; and in the south, olives, figs, oranges, almonds, and other southern fruits. The wines and brandies of France are celebrated, and are considered to be among the best in the world; Champagne is made in the north-east, Burgundy in the east, and Bordeaux in the south-west; the best brandy comes from Cognac on the Charente. Beet-root is extensively cultivated for the manufacture of sugar.

In manufactures and commerce, France is one of the first countries in the world, but still much inferior to Great Britain. The principal manufactures are silks, woollens, porcelain, jewellery, articles of fashion, laces, gloves, and fancy wares. Its imports and exports amount to about 700,000,000 dols. France is one of the five great powers of Europe, and maintains a standing army of from 500,000 to 600,000 men, which is kept up by conscription. The annual revenue is about one-third more than that of Great Britain, and since the last war the public debt is the largest in the world.

France has been the scene of many revolutions and changes, commencing with the memorable revolution of 1789.

The present government is republican; but its political affairs are very unsettled, and there are many claimants for the supreme power.

In literature and science, France has always held a high position in the world; but popular education was much neglected until Louis Philippe ascended the throne, since which time an extensive and well-organised system has been established under the control of Government. The established religion is the Roman Catholic, but all are tolerated, and Protestant clergymen are also paid by the state.

The foreign possessions of France are the colony of *Algeria*, in the north of Africa; *Senegal*, and other settlements in the west; and portions of *Madagascar*, the island of *Reunion*, or *Bourbon*, with some smaller islands, in the Indian Ocean. In Asia, *Yanaon*, *Chandernagore*, *Karikal*, and *Pondicherry*, on the east coast of Hindostan, and *Mahé* on the west; and *Saigon*, with the surrounding territory, in the south-east of Cochin China. In North America, the islands of *St Pierre*, *Langley*, and *Miquelon*, off the coast of Newfoundland; *Guadaloupe*, *Martinique*, and other islands, in the West Indies; and *French Guiana*, in South America. In Oceania, *New Caledonia*, the *Marquesas Islands* and other settlements.

*Paris*, (1,850,000,) the capital, situated on the Seine, is the second city in Europe for size; but for architectural splendor and beauty, it ranks first. It was much improved under the reign of the late Emperor. It is the great centre for the manufacture of articles of taste and fashion; and is distinguished for the number and high character of its literary and scientific institutions, no less than for its numerous splendid palaces, churches, and places of amusement. Many of its finest public buildings have, however, been destroyed in the recent civil conflict. Near Paris are *Versailles*, celebrated for its palaces and gardens, and *Sèvres*, for porcelain manufactures. *Lyons*, (324,000,) on the Rhone, the second city in France for size, is celebrated for its silk manufactures. *Marseilles*, (312,000,) on the Mediterranean, is one of the oldest and most important cities in Europe. It is the great channel of communication between France and the Levant, and is the largest seaport in France. A little to the east of it is *Toulon*, (69,000,) an important naval port and arsenal. The other seaports are *Bordeaux*, (194,000,) with a large wine trade, on the Garenne; *La Rochelle*, near the mouth of the Charente; and *Nantes*, on the Loire, on the west coast; and *St Malo*, *Harre*, at the mouth of the Seine, and *Dieppe*, on the north coast. The other fortified naval ports are *Cherbourg*, on the north, and *Brest*, *L'Orient*, and *Rochefort*, on the west.

In the Rhone basin are—*Montpelier*, near the Mediterranean, noted for its salubrious climate; *Nîmes*, with many old Roman antiquities; *Avignon*, on the Rhone, the ancient residence of some of the Popes; *Dijon*, the centre of the Burgundy wine trade; and *Chambery*, the chief town of Savoy.

In the north—*Rouen*, *Amiens*, *Abbeville*, *Lille*, and *Rheims* have large woollen and cotton manufactures; Rouen is the chief seat of these. Amiens has a fine cathedral, and is memorable for the treaty made there in 1802 between France and

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—FRANCE.—What large rivers flow into the Bay of Biscay? Into the Mediterranean? Into the English Channel? What is the most westerly island of France called? On what river is Paris situated? What other large cities are situated on

its banks? On the Rhine? On the Rhone? On the Loire? On the Garonne? What large cities are on the Mediterranean shore? In what direction from Paris is Strasburg? Marseilles? Lyons? Bordeaux? Brest? Rheims? How is Spain separated from France?



England; in the cathedral of Rheims the French kings were usually crowned; near Abbeville is the ancient battle-field of *Creçy*, and farther north that of *Agincourt*; Lille is strongly fortified. *Valenciennes* is celebrated for its lace.

In the basin of the Loire are—*Tours* and *Orleans*, with manufactures of cloth; *Orleans* is celebrated as the scene of the exploits of Joan of Arc; and *St Etienne*, the chief seat of the iron manufactures of France.

Farther south are—*Limoges*, on the Vienne, and *Angoulême*, on the Charente, with porcelain manufactures; *Toulouse*, on the Garonne, where Wellington defeated Soult in 1814, has a large trade; *Pau*, near the Pyrenees, a favorite resort for invalids; *Bayonne*, where the bayonet was invented; and *Biarritz*, a fashionable watering-place.

What is the area of France? Population? Size? Capital? How is France bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. How is France divided? What parts of the country were ceded to France in 1860? Where are they situated? Describe the surface of France? Name the principal mountains, and describe their positions. Point them out on the map. Into what natural divisions may France be divided? Name the principal rivers, and trace their courses on the map. What is said of the rivers and canals? What is said of the outline of France? Of the islands? Of the bays and gulfs? Of the capes?

Point them out on the map. State where they are situated? Describe the climate of France. Its soil, &c. Its productions. For what is it celebrated? For what is best-root used? What is said of the manufactures and commerce of France? What is said of the army? What is said of the political history of France? What is said of literature and science in France? Of education? Of religion? Name the foreign possessions of France. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the chief cities of France. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated?

#### SPAIN.

Area, 193,000 square miles; population, 17,000,000; persons to a square mile, 87; about the same size as Ontario.

Capital, *MADRID*.

SPAIN is bounded on the North by France and the Bay of Biscay; on the West by Portugal and the Atlantic Ocean; on the South and East by the Mediterranean.

It was formerly divided into 14 provinces; but since 1833 it has been subdivided into 49 smaller provinces or governments. Spain is the most mountainous country in Europe, with the exception of Switzerland. The central region is an elevated table-land, occupying about one-half of the whole area of the country, and nearly surrounded by mountains. The principal mountains are the *Pyrenees*, forming the boundary between Spain and France, extending westward under the name of the *Cantabrian* chain, or mountains of Asturias, and terminating in Cape Finisterre on the Atlantic. Farther south, and extending from east to west, are the mountains of *Castile*; the *Sierra Toledo* and the *Sierra Morena*; and on the south coast the *Sierra Nevada*. Between these chains are large and fertile plains, through which the principal rivers flow, the elevated central plateau forming the boundary between those flowing west and those flowing east; the *Minho*, *Douro*, *Tagus*, *Guadiana*, and *Guadalquivir*, flow west into the Atlantic; and the *Ebro*, *Guadalquivir*, *Xucar*, and *Segura*, flow east into the Mediterranean.

The coast is bold and mountainous; and the principal capes are *Ortegal*, *Finisterre*, and *Trafalgar*, (where Nelson fell victo-

rious in 1805,) on the west coast; *Cape Tarifa* and *Europa Point* on the south; and *Capes Gata*, *Palos*, *De Nau*, and *Creuse*, on the east. The islands belonging to Spain are the *Balearic Isles*, (including *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ivica*, and *Formentera*, and two smaller islands,) in the Mediterranean.

The climate of Spain is varied. In the valleys the heat is excessive; and the high table-lands are alternately subject to scorching hot winds and freezing winter blasts, both destroying vegetation. The soil is in general rich, but it is poorly cultivated. Olives, figs, vines, oranges, and lemons grow in great abundance. Vast flocks of merino sheep, the wool of which is particularly valuable, are reared on the high lands; and the horses of Andalusia, in the south, are famous. The mines of Spain are also valuable, especially those of iron, lead, and quicksilver; but they are little wrought. The chief exports are wool, wine, cork, lead, and grain.

Spain was formerly one of the first powers of Europe, and ruled over a large part of it, besides possessing the greater part of America, from Mexico southwards; but it now ranks only as a second-rate power. Of all its vast foreign possessions there now only remain the islands of *Cuba* and *Puerto Rico* in the West Indies, the *Philippine* and *Ladron* Islands in the Pacific, and the *Canaries* and other small islands off the coast of Africa. It also possesses *Ceuta* and some small settlements on the north coast of Africa.

The government, after the revolution of 1820, was a limited monarchy, but in 1868 Queen Isabella was driven from the throne. After various changes of government, Alfonso, son of the ex-Queen Isabella, became king in 1874. The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic. The Inquisition, which formerly prevailed there in all its power, was abolished in 1820.

Spain once possessed many universities, but now they are neither numerous nor well attended. Popular education is in a very low state, and the people are very ignorant. Bull-fighting was formerly a favorite amusement, but has now somewhat declined.

*Madrid*, (330,000,) the capital, is situated on an elevated plain about 2000 feet above the sea, near the centre of the country. About 30 miles north-west is the celebrated palace, the *Escorial*. *Barcelona*, (190,000,) on the Mediterranean, is the second city in size, but the chief in importance for commerce, wealth, and manufactures. *Seville*, (150,000,) the former Moorish capital of Spain, on the Guadalquivir, is a large and handsome city. *Cádiz*, on the Island of Leon, is an important naval and commercial port, strongly fortified. *Murcia*, on the *Segura*, and *Valencia*, on the *Guadalquivir*, near the Mediterranean, have large manufactures of silk. *Malaga*, *Almeria*, and *Alicante*, on the southern coast, have large exports of fruit. *Xeres*, near the mouth of the Guadalquivir, is celebrated for its sherry wine. *Ferrol*, on the north-west, and *Cartagena*, on the south-east, possesses very fine harbors, and are naval stations. Near Ferrol is *Corunna*, with a fine harbor, where Sir John Moore was killed. In the valley of the Douro are—*Valladolid*, in former times the capital of the Spanish monarchy; and *Salamanca*, celebrated for its university. On the Tagus is *Toledo*, an ancient city, celebrated for its sword manufactures. On the Guadalquivir is *Cordoba*,

Mediterranean? Where is Madrid situated? What large cities are on the Ebro? Douro? Tagus? Guadiana? Guadalquivir? On the southern coast? On the northern coast? How is Lisbon situated? How is Oporto situated?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SPAIN.—How is Spain separated from Africa? What ocean and sea wash its shores? What other country occupies part of the same peninsula? What islands are off the east coast? What large rivers of Spain flow into the Atlantic? Into the







famous in ancient and mediæval history, under the Romans and the Moors. *Granada*, in the south-east, a former capital of the Moorish kings, contains the celebrated palace of the Alhambra. *Saragossa*, on the Ebro, is celebrated for its defence against the French in 1808-9. Many of the cities of Spain are celebrated as the scenes of great battles and sieges during the Peninsular War, between Great Britain and France, at the commencement of this century; as Badajoz, Talavera, Ciudad Rodrigo, Salamanca, and others.

Gibraltar, at the extreme south of Spain, is the strongest fortress in the world. It is built on a precipitous rock, 1500 feet high, and has stood three sieges, the last and most memorable of which lasted for three years, against the French and Spanish forces in 1779-82. It has belonged to Britain since 1704.

What is the area of Spain? Population? Size? Capital? How is Spain bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. How is it divided? Describe the surface. The principal mountains. Point them out on the map. Name the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the coast-line. Name the principal capes and islands. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Spain. The soil. Productions. Animals. Minerals. Exports. What did Spain formerly possess? What foreign possessions has it now? Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. What is said of the government and religion? What is said of education, &c.? Describe the chief cities. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What is said of Gibraltar? Where is it situated?

### PORTUGAL.

Area, 35,900 square miles; population, 4,340,000; persons to a square mile, 122; about the size of Newfoundland.

Capital, LISBON.

PORTUGAL occupies the south-western portion of the Iberian Peninsula, and lies between Spain and the Atlantic Ocean. It is divided into six provinces.

Portugal is similar to Spain in most of its physical features and productions.

It is traversed by several of the mountain ranges and rivers of Spain. The *Serra d'Estrella*, a continuation of the mountains of Castile, terminate in *Cape Roca*, the most westerly point of Europe. The *Serra d'Ossa* and *Serra Monchique* continuations of the Sierra Nevada, terminate in *Cape St Vincent*, off which Admiral Jervis defeated the Spanish fleet in 1793. The *Douro* and *Tagus* enter the Atlantic in Portugal, and the *Minho* and *Guadiana* form respectively the northern and south-eastern frontiers between Portugal and Spain. The *Mondego* is the only river of importance wholly Portuguese.

The climate is delightful, although excessively warm in the valleys; and the soil, like that of Spain, is rich, though poorly cultivated. Vines, oranges, lemons, olives, and figs grow abundantly. The principal exports are port-wine, cork, oil, and fruit.

In the fifteenth century Portugal was the most enterprising maritime power in Europe. The Portuguese were the first discoverers of the route to India by the Cape of Good Hope; but they have now greatly declined, and commerce, manufactures, and agriculture, are much neglected.

The foreign possessions remaining to Portugal are *Madeira*, the *Cape Verde Islands*, *Angola*, *Benguela*, *Mozambique*, and other settlements in Africa; *Goa*, and several other settlements in Hindostan; *Macao*, in China, and settlements at *Timor*, in the Indian Archipelago. The *Azores Islands* also belong to Portugal. *Brazil*, in South America, formerly in its possession, became independent in 1822.

The government is now a limited monarchy, and the established religion the Roman Catholic.

*Lisbon*, (280,000,) the capital, is situated on the Tagus, which here widens, forming a magnificent harbor. It is finely situated, but poorly built. It was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1755, when 60,000 persons are said to have perished. *Oporto*, (80,000,) at the mouth of the Douro, is the second city in size and importance, and exports port-wine, principally to England. These two cities divide the commerce of the country. *Setubal*, south-east of Lisbon, at the head of the bay of the same name, has large manufactures of salt, and *Coimbra*, on the Mondego, the only university in the kingdom.

What is the area of Portugal? Population? Size? Capital? How is it situated, and how bounded? How is it divided? What is said of its physical features? What mountains traverse Portugal? Point them out on the map. What rivers flow through Portugal? Trace their courses on the map. Describe the climate of Portugal. Products. Exports. What is said of Portugal as a maritime power? Name the foreign possessions of Portugal. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. What is said of the government and religion? Describe the chief cities? Where are they situated? Point them out on the map.

### DENMARK.

Area, 14,616 square miles; population, 1,784,000; persons to a square mile, 120; more than two-thirds the size of Nova Scotia.

Capital, COPENHAGEN.

DENMARK comprises the peninsula of Jutland and a group of Islands lying at the entrance of the Baltic Sea. It is bounded on the North by the Skager Rack; on the West by the North Sea; on the South by Germany; and on the East by the Baltic, the Sound, and the Cattegat.

It also possessed the Duchies of *Schleswig-Holstein*, and *Lauenburg*, comprising the southern part of the peninsula, but in 1864, after a gallant struggle, they were wrested from it by the German powers.

The principal islands are *Zealand*, *Fünen*, and *Laaland*; and besides these are numerous smaller islands, both on the east and west coasts.

The straits between the islands and the mainland are called the *Sound*, the *Great Belt*, and *Little Belt*. The most northerly point of the peninsula is called the *Skaw*.

The surface of Denmark is flat, scarcely interrupted even by a hill, and the rivers are small. The only navigable river in Denmark is the *Eider*, flowing into the North Sea, and connected with the Baltic by the Canal of Kiel.

The climate is damp, and the soil in the south fertile and well cultivated, but in the north it consists of barren and dreary wastes. The Danes have always been celebrated for their maritime enterprise. Their manufactures are small,

DENMARK.—How is Denmark separated from Sweden and Norway? How is Zealand separated from Sweden? How is Copenhagen situated? In what direction from Copenhagen is St. Petersburg? London? (see Europe). Christiania? Stockholm? Where is Iceland? (see Europe).

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.—In what direction from Lisbon is Madrid? Oporto? Cadiz? In what direction from Madrid is Badajoz? Seville? Barcelona? Valladolid? Paris? London? How far from the coast are the Balearic Islands?

and the inhabitants are chiefly engaged in agriculture or the fisheries.

Denmark possesses also the Island of *Iceland* and the *Faroe Islands*. Iceland is situated in the Atlantic, about 200 miles east of Greenland. It is cold and barren, and is celebrated for its numerous volcanoes, the largest of which is *Mount Heccla*, and for the geysers, or boiling springs, which throw up columns of boiling water at intervals, sometimes to the height of 80 feet. Iceland was peopled by the Norwegians in 874, and contains about 65,000 inhabitants. The chief town is *Reikiavik*.

The *Faroe Islands* are situated between Iceland and the Shetland Isles, and export large quantities of eider-down.

The foreign possessions of Denmark are the islands of *St Thomas*, *St John*, and *Santa Cruz*, in the West Indies, and *Greenland*, in the Arctic Ocean.

The government is a limited monarchy, and the established religion the Lutheran. Education is carefully provided for.

*Copenhagen* (181,000), the capital, is situated on the east coast of the Island of Zealand, and possesses a fine harbor. It contains a university, and some fine palaces and buildings. It was bombarded by Lord Nelson in 1801, and again in 1807, when the Danish fleet was taken to England. *Elsinore* is situated on the east coast of the Island of Zealand, at the narrowest part of the Sound, the passage of which is commanded by the Castle of Kronborg. All vessels entering the Baltic formerly had to pay dues to Denmark at Elsinore. *Aalborg* and *Aarhus* are seaports.

What is the area of Denmark? climate and soil. What is said of Population? Size? Capital? What does the maritime enterprise of the does Denmark comprise? How is it bounded? Point out its boundaries on the map. What part of Denmark is now held by Germany? Which are the principal islands? What channels are between the islands and mainland? Describe the surface of Denmark. Trace the principal river on the map, and describe it. Describe the

#### GERMANY.

Area, 206,500 square miles; population, 41,000,000; nearly as large as Quebec.

GERMANY is bounded on the North by the Baltic Sea, Denmark, and the North Sea; on the West by Holland, Belgium, and France; on the South by Switzerland; on the South and South-East by the Austrian Empire; and on the East by Russia.

The territory of Germany comprises a large part of Central Europe, and was formerly composed of a number of independent states, with their own rulers and separate constitutions.

Before the Prusso-Austrian war of 1866, Austria was included in the German Confederation; but since then she has been excluded, and the remaining states, which are 26 in number, were united under one general government, with William King of Prussia as the first emperor, after the successful termination of the war with France (1871).

They are:—

#### IN NORTH GERMANY—

The Kingdoms of Prussia and Saxony.

The Grand Duchies of Oldenburg, Mecklenburg-Schwerin, Mecklenburg-Strelitz, Saxe-Weimar.

The Principalities of Lippe-Detmold, Lippe-Schaumburg, Schwartzburg, Rudolstadt, Schwartzburg-Sonderhausen, Reuss-Schleitz, Waldeck.

The Duchies of Brunswick, Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, Saxe-Meiningen, Saxe-Altenburg, Anhalt.

The Free Cities of Hamburg, Lübeck, and Bremen.

#### IN SOUTH GERMANY—

The Kingdoms of Bavaria and Würtemberg.

The Grand Duchies of Baden and Hesse-Darmstadt.

The Principalities of Reuss-Greiz and Lichtenstein.

The Empire Province of Alsace-Lorraine, and the Prussian Province of Hohenzollern.

Saxony and the South German States still retain their own sovereigns, and all have their Representative Assemblies, but with limited powers, and are nominally independent; but Prussia controls the military forces of the Confederation, and virtually rules the whole. The Federal Parliament meets at Berlin. Many of the States are small, and of little consequence.

The *Sudetic* chain of mountains, stretching from the borders of Westphalia to the Carpathian Mountains in Austria, separates Germany into two parts—Northern or Lower Germany, forming part of the great plain formerly mentioned (page 44); and Southern or Upper Germany, diversified by mountains and plains. This chain is called by various names—as the *Hartz Mountains* in Hanover, the *Erz Gebirge* between Saxony and Bohemia, and *Rieser Gebirge* between Prussia and Bohemia. These, with the *Bohemian Forest*, extending south-east from the southern extremity of the *Erz Mountains*, and the *Moravian Mountains*, enclose Bohemia on all sides. From the junction of the *Erz Mountains* and the *Bohemian Forest* the chain extends to the *Hartz Mountains*, and another smaller chain traverses the tablelands of Bavaria, terminating in the *Black Forest* on the east bank of the Rhine. The highest summits are about 5000 feet high. In the south are the *Rhaetian* or *Tyrolese Alps* (see page 61).

The principal rivers are—the *Danube*, rising in the *Black Forest*, and flowing east into the *Black Sea*; the *Rhine*, *Weser*, and *Elbe*, flowing north into the *North Sea*; and the *Oder* and *Vistula*, flowing into the *Baltic Sea*.

Germany possesses but little sea-coast; and it is probably owing to this that its commercial advantages have been but little improved compared with what they might be.

The climate of Germany is temperate; but, being inland, it is more subject to extremes of heat and cold than other countries in the same latitude.

The soil in the north and north-east is sandy and marshy, with numerous small lakes; but in the south and west it is very fertile, yielding vast quantities of grain for export. The *Rhine* wines are celebrated; the vineyards on its hilly banks are very picturesque, and the scenery attracts large numbers of tourists. Vast forests still cover large tracts of the country, as the *Black Forest*, *Bohemian Forest*, and others.

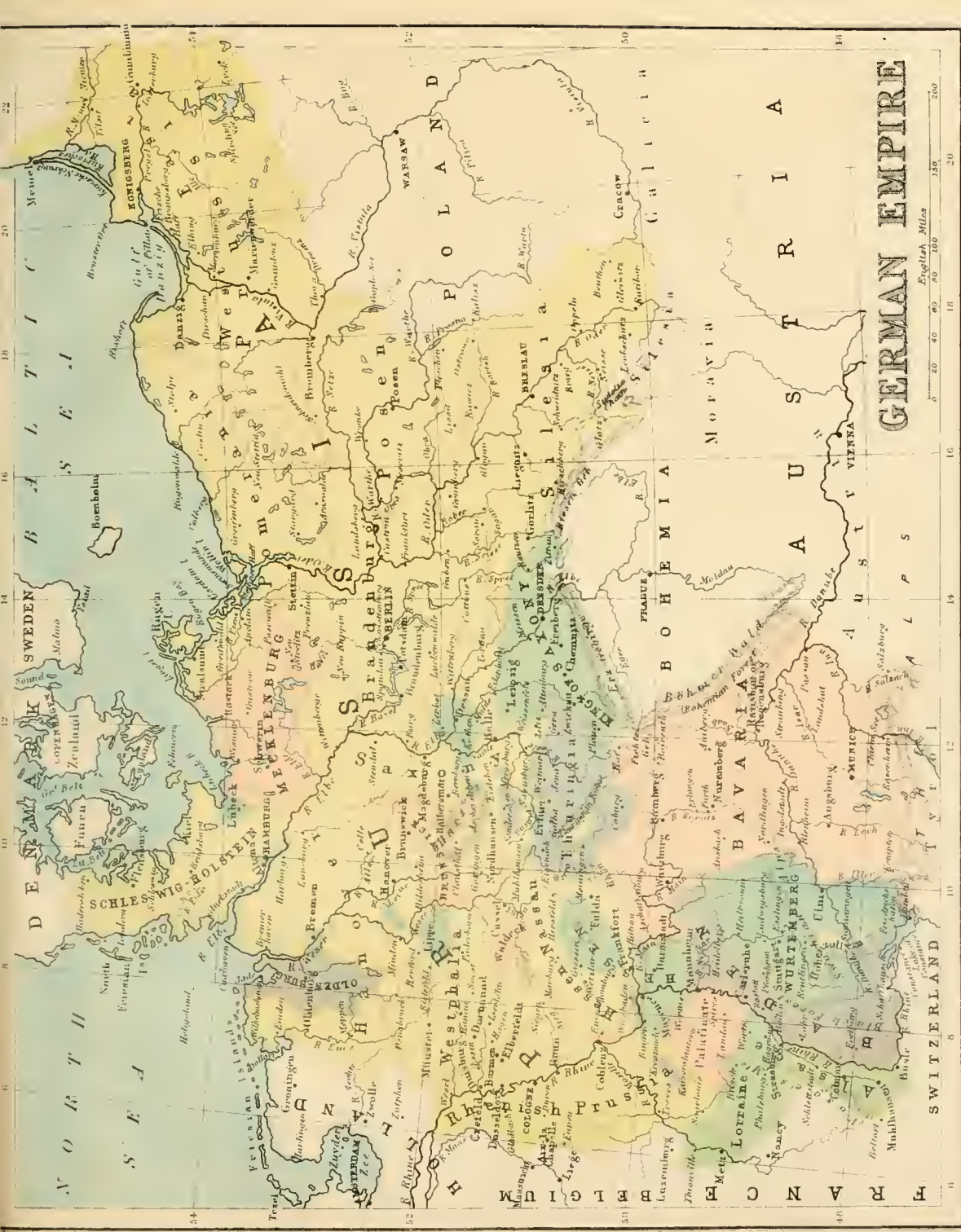
Germany is rich in minerals. In the *Hartz* and *Erz Mountains* are found lead, iron, copper, tin, and other metals. Bavaria is celebrated for its mines of rock-salt, and coal is found in various localities.

The Germans are industrious, and carry on large manufactures; but labor is very poorly paid. Education, especially in Prussia, is carefully attended to, and attendance at school is

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—GERMAN EMPIRE.—Which countries of Germany are in the north? Which in the south? How is Germany separated from France? What large river flows through Germany into the *Black Sea*? Through what countries does it flow? What rivers

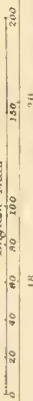
flow northwards? Which is the largest country in Germany? Which next? How is Munich situated? What large cities are on the *Rhine*? How is Hamburg situated? What large cities are on the *Elbe*? How is Bremen situated? Lübeck? Schleswig-Holstein, and Lauenburg?





# GERMAN EMPIRE

English Miles



Published 1871





made compulsory, non-attendance being punished by a fine against the parents. In the north the religion is chiefly Protestant, and in the south Roman Catholic.

The Federal Government consists of the Emperor, a Federal Council of 58 members, and an Assembly of about 400 members, or 1 for each 100,000 inhabitants. All questions of war, peace, diplomacy, and commerce are in the hands of the Emperor, but each State controls its own local affairs.

SAXONY is situated between Prussia, Austria, and Bavaria. *Dresden* (177,000), its capital, is a handsome city, the centre of the arts and literary institutions of Northern Germany. It has a celebrated museum, library, and gallery of pictures. At *Meissen*, 15 miles from Dresden, the celebrated Dresden china is manufactured. *Leipsic* (107,000) is distinguished for its book-fairs, its university, and the defeat of Napoleon in 1813.

In BRUNSWICK and SAXE-COBURG-GOTHA, between Saxony and the former kingdom of Hanover, are situated respectively the cities of *Brunswick* and *Coburg*.

In MECKLENBURG-SCHWERIN, between Holstein and Pomerania, is *Rostock*. It has a large library and university, once belonged to the Hanseatic League, and is still an important seaport.

OLDENBURG, with its capital Oldenburg, is in the west of Hanover.

In SAXE-WEIMAR, west of Saxony, is *Weimar*, celebrated as having once been the residence of Goethe, Schiller, and other literary geniuses at the court of the Grand Duke.

*Hamburg* (304,000), on the Elbe, is the principal seaport, and most important commercial city of Germany. *Bremen* (82,000), on the Weser, is the principal port for foreign commerce. *Lübeck* (39,000) is an important seaport on the Trave, near the Baltic. These free cities belonged to the old Hanseatic League.

In BAVARIA, which lies west of the Austrian Empire, is *Munich* (170,000), the capital, on the Isar, a tributary of the Danube. It is a large and beautiful city, with celebrated galleries of painting and sculpture, and literary institutions. *Augsburg*, where the Protestant Confession of Faith was presented to Charles V., and *Ratisbon*, are important towns. *Nuremberg* and *Bamberg* are manufacturing towns.

In WÜRTTEMBERG, which is west of Bavaria, *Stuttgart* (84,000), the capital, is near the Neckar.

In BADEN, west of Württemberg to the Rhine, is *Karlsruhe*, the capital, a beautiful city. *Heidelberg* is renowned for its university. *Baden* is a fashionable watering-place. *Mannheim*, at the confluence of the Neckar and Rhine, has a large trade.

HESSÉ-DARMSTADT lies north of Baden. *Darmstadt* is the capital. At *Worms*, Luther appeared before the Diet.

ALSACE, chief city *Strasbourg*, and LORRAINE, chief city *Metz*, were wrested from France in the war of 1871.

What is the area of Germany? Population? Size? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. What does it comprise? What is said of its condition before and since 1866? How is it divided? Describe the mountains of Germany. Trace them on the map. Name the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. What states do they flow through? What is said of the sea-coast? Of the climate? Of the soil and products? Of the minerals? Of the people, education, and religion? Describe the positions of the principal states. Point them out on the map. Describe the principal cities. In what state is each? How are they situated? Point them out on the map.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—GERMAN EMPIRE.—What states are comprised in Prussia? What countries adjoin Prussia? What large cities belonging to Prussia are on the Baltic? On the Rhine? On the Elbe? What river and mountains separate

## PRUSSIA.

Area, 137,000 square miles; population, 24,700,000; persons to a square mile, 180; one-third smaller than the province of Quebec.

Capital, *BERLIN*.

PRUSSIA is the first country in Germany for size, population, and importance, and is bounded on the North by the Baltic Sea, Mecklenburg, Denmark, and the North Sea; on the West by Holland, Belgium, and France; on the South by some of the smaller German States and Austria; and on the East by Russia.

By the wars of 1864-66, Prussia added to her nine provinces the Duchies of Schleswig-Holstein and Lauenburg, the kingdom of Hanover, the Electorate of Hesse-Cassel, the Duchy of Nassau, parts of Bavaria and Hesse-Darmstadt, and the free city of Frankfurt, thus consolidating her territory, which was formerly scattered and isolated.

The surface is in general flat, sloping towards the north. In the south are the *Hartz*, *Riesens Gebirge*, and *Sudetic* chains of mountains; in the north-east it is covered to a great extent with vast sandy and marshy tracts, and numerous small shallow lakes. The rivers are slow and favorable for navigation. The principal are—the *Rhine* and *Elbe*, flowing into the North Sea, and the *Oder*, *Vistula*, and *Niemen*, flowing into the Baltic Sea. None of these rise in Prussia.

The sea-coast of Prussia is on the Baltic, with a small portion on the North Sea. Opposite the mouths of the rivers, long sand-banks or islands nearly enclose the Gulfs called the *Stettiner Hafl*, *Frische Hafl*, and *Curische Hafl*.

The climate in the east and north is subject to extremes, but in the western provinces it is milder and more favorable to agriculture. The soil in the west and south is fertile, and all the ordinary grains are raised in sufficient quantities for exportation. The vineyards of the Rhine are celebrated, and tobacco is grown in the south.

Prussia is not rich in minerals, but iron, copper, lead, and coal are found in the mountain ranges. Amber is found on the shores of the Baltic.

The commerce of Prussia is large, being principally carried on through the Baltic ports, and is greatly aided by the rivers and canals. The principal exports are grain, wool, linen, flax, and Rhenish wines. It has also important linen, woollen, cotton, and iron manufactures.

Prussia is one of the five great powers of Europe, and owes its position greatly to the attention paid to its standing army since the time of Frederick the Great.

The form of government is a hereditary constitutional monarchy, with Upper and Lower Houses of Representatives; but the King, who is also Emperor of Germany, still possesses great power. The constitution was granted by Frederick William IV. in 1850.

The royal family, and the greater part of the inhabitants, are Protestants, but all religions are equally tolerated. The system of education is very complete, and every child is required by law to attend school.

*Berlin* (1,000,000), on the Spree, a tributary of the Elbe, is the capital; it is the largest city in Germany, and one of the first

Southern Germany? How is Berlin situated? In what direction from Berlin is Breslau? Cologne? Dantz? Munich? Stuttgart? Dresden? Hamburg? Frankfurt-on-Main? Brussels? (see Europe). Paris? London? Point out the position of Oldenburg. Of Baden.

in Europe; it is celebrated for its university. *Potsdam*, near Berlin, is celebrated for its royal palace of Sans Souci, and is the head-quarters of the Prussian army. *Wiesbaden*, in the former Duchy of Nassau, is famous for its hot-springs. On the Oder are—*Breslau*, (208,000,) the second city in size and importance, with large woollen and linen manufactures; and *Frankfort*, (43,000,) with large manufactures of cloth, and an extensive trade.

On the Elbe are—*Magdeburg*, one of the strongest fortresses in Europe, sacked by Tilly in 1631; *Wittenberg*, where the Reformation began; *Allona*, the capital of Holstein. *Halle*, on the Saale, a tributary of the Elbe, has a celebrated university.

On the Rhine are—*Cologne*, celebrated for its magnificent cathedral, the principal seat of the commerce of the Rhine; *Bonn*, with a university; *Düsseldorf*, an important town and river-port for the cotton and silk manufactures of *Ellerfeld*, *Barmen*, &c.; *Coblenz*, at the junction of the Moselle with the Rhine, with *Ehrenbreitstein*, on the opposite side of the river, one of the strongest fortresses in Europe; *Bingen*, with a large wine trade; and *Mayence*, a strongly fortified town.

*Aix-la-Chapelle*, or Aachen, 30 miles west of Cologne, has famous baths, and is noted for the treaties which have been negotiated there. *Treves*, on the Moselle, is the most ancient town of Germany, with many old Roman remains. *Frankfort-on-the-Main* (90,000) has a large banking business.

The principal seaports are—*Stettin*, at the mouth of the Oder, with grain trade; *Dantzic*, at the mouth of the Vistula, with foreign commerce; *Königsberg*, on the Pregel; *Memel*, at the entrance of the Curische Haff, with exports of grain and timber; *Kiel*, on the Baltic, the capital of the former Duchy of Holstein, with its university, library, observatory, &c.; and *Flensburg*, in Schleswig.

In the former kingdom of Hanover are—*Hanover*, the capital; *Göttingen*, with a university; *Emden*, the chief seaport.

What is the area of Prussia? Population? Size? Capital? How bounded? What did it gain in 1864-66? What is said of its shape, &c.? Describe the surface. The mountains. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Name the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Where do they rise? Describe the

coast-line of Prussia. The gulfs. The climate. The soil and products. The minerals. The commerce and exports. The manufactures. To what does Prussia owe its position? What is said of the government? Of the religion? Of education? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated?

### AUSTRO-HUNGARY.

Area, 227,000 square miles; population, 36,000,000; persons to a square mile, 158; larger than Quebec.

Capital, VIENNA.

The AUSTRO-HUNGARIAN Monarchy is bounded on the North by Russia, Prussia, and Saxony; on the West by Bavaria, Switzerland, and Italy; on the South by Italy, the Adriatic Sea, and Turkey; and on the East by Turkey and Russia.

It is one of the five great Powers, but has, during the last

few years, lost much territory, and much of its former prestige in contests with France, Italy, and Prussia. Although it has, through the influence of its ascendant rival, Prussia, been excluded from all connection with the political division of Europe called Germany, still, as the inhabitants of the western portion of the Empire speak German and are of German descent, it is divided into German, or Cisleithan Austria, or Austria Proper, and Transleithan, or Hungarian Austria.

The German part is mountainous. The Sudetic chain extends along the northern frontier, and Bohemia and Moravia are almost enclosed by mountains, (see page 58.) The Alps, in the south, extend from the Tyrol in two chains, in a north-easterly and south-easterly direction; the *Noric Alps*, towards Vienna; and, farther south, the *Carnic and Julian Alps* extend into Turkey. The *Carpathian Mountains* extend from near Vienna in a circular direction, enclosing Hungary and Transylvania, and separating them from the province of Galicia, and from the Turkish provinces of Moldavia and Wallachia on the east and south. Some of the summits rise to the height of 8000 feet. On the north they are abrupt and precipitous, but on the south they slope more gradually into Hungary, which forms a vast plain, almost surrounded by mountains.

The principal river of Austria is the *Danube*, which flows in an easterly and south-easterly direction through the country, receiving the *Inn*, *Drave*, and *Save* from the Alps, and the *March*, *Waag*, and *Theiss* from the northern mountains. The *Elbe*, *Oder*, and *Vistula* rise in Austria and flow through Prussia into the Baltic Sea. The principal lakes are—the *Neusiedler See* (now drained) and *Balaton Lake*, both in Hungary.

Austria possesses a small portion of coast-line on the Adriatic Sea, less than any of the other great countries of Europe.

The climate, owing to the inland position of the country, is more subject to extremes than in most other countries of Europe in the same latitude. North of the Carpathians it is subject to the greatest extremes, and in Hungary it is warmest; while in the mountain regions it varies according to the elevation.

The soil, especially in the south and east, is fertile, producing corn and wine abundantly. Wheat is largely exported, and Hungary produces the celebrated wine, Tokay. Agriculture forms the chief occupation of the inhabitants, but is not in such an advanced state as in the west of Europe.

The mines of Austria are very valuable, producing almost every metal; iron, copper, and lead are found in great quantities, as well as gold, silver, and quicksilver. The salt mines near Cracow are celebrated, and are probably the largest in the world. Coal is also found in Bohemia.

Commerce, owing to the small extent of the sea-coast, is limited; and manufactures, considering the vast resources of the country, are small. Glass, woollens, and linens in Bohemia, are the principal.

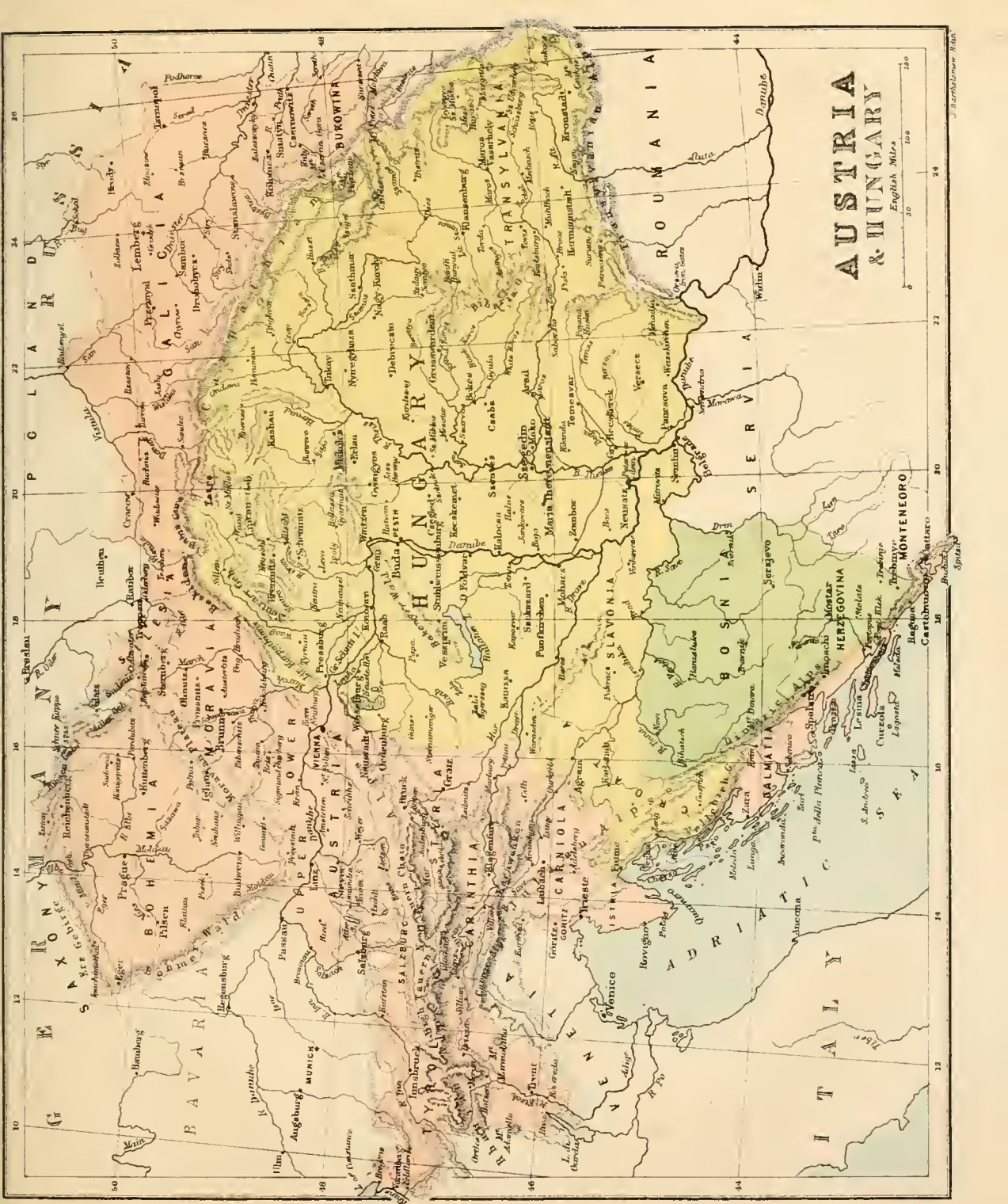
Austria comprises under its Government, nations speaking various languages, and differing in laws, manners, and customs. They are generally Germans in the west, Hungarians in the east, and Slavonians in the north and south. Jews are numerous. The Zingari, or Gipsies, are a wandering race, existing chiefly in the Hungarian and Polish provinces.

A large portion of Northern Italy was formerly under the

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—AUSTRIA.—What countries adjoin Austria? How is it separated from Turkey on the east? On the south? How is it separated from Northern Germany and Poland? How is Vienna situated? What other large cities are on the Danube? How

is Prague situated? What seaport belongs to Austria? On what sea is it? In what direction from Vienna is Pesth? Prague? Trieste? Innsbruck? Cracow? Berlin? Munich? Nuremberg? Paris (see Europe)? London? Where does the Danube leave Austria?







power of Austria; but in the war of 1859 Lombardy was annexed to the kingdom of Italy, and Venetia in 1866.

The military force of Austria is large, being computed, when on the peace footing, at 283,000 men. The revenue of the country is about two-thirds of that of Great Britain.

The form of government is an hereditary monarchy, with the Emperor as head. A Council of the Empire sits at Vienna, and Provincial Diets in the different countries. The Roman Catholic is the prevailing religion, but all are tolerated. Education is carefully provided for by Government.

*Vienna*, (825,000,) the capital of the Empire, is situated on the Danube, and is one of the first cities in Europe for science, literature, and refinement. It is an elegant city, possesses a famous university, and carries on the chief trade of the country. *Prague*, (157,000,) the capital of Bohemia, is the second city of Austria. It has a university, and is celebrated in European history.

In Moravia are the important fortresses *Olmütz*, and *Troppau*; *Brünn*, with large woollen manufactures; and *Austerlitz*, famous for Napoleon's victory in 1805.

In Styria, *Grätz* has large iron manufactures. *Salzburg* is celebrated for its salt manufacture.

In the Tyrol are *Trent*, where the famous Catholic Council was held in 1545; *Innsbruck*, an important town with a university; *Klagenfurt* and *Laybach* are important manufacturing towns.

In Hungary are *Pesth* and *Buda*, on opposite sides of the Danube, forming one city, with a population of 200,000. They are now the capital of Hungary. *Presburg*, also on the Danube, was the former capital. *Kremsnitz* and *Schemnitz* have gold and silver mines. *Tokay*, on the Theiss, is famous for its wines.

*Lemberg* is the capital of Galicia. *Cracow* (50,000) was the former capital of Poland, and has a university and a splendid cathedral, where the Polish kings were crowned, and many of them buried. *Klausenburg*, *Hermannstadt*, and *Kronstadt*, are large and important towns in Transylvania. *Trieste* (70,000), the chief Austrian seaport, and *Fiume*, the seaport for the Hungarian provinces, are both on the Adriatic Sea.

What is the area of Austria? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. What is said of the importance of Austria? What are its divisions? Point them out on the map. Describe the surface of Austria. Describe the principal mountain chains. Trace them on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. What countries do they

flow through? Name the lakes of Austria, and state where they are situated. What is said of the coast-line of Austria? Of the climate? Of the soil and products? Of the mines? Of the manufactures? Of the inhabitants? Of Italy? Of the military power of Austria? Of the government? Religion and education? Describe the chief cities. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map.

### SWITZERLAND.

Area, 15,990 square miles; population, 2,670,000; persons to a square mile, 167; about four-fifths the size of Nova Scotia.

Capital, *BERNE*.

SWITZERLAND is bounded on the North by Germany; on the West by France; on the South by Italy; and on the East by Austria.

It is a Republic, consisting of twenty-two cantons united under one federal government.

It is the most mountainous country in Europe; two-thirds of the surface being covered with mountains, and the remainder consisting of an elevated plain. The Jura Mountains, on the west, separate it from France, and in the south and east are the celebrated Alps. These form several distinct chains, the most southerly being the *Pennine Alps*, extending south-west, and the *Rhetian* or *Tyrolean Alps*, east; a little further north are the *Bernese Alps*, on the west, and the *Helvetian Alps* extending north. In the Pennine Alps are the highest summits, Monte Rosa, 15,200 ft., and the Matterhorn or Mont Cervin, 14,630 ft. In the Bernese Alps the Jungfrau rises 13,700 ft., and Finsteraarhorn 14,100 ft. Mont St Bernard is celebrated for its convent, and sagacious breed of dogs. The Alps are remarkable for their numerous glaciers or vast fields of ice, filling the higher valleys between the mountains; they are estimated at more than 400 in number. These form the sources of many of the large rivers of Europe; the *Rhone* and *Ticino* flowing south; the *Aar*, *Rhine*, and *Inn* flowing north.

Switzerland is also celebrated for its numerous and beautiful lakes, *Geneva*, *Neufchatel*, *Constantine*, *Lucerne*, *Zurich*, &c.

The scenery of Switzerland is most varied and beautiful, and renders it the favorite resort of tourists. Enormous rugged snow-capped mountains, with fearful precipices, glaciers, avalanches, and dashing waterfalls, form a striking contrast to the peaceful scenes in the valleys, with their picturesque chalets, waving fields of grain, orchards ripening under a southern sun, and the deep clear lakes almost hidden by the mountains.

The soil of Switzerland varies greatly with the locality, and wherever it is possible, it is industriously cultivated. The valleys yield grain, wine, and various fruits, and the mountains give pasturage to vast herds of cattle and goats. The manufactures are chiefly cottons, woollens, and watches.

The Swiss are a brave, industrious, and frugal people, and are celebrated for their love of liberty. They speak the French, Italian, or German language, according to the country they border upon. Three-fifths of the population are Protestants, and the remainder Roman Catholics.

*Berne*, (36,000,) on the Aar, the chief town of the largest canton, is also the seat of the Federal Diet. *Geneva*, (47,000,) is beautifully situated on the lake of the same name, and has important manufactures of watches and jewellery. *Basle* and *Schaffhausen* on the Rhine, and *Zurich* on the lake of the same name, carry on the principal commerce. *St Gall* is a manufacturing town. *Neufchatel* has clock and watch manufactures. *Lucerne* is beautifully situated on the lake of that name, and near it are most of the scenes rendered famous by William Tell's exploits.

What is the area of Switzerland? Population? Size? Capital? How is Switzerland bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. Of what is it composed? Describe the surface. The principal mountain chains. Trace them on the map. Name the highest mountains. For what are the Alps remarkable? Name the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Name the principal lakes. Where are they situated? Describe the scenery of Switzerland. The soil and products. The people—their language and religion. Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated?

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—AUSTRIA.—Point out and give the boundaries of Bohemia. Of Moravia. Of Transylvania. Of the Tyrol. Of Vorarlberg. Of Galicia. Is there any other province of Galicia? What country adjoins Switzerland on the west? On the

north? On the south? What large towns are on the Rhine? How is Zurich situated? Lucerne? Geneva? (see France). In what direction is Geneva from Paris? (see Europe). Berne from Strasburg? Berne from London?



## ITALY.

Area, 113,000 square miles; population, 26,700,000; persons to a square mile, 236; rather more than half the size of the province of Quebec.

Capital, *Rome*.

ITALY is bounded on the North by Austria and Switzerland; on the West by France and the Mediterranean; on the South by the Mediterranean; and on the East by the Adriatic Sea and Austria.

Prior to the year 1859, it comprised eight separate states, some independent, and others under the power of Austria, but is now united into a single independent state, the Kingdom of Italy.

The Kingdom of Italy comprises Piedmont and Lombardo-Venetia, the former Duchies of Tuscany, Lucca, Parma, and Modena, the Island of Sardinia, the Papal States, and the Kingdom of Naples, including the Island of Sicily. The kingdom has only been formed since the war and revolutions of 1859-60, when France and Sardinia defeated the Austrians and gained Lombardy. Garibaldi gained Naples and Sicily, and the other states voluntarily annexed themselves to Sardinia; Victor Emmanuel, King of Sardinia, becoming the first King of Italy. Savoy and Nice, formerly belonging to Sardinia, were at the same time ceded to France. In 1866, Austria was compelled, after a short war, to cede Venetia to the new kingdom. Rome was acquired in 1870.

Italy is a long, narrow peninsula, much resembling a boot in shape. Its surface is much diversified, presenting every variety of rich and varied landscape. The Alps curve round it on the north and north-west, and the Apennines extend from the Maritime Alps, the southern extremity of the Pennine Alps, through the entire length of the peninsula, rising in the south to the height of about 10,000 feet. These mountain chains divide the country into three parts; the large fertile plains of Piedmont and Lombardy in the north, between the Alps and Apennines; and the eastern and western slopes from the Apennines to the sea.

Italy is well watered by rivers, and their basins are remarkably fertile. The principal are the *Po*, with its tributary the *Ticino*, and the *Adige*, flowing into the Adriatic through the northern plains; the *Arno* and *Tiber*, flowing west into the Mediterranean. North of the *Po* at the foot of the Alps, are the beautiful *Lakes Como, Lugano, Maggiore, Gardi, &c.*

The coast is irregular, and indented with many fine gulfs and bays, of which the principal are the *Gulfs of Genoa and Gaeta, Bay of Naples, and Gulf of Salerno*, on the west coast;

the *Gulf of Taranto* on the south; and the *Gulf of Venice* on the east, at the head of the Adriatic Sea. The principal capes are *Passaro*, on the south of Sicily, and *Spartivento and Leuca*, the southern points of the mainland. The *Strait of Messina* separates Sicily from Calabria, and the *Strait of Bonifacio* is between the islands of Sardinia and Corsica.

The islands belonging to Italy are—*Sardinia*, separated from *Corsica*, which belongs to France, by the Strait of Bonifacio, and intersected by a range of mountains. The inhabitants are chiefly agricultural, and have also important fisheries of anchovy, tunny, and sardines. *Sicily*, the largest and most fertile island in the Mediterranean, separated from the mainland by the Strait of Messina. In the east is *Mount Etna*, the largest European volcano, nearly 11,000 feet high. *Elba*, on the west coast of Italy, between Corsica and the mainland, the first place of banishment of Napoleon. The *Lipari Islands*, north of Sicily, with *Stromboli*, called the Lighthouse of the Mediterranean, from the volcano it contains, which is always burning.

The climate of Italy is delightful, but on the west coast, between the Island of Elba and the Gulf of Gaeta, the heat of summer causes malaria from the marshes, rendering large tracts of the country uninhabitable. These tracts are called the *Marenna, Pontine Marshes*, and the *Campagna*. The soil is very fertile. Rice, wheat, and maize are extensively cultivated, and vines, olives, oranges, and lemons are abundant. Italy possesses few minerals, but is celebrated for its fine marbles and alabaster. Silks are manufactured in the north, and are almost the only manufacture of consequence.

Although till 1859 disunited and unsettled, Italy is famous as having been the seat of the old Roman Empire, the mistress of the world in the early ages, and possesses many interesting classic remains of its former grandeur, forming an ample and interesting study to the traveller and scholar. It was also the seat of several of the most powerful commercial republics of the middle ages, Venice, Genoa, &c., and is still celebrated as being the great centre of the fine arts, painting, sculpture, music, and architecture.

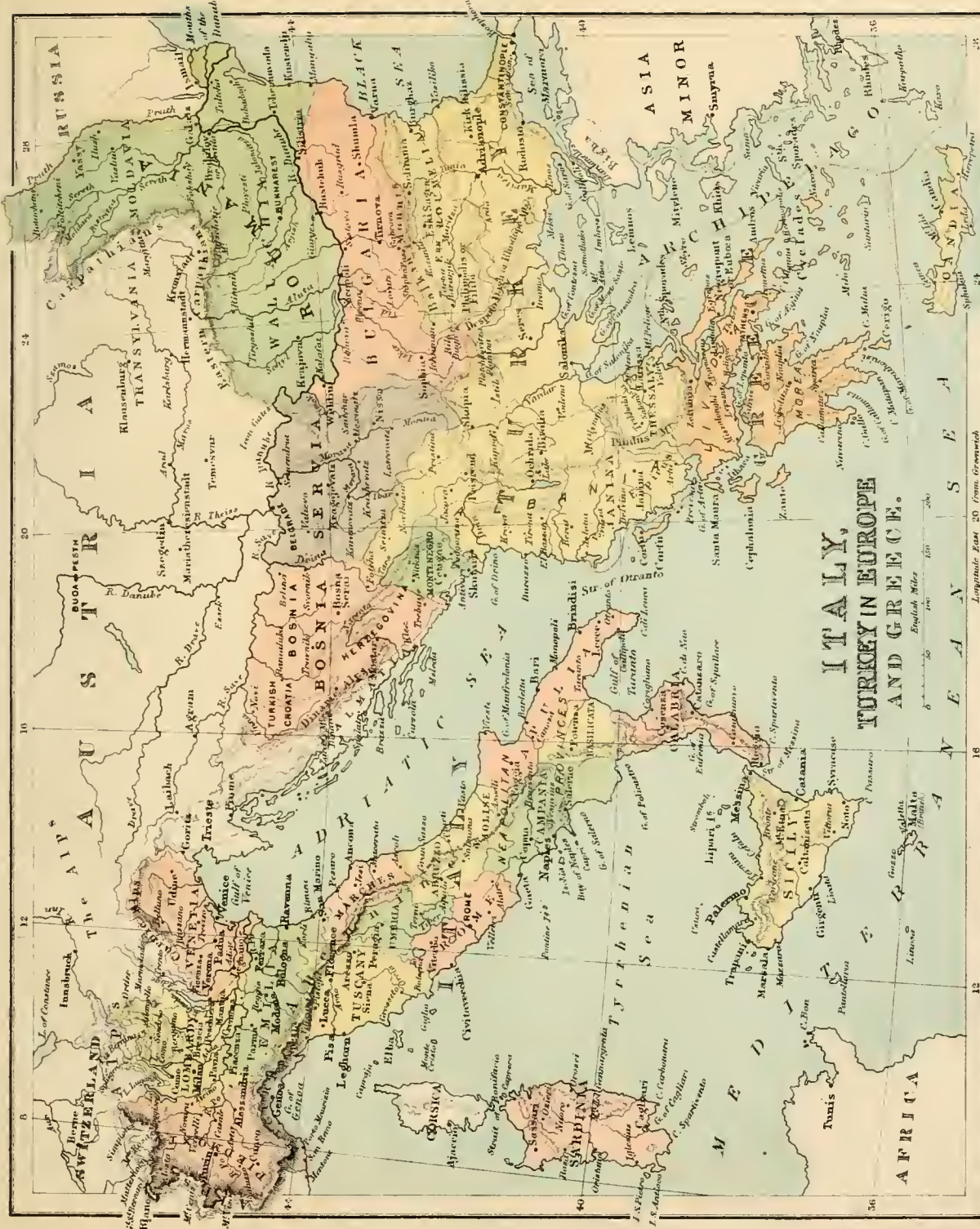
The government is a limited monarchy, and is formed upon the pattern of that of Britain. The Roman Catholic is the established religion, but all others are tolerated. It possesses a great number of large towns, most of them celebrated in history.

In the former Papal States—*Rome* (244,000), the capital, on the Tiber, formerly the mistress of the world, although sadly decayed, possesses magnificent remains of its former grandeur, and is still celebrated for its splendid buildings, and for the architectural beauties of its old ruins. The Pope, although no longer a temporal sovereign, still holds his court in Rome. *Civita Vecchia* is its seaport.

In Piedmont—*Turin* (213,000), formerly the capital of Sardinia, a fine city, with extensive trade, noted for its silk manufactures; *Genoa* (130,000), the chief seaport of Italy, with important manufactures of silks and velvets; formerly the capital of a powerful republic of the same name; *Spezia*,

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—ITALY, &c.—How is Italy separated from France? From Switzerland? From Austria? What sea washes the east coast of Italy? How is this sea connected with the Mediterranean? How is Sicily separated from Italy? Sardinia from Corsica?

How is Rome situated? What famous city is on the Adriatic? Where is Turin situated? Milan? Florence? In what direction from Rome is Naples? Palermo? Venice? Florence? Turin? Paris? (see Europe). London? Berlin? Vienna?



ITALY,  
TURKEY IN EUROPE  
AND GREECE.

Scale in English Miles  
0 10 20 30 40

Longitude East 20 from Greenwich





the chief naval station, with an excellent harbor; and *Alessandria*, a strongly-fortified city, with silk manufactures.

In Lombardy—*Milan* (200,000) is a beautiful city, with a magnificent cathedral of white marble, and large trade; *Bergamo*, *Brescia*, and *Piacenza* are important towns; *Parma* and *Modena*, the former capitals of the duchies of the same name, and *Bologna*, with the oldest university in Italy, are important inland towns. Near Milan is *Magenta*, and near Brescia is *Solferino*, where the Austrians were defeated by the French in 1859.

In Tuscany—*Florence* (167,000), surnamed 'the beautiful,' is a magnificent city, and has long been celebrated as a seat of science and art, and for its splendid galleries of painting and sculpture; it was formerly the head of a republic of the same name; *Pisa*, with its famous leaning tower; and *Leghorn*, an important seaport. *Ancona* is a fortified seaport on the Adriatic, and near it is *Loretto*, with its famous shrine.

In Naples is *Naples* (448,000), the largest city in Italy, surpassing every city in Europe for the beauty of its situation and appearance. The Bay of Naples is celebrated for its scenery. About ten miles from the city is the volcano of Vesuvius, 4000 feet high, near which are the remains of the ancient cities of Herculaneum and Pompeii, which have been buried in lava and ashes since A.D. 79, and are now being excavated. *Gaeta* and *Capua* are near Naples.

In the Island of Sicily are—*Palermo* (220,000), a fine city, with much commerce; *Messina* (111,000), the principal commercial city; *Catania* (84,000), with manufactures of silk; *Syracuse*, famous for its ancient greatness, and memorable in history; and *Marsala*, with its wines. *Cagliari* is the chief port of the Island of Sardinia.

In Venetia—*Venice* (128,000) was long the head of a powerful commercial republic. It is built on a number of islands, canals forming the streets and gondolas the carriages, and contains many fine buildings. *Padua*, with a celebrated university, and *Vicenza* are large and important towns. *Verona*, *Peschiera*, *Mantua*, and *Legnago* form the famous "quadrilateral," or chain of fortresses to repel foreign invasion.

What is the area of Italy? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. Of what is it composed? Describe the surface. The mountain chains. Trace them on the map. How do the mountains divide the country? What is said of the rivers of Italy? Name the principal. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the coast-line. Name the principal gulfs and bays. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal capes and

straits. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate of Italy. Soil and products. Minerals. Manufactures. What is said of Italian associations? How has the kingdom of Italy been formed? What is the form of government? What is said of its present position? Religion, &c.? Describe the chief cities. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated?

The Island of *Malta*, to the south of Sicily, belongs to Britain. *Valletta* is the capital, and is the chief station for the British fleet in the Mediterranean.

Where is Malta situated? Point it out on the map. To whom does it belong? Describe the chief town.

## GREECE.

Area, 20,000 square miles; population, 1,457,000; persons to a square mile, 70; about the same size as Nova Scotia.

Capital, *ATHENS*.

GREECE is bounded on the North by Turkey; on the West and South by the Mediterranean; and on the East by the Archipelago.

The surface consists of a succession of gentle hills and valleys, well adapted for cultivation. In the northern part are the celebrated mountains *Parnassus* and *Helicon*.

There are no rivers of importance in Greece. The country is almost intersected by the *Gulf of Lepanto* on the west, and the *Gulf of Athens* on the east. The southern part is called the *Morea*, or ancient Peloponnesus, and is joined to the mainland by the *Isthmus of Corinth*.

Greece also possesses numerous bays and islands. Of the latter, the principal are the *Ionian Islands* on the west coast, including *Corfu*, *Santa Maura*, *Ithaca*, *Cephalonia*, *Zante*, and *Cerigo*. They were formerly under the protection of Britain, but were given up to Greece in 1863. On the east coast are *Negropont* or *Eubœa*, and the *Cyclades*.

The principal gulfs are—*Lepanto*, *Nauplia*, and *Athens*. The most southerly points of Greece are *Capes Matapan*, *Malio* (or *Malca*), and *Colonna*.

The climate is warm and delightful, and the soil fertile, producing in abundance wine, oil, oranges, lemons, and all southern fruits. The Ionian Isles export large quantities of a small dried grape called currants. Owing to the unsettled state of the country, agriculture is but poorly attended to. Manufactures are few, and the means of internal communication very bad.

Previous to the year 1829, Greece was subject to Turkey. It then achieved its independence, and in 1832 elected *Otho* of Bavaria to be king. He was again expelled in 1862, and in 1863, *George*, the son of the present King of Denmark, was elected in his stead.

Although small in territory, and now of little importance, Greece possesses a great amount of interest on account of the magnificent remains of its ancient monuments, and the remembrance of its former greatness. Almost every spot is classic ground, as the scene of some remarkable event in its ancient history, when it held the first rank among the nations of the world for its military greatness and advancement in the arts and learning.

*Athens* (48,000), the capital, is now a poor city, and is only celebrated for its former greatness and the remains of its ancient magnificence. *Nauplia* (7000), at the head of the gulf of the same name, possesses a fine harbor and fortress, and is a considerable seaport. *Navarino*, in the south-west, is memorable for the destruction of the Turkish navy in 1827 by the combined fleets of England, France, and Russia. *Corinth* and *Sparta*, both in the *Morea*, were once renowned cities. *Tripolizza* was for-

large island lies to the south-east of Greece? From what country does the Archipelago separate Greece? How is Athens situated? Sparta? Corinth? Corfu? Draw, as well as you can, a map of Greece, showing its shape, principal capes, islands, &c.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—ITALY AND TURKEY.—What country does the Strait of Otranto separate Italy from? What is the northern part of the Adriatic called? Name the principal seaports of Italy on the Mediterranean. What country adjoins Greece on the north? What

merly the residence of the Turkish Pacha, and the capital of the Morea, but was destroyed by the Turks. *Corfu* (25,000), in the island of the same name, is the capital of the Ionian Islands, and is beautifully situated and strongly fortified. *Zante* (20,000), in the island of the same name, makes large exports of currants.

What is the area of Greece? Population? Size? Capital? How is Greece bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. Describe the surface. What celebrated mountains are in Greece, and where are they situated? Describe the outline of Greece. Point out the principal features on the map. What islands belong to Greece? Where are they situated? Point them out on the map. Name the principal gulfs and capes. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the climate. The soil and products. Exports. Industry and manufactures. What is said of the political history of Greece? For what is Greece interesting? Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map.

#### TURKEY IN EUROPE. ○

Area, 203,600 square miles; population, 16,000,000; persons to a square mile, 78; nearly the size of Quebec.

Capital, CONSTANTINOPLE.

TURKEY, or the Ottoman Empire, comprises possessions in Europe, Asia, and Africa. European Turkey is bounded on the North by Russia and Austria; on the West by Austria and the Adriatic Sea; on the South by Greece, the Archipelago, and the Sea of Marmora; and on the East by the Black Sea and Russia. Moldavia, Wallachia, Servia, and Montenegro, although in reality independent, are nominally Turkish provinces under the protectorate of Russia and Austria.

Turkey is a mountainous country, although diversified with rich and fertile valleys and extensive plains. The principal mountains are the *Balkan*, extending from east to west through the centre of the country. From the west end of that range the *Dinaric Alps* extend north-west, and the *Pindus Mountains* south; and from about the middle of the same range, the *Despoto* or *Rhodope Mountains* stretch south-east, and another chain north-west, to the Carpathians, meeting them at the Iron Gate on the Danube. The Pindus range extends into Greece, and contains the celebrated mountains *Ossa*, *Pelion*, and *Olympus* in Thessaly.

The great river of Turkey is the *Danube*, flowing into the Black Sea, with its tributaries the *Sava* and *Morava* on the south bank, and the *Sereth* and *Pruth* on the north bank. The *Maritza* and *Nardar* flow south into the Archipelago; the *Vale of Tempe* is near the mouth of the *Salambria*, a small river flowing through Thessaly.

The principal lakes are *Scutari* and *Ochrida*, in the west.

The chief features of the coast are the *Gulfs of Saloniki*, *Contessa*, and *Saros*, in the south; and the *Sea of Marmora*, connected with the Archipelago by the *Dardanelles*, and with the Black Sea by the *Bosphorus*.

Most of the European islands in the Archipelago belong to Greece, but Turkey possesses *Candia*, (the ancient *Crete*), *Lemnos*, &c., besides a number of others more generally considered as belonging to Asia.

The climate is warm and delightful, especially south of the *Balkan Mountains*. The soil is excellent; but owing to the bad government of the country, agriculture is very backward, and more attention is given to pasturage. The products are chiefly grain in the north, and wine, olives, cotton, tobacco, and fruit in the south.

Commerce and manufactures are chiefly in the hands of foreigners, being despised by the Turks themselves.

The government is a despotism, the Sultan being the head of the state, with the Grand Vizier as prime minister, and Pachas as governors of the provinces. There is no aristocracy, all preferment depending on the will of the Sultan. Only about 2,000,000 of the whole population are Turks, though about 4,500,000 are Mohammedans; the remainder consists of a mixture of the Greek, Bulgarian, and Slavonic races, belonging to the Greek Church. The late war between Turkey and its allies and Russia arose from the pretensions of the Czar of Russia, the head of the Greek Church, to a protectorate over the inhabitants of Turkey belonging to that Church. The Turks are very ignorant, education with them being simply the reading of the Koran, which may be said to constitute their religion, laws, and literature. Some reforms have, however, been lately introduced.

*Constantinople* (500,000), the capital, one of the largest cities in Europe, is beautifully situated on the Bosphorus, or Strait of Constantinople, and possesses a magnificent harbor, called the "Golden Horn." The city presents a splendid appearance from the water, owing to its numerous mosques, glittering domes, and graceful minarets; but the interior is poorly built, and dirty. The houses are in general built of wood, and the streets are narrow. Constantinople was formerly the capital of the eastern division of the Roman Empire, but was taken by the Turks in 1453. *Adrianople*, (150,000,) on the *Maritza*, is the second city in importance, and was formerly the capital of the Ottoman Empire. *Gallipoli*, on the *Dardanelles*, and *Saloniki*, (the ancient Thessalonica,) are important seaports. *Sophia* is a large and important city in Bulgaria. *Shumla* is strongly fortified, and *Varna*, a fortified seaport on the Black Sea, near which the allied French and English armies were encamped before proceeding to the Crimea in 1854. *Belgrade*, *Widdin*, *Rustchuk*, and *Silistria*, are strongly fortified cities on the Danube. *Bosna Serai* is the chief town of Bosnia. *Bucharest*, (140,000,) the capital of Wallachia, is a large and important city. *Ibrail* or *Brailor*, and *Galatz*, export large quantities of grain. *Jassy* (70,000) is the capital of Moldavia.

What is the area of Turkey? Population? Size? Capital? What does Turkey comprise? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. What provinces belong to Turkey? Where are they situated? Describe the surface of Turkey. The principal mountain chains. Trace them on the map. Describe the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. What are the principal lakes? Where are they situated? Describe the chief features of the coast. Where are they situated? What islands belong to Turkey? Where are they situated? Describe the climate. The soil and products. What is said of commerce? Of the government? Of the people? Of the religion? Of the late war? Of the state of education, &c. Describe the chief towns. Where are they situated? Point them out on the map.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—ITALY AND TURKEY.—What countries adjoin Turkey on the north? On the south? How is Turkey in Europe separated from Turkey in Asia? How is Turkey separated from Austria? From Italy? How is Constantinople situated? What large cities are

on the Danube? In what direction from Constantinople is Athens? Rome? How are Wallachia and Moldavia separated from the rest of Turkey? Point out Varna? Silistria? Belgrade? What would you call the portion of land about the mouth of the Danube?







## ASIA.

Area, about 17,140,000 square miles, about one-third of the land surface of the globe; greatest extent from east to west, 6200 miles, and from north to south, 5300 miles; population, about 800,000,000.

ASIA is bounded on the North by the Arctic Ocean; on the West by the Ural Mountains, Ural River, Caspian Sea, Mount Caucasus, Black Sea, Sea of Marmora, Mediterranean, and the Red Sea; on the South by the Indian Ocean; and on the East by the Pacific Ocean.

It is the largest and most populous of the great divisions of the globe, and is particularly interesting as having been the first abode of man, and the scene of most of the important events recorded in the Holy Scriptures.

Its great physical features are also as remarkable as its extent, the rivers being of great length, and only equalled by some of the largest in America; while its mountains are the highest in the world, and its high table-lands are nowhere equalled for their vast extent or height above the sea.

The two great chains of the *Himalaya* and *Altai Mountains*, extending across the broadest part of the continent from west to east, under various names, form the most striking feature of the continent, and divide it into three regions,—viz., a great northern plain, sloping towards the Arctic Ocean, through which the *Obi*, *Yenisei*, and *Lena* Rivers flow; a central mountainous region, which is subdivided by other mountain chains; and a southern slope towards the Indian Ocean, divided into three great peninsulas. Between the two great ranges the slope is eastward, and this vast valley contains the minor parallel chains of the *Thian Shan* and *Kuenlun*, and the mountains of China, forming the basins of the great rivers *Amoor*, *Hoang-ho*, and *Yan-tse-kiang*; a smaller western slope is shown by the course of the *Amoo* and *Sir*, flowing into the Sea of Aral. From the Himalayas and their continuations southwards, is a southern slope, as shown by the courses of the rivers *Mekong* or *Camboja*, *Saluen*, *Irrawady*, and others in Farther India; the *Ganges*, *Brahmapootra*, and *Indus*, in Hindostan; and the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* in Asiatic Turkey.

Besides the great chains already mentioned are the *Hindoo Koosh*, extending south-west from the western end of the Himalayas, and separated from them by the valley of the *Indus*; the *Pamir*, stretching north from the eastern extremity of the *Hindoo Koosh*, and forming the dividing line between the eastern and western slopes of the central region; the *Elburz* range, extending from the *Hindoo Koosh* to the southern extremity of the *Caspian Sea*; the mountains of *Armenia*, in which is the celebrated *Mount Ararat*; the parallel chains of the *Taurus* and *Anti-Taurus Mountains*, in *Asia Minor*; and from the eastern extremity of the *Taurus* range, the mountains of *Lebanon* extend southwards along the coast of the Mediterranean, and are continued by smaller chains to the *Sinaitic Mountains*, at the head of the *Red Sea*.

The Himalayas are the highest mountains of Asia and of

the world, about fifty of their peaks rising over 20,000 feet in height. *Mount Everest* is 29,000 feet and *Kinchinjunga*, 28,000 feet high. The *Hindoo Koosh Mountains* do not exceed 23,000 feet, the *Caucasus* 18,500 feet, the *Elburz* range 18,500 feet, and the other ranges generally from 5000 to 10,000 feet in height.

The principal rivers of Asia already mentioned, although of great length and volume, are of much less importance than those of America, as they are of comparatively little use for navigation, owing to the height of their sources, and the mountainous nature of the regions through which they flow. Those of *Siberia*, moreover, are inaccessible, since they flow into the Arctic Ocean. All are valuable, however, for irrigation and agricultural purposes.

The table-lands of Asia are of great extent, and occupy a large portion of the continent, extending from the Mediterranean Sea to the Sea of Japan, a distance of upwards of 5000 miles, and varying from 400 to 2000 miles in breadth. The largest and most elevated is the great central plateau between the *Altai* and *Himalaya Mountains*, including the *Desert of Gobi* or *Shamo*, from 4000 to 10,000 feet high. West of it are the *Desert of Iran*, in *Persia* and *Afghanistan*, and the table-lands of *Armenia*, *Asia Minor*, and *Arabia*.

#### The principal Lakes are:—

*Baikal* and *Balkash*, in *Siberia*, the inland salt lakes, the *Sea of Aral*, and the *Dead Sea*, in *Syria*, besides the *Caspian Sea*.

Like Europe, the outline or coast-line of Asia is much broken, and has many islands, seas, gulfs, bays, and straits.

#### The principal Peninsulas are:—

*Asia Minor*, on the west; *Arabia*, and *Annam*, on the south; and *Hindostan*, *Malaya* or *Malacca*, *Corea* and *Kamschatka*, on the east.

#### The principal Islands are:—

*Cyprus*, in the Levant or eastern end of the Mediterranean; *Ceylon*, the *Laccadive*, *Maldivæ*, *Andaman*, and *Nicobar Islands*, in the Indian Ocean; *Sumatra*, *Java*, *Borneo*, *Celebes*, the *Moluccas* or *Spice Islands*, and *Philippines*, in the Eastern Archipelago; and *Hainan*, *Formosa*, *Loo Choo Islands*, the *Japan Islands*, *Saghalien*, *Kurile*, and *Alutian Islands*, in the Pacific.

#### The principal Seas and Gulfs are:—

The *Levant*, *Red Sea*, *Arabian Sea*, *Persian Gulf*, *Gulfs of Cutch* and *Cambay*, *Bay of Bengal* and *Gulf of Martaban*, *China Sea* and *Gulfs of Siam* and *Tonquin*, *Yellow Sea*, *Gulf of Pechele*, *Japan Sea*, and *Sea of Okotsk*.

#### The principal Straits are:—

*Babelmandeb*, *Ormuz*, *Gulf of Manaar*, and *Palk Strait*, *Straits of Malacca* and *Corea*, *Tartary*, and *Behring Strait*.

#### The principal Capes are:—

*Baba*, the most westerly point of *Turkey* in *Asia*, *Ras al Had*, *Comorin*, *Romania*, *Camboja*, *Lopatka*, *East Cape*, and *North-East Cape*.

The climate of Asia is, in general, warmer than that of North America in the same latitude; but the high table-lands are subject to violent extremes. In the north it is excessively cold; in the middle it is dry, and almost rainless: and in the

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—ASIA.—What oceans wash the shores of Asia? How is Asia separated from Europe? From Africa? From America (see Hemisphere)? By what isthmus is Asia joined to Africa? What oceans wash the shores of Asia? What five seas are on the

east? What seas and bays are on the south? What countries are in the south? In the east? In the north? In the west? In the interior? What large islands are off the east coast? Off the south-east? In what direction do the mountain chains principally extend?



south hot. In the east it is more moist than in the west ; in the south the seasons are divided into wet and dry, and their changes are accompanied by a change in the winds, called the monsoons, or season winds.

The northern plain of the continent is a treeless desert, except in the south and east, where it is more wooded. The plateaux of the central region are generally sandy, or covered with grass, and admirably adapted for pasture: but little grain is grown on them. On the southern slope of the Himalayas vegetation becomes most luxuriant, producing the plants and grains of all the zones, according to the elevation. China is famous for its tea and rice: in the southern part of the continent, and in the islands, coffee, cotton, rice, ginger, pepper, and spices are produced in great abundance ; while the forests furnish palm, teak, sandalwood, gamboge, and caoutchouc trees. Jungles cover a large part of the country in the south and south-east, affording refuge to the lion, tiger, leopard, elephant, and great numbers of large and venomous serpents and reptiles. In the north are found the bear, wolf, reindeer, ermine, marten, and many other fur-bearing animals ; horses, camels, and dromedaries abound in the middle region. Iron, tin, copper, coal, and other minerals are found in various parts, but are little worked. Precious stones are found in India. Manufactures are not numerous, the principal being silks, cottons, Cashmere shawls, porcelain, and small carved articles of ivory and wood.

The most densely peopled parts of Asia are China and Hindustan. The inhabitants of Asia are generally of the Caucasian race in the south-west ; Mongolians in the middle and east ; and Malays in Malacca and the East India Islands. They are almost all either heathens, professing the worship of Brahma or Buddha in the south, and the system of Confucius in China ; or Mohammedans in the west, which is the centre and cradle of Mohammedanism. There are some Christian sects in Syria and Armenia, and the Russian colonists of Siberia belong to the Greek Church, but neither are numerous.

#### The Countries of Asia are :—

TURKEY IN ASIA.

ARABIA.

PERSIA.

AFGHANISTAN.

BELOOCHISTAN OF BALUCHISTAN.

INDIA OF HINDOOSTAN.

EASTERN PENINSULA, comprising

BURMAH, SIAM, ANNAM, &c.

The islands of Asia are generally considered as forming part of Oceania, the fifth great division of the earth.

What is the area of Asia? The extent? Population? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. For what is Asia interesting? What is said of its physical features? What great mountain chains intersect the country? How do they divide it? Point out the divisions on the map. Describe them. Trace the mountains and rivers on the map. Describe the other mountain chains. Trace them on the map. What is said of the height of the mountains? What is said of the rivers? What is said of the tablelands? Describe them, and point them out on the map. Name the principal lakes, and point them out on the map. What is said of

CHINESE EMPIRE, including Tibet, MONGOLIA, &c.  
TARTARY OF TURKESTAN (EASTERN and WESTERN).  
RUSSIA IN ASIA.  
JAPAN ISLANDS.

the coast-line of Asia? Name the principal peninsulas. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Name the principal seas and gulfs. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. What is said of the climate of Asia? Of the seasons? Of the soil? Of the productions? Of the animals? Of the minerals? Of the manufactures? Of the inhabitants? Name the countries of Asia. Point them out on the map.

## TURKEY IN ASIA.

Area, about 660,000 square miles; population, 16,000,000; persons to a square mile, 24; more than three times the size of Quebec.

TURKEY IN ASIA is bounded on the North by the Black Sea and Russia ; on the West by the Grecian Archipelago and the Mediterranean Sea ; on the South by Arabia ; and on the East by Persia.

It comprises *Asia Minor*, *Armenia*, *Syria*, (including *Palatine*), *Kurdistan*, the ancient *Assyria*, *Irak-Arabi*, the ancient *Chaldea*, and *Algerias*, the ancient *Mesopotamia*. These countries are all celebrated in the records of the Holy Scriptures, both Old and New, and for that reason form a peculiarly interesting study. It also comprises all the western and part of the eastern divisions of Arabia.

The Islands of *Cyprus* and *Rhodes*, in the Mediterranean, with *Mitylene*, *Scio*, *Samos*, and all the Asiatic Islands of the Grecian Archipelago, belong to Turkey.

What is the area of Turkey in Asia? Population? Size? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. What countries does it comprise? To what ancient countries do they correspond? For what are they celebrated? What islands belong to Turkey? Point them out on the map. Where are they situated?

## ASIA MINOR.

ASIA MINOR comprises the peninsula between the Black Sea and the Mediterranean. The greater part of the country consists of a high plateau, enclosed by the *Taurus Mountains* on the south, and the parallel range of the *Anti-Taurus* on the north, both extending close along the coast. The former are the highest, some of the peaks reaching to 13,000 feet in height.

The rivers, owing to the mountainous nature of the country, are naturally small and rapid, but are numerous, and many of them celebrated in ancient history. The principal are the *Kizil Irmak*, the ancient *Halys*, formerly the boundary between *Lydia* and *Media*; the *Sakaria*, flowing into the Black Sea ; and the *Meander* and *Sarabat*, flowing into the Archipelago. There are several salt lakes in the interior.

The climate on the plains is hot and dry, but healthy, and in the mountain lands cool and pleasant. The soil is fruitful, especially in the valleys, but much neglected. Grain, tobacco, cotton, and all southern fruits, such as figs, olives, grapes, and pomegranates, grow in abundance. The elevated parts of the country afford excellent pasturage to large flocks and herds of cattle. Along the shore of the Black Sea a dense forest covers the land.

The commerce of the country is chiefly in the hands of the Greeks, Armenians, and Jews. The people are chiefly Mohammedans, but a large number belong to the Greek Church. The population is about eleven millions.

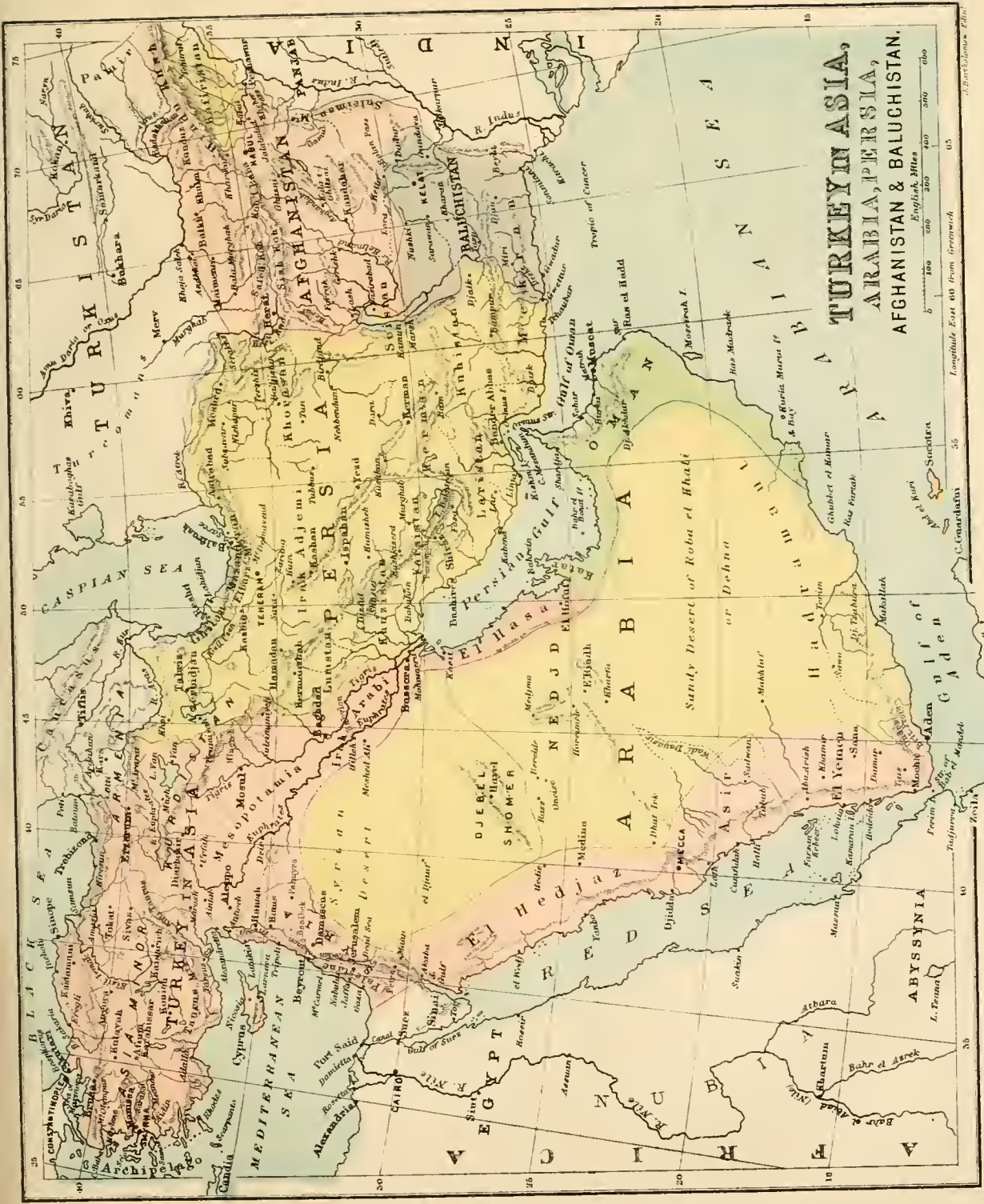
*Smyna* (150,000) is the chief commercial city of Asia Minor, and makes large exports of dried fruits. It is situated on a fine bay, and claims to have been the birthplace of Homer. *Scutari*, opposite Constantinople ; *Brusa*, (73,000,) near the foot of Mount Olympus ; *Kutaya* and *Angora*, on branches of the *Sakaria*,—the latter celebrated for its silky-haired goats,—are the

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—ASIA.—What large rivers flow southwards? Eastwards? Through what zones does Asia extend? What parts of Asia are in the same latitude as Canada?

TURKEY IN ASIA.—How is Asia Minor separated from Turkey in

Europe? What sea is on the north? On the south? What island is off the southern shore? What mountains are in the south-east? What gulf is between Asia Minor and Syria? How is *Smyna* situated? *Scutari*? What ports are on the Black Sea? On the Mediterranean?





**TURKEY IN ASIA,  
ARABIA, PERSIA,  
AFGHANISTAN & BALUCHISTAN.**

Longitude East 60 from Greenwich

English Miles

Scale

0 100 200 300 400 500

Scale

0 100 200 300 400 500

Scale

0 100 200 300 400 500

Scale

0 100 200 300 400 500

Scale

0 100 200 300 400 500

Scale

0 100 200 300 400 500







# PALESTINE

G R E A T   S E A

(MEDITERRANEAN)

ENVIRONS OF JERUSALEM

IFRUSALEM

Plan of  
Rephaim

BETHEL, ME. M.

most important towns; *Trebizond* and *Sinope* are ports on the Black Sea; *Tokat* has copper mines and manufactures. *Tarsus*, celebrated as the birthplace of St Paul, is on the southern coast, opposite the island of Cyprus.

What is comprised in Asia Minor? Describe the surface of the country. The principal mountains. Trace them on the map. What is said of the rivers? Describe the principal. Trace their courses on the map. What is said of the lakes? Describe the climate. The soil and products. What is said of the commerce of the country? Of the people? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, state where they are situated, and for what celebrated.

#### ARMENIA.

ARMENIA lies to the east of Asia Minor, between it and Persia, and adjoins the Russian province of Georgia, south of the Caucasus Mountains. It much resembles Asia Minor in physical features, climate, and productions, but is still more mountainous. The land of Eden is supposed to have been in Armenia; and *Mount Ararat*, upon which the ark rested after the flood, is on the borders of Armenia, Persia, and Georgia. It rises in two peaks, the highest being over 17,000 feet high. The river *Euphrates* rises in the mountains of Armenia, and flows southwards into the Persian Gulf; and the *Kur*, with its tributary the *Aras*, flows into the Caspian Sea.

*Erzeroum* (50,000), the largest city, is situated on an elevated plain, 6000 feet high, near the source of the Euphrates. *Kars*, in the north-east, is celebrated for its gallant defence against the Russians by the Turks, under General Williams, in 1855.

Where is Armenia situated? In what does it resemble Asia Minor? What remarkable place is said to be in Armenia? Describe *Mount Ararat*. For what is it noted? Describe the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the principal towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

#### SYRIA AND PALESTINE.

SYRIA extends southwards from the Taurus Mountains, along the eastern shore of the Mediterranean, and includes also Palestine, or the Holy Land.

From the Taurus range the mountains of Lebanon stretch southwards in two parallel chains, called the *Libanus*, and *Anti-Libanus*,—the latter terminating in *Mount Hermon*, 10,000 feet high, its peak covered with snow for the greater part of the year. Between these ranges lies *Cœle-Syria*, or *Hollow Syria*. *Mount Carmel*, on the coast, forms a bold and lofty promontory to the south of the Bay of Acre. In the north, the river *Orontes* rises, and flows past Antioch into the Mediterranean. Near *Mount Hermon* are the sources of the *Jordan*, which flows southwards through the *Sea of Galilee*, or *Tiberias*, so celebrated in Scripture for the stirring scenes which occurred there during the life of our Lord upon earth. From this lake the Jordan flows into the *Dead Sea*, after a course, including many windings, of 200 miles. The *Dead Sea* is a lake nine times saltier than the ocean, and occupying the place where *Sodom* and *Gomorrhah*, the cities of the plain, formerly stood. This lake is 1300 feet below the level of the Mediterranean, and the Jordan, for the greater part of its

course, is also below the level of the sea, being the only known instance of such an extraordinary depression. The mountains of Lebanon are continued southwards by the mountains of Palestine; and still farther by the mountains of *Seir*, terminated at the extremity of the peninsula at the head of the Red Sea by the *Sinaitic group*, on one of which *Moses* received the Ten Commandments. One of the same group is *Mount Horeb*, where *Moses* saw the burning bush. To the east of Jerusalem is the *Mount of Olives*, the favourite resort of our Saviour. To the east and south of Syria is a great sandy desert, extending into Arabia, and inhabited by wild and spacious tribes of Arabs, who live by pasturing their flocks and by plunder.

During the life of Christ the northern part of Palestine was called Galilee, the centre Samaria, and the southern part Judea. Before the ten tribes were carried into captivity, they possessed the country afterwards named Galilee and Samaria, but then called the kingdom of Israel.

The climate in the valleys is hot, and the soil is naturally rich, but it is poorly cultivated, and, owing to long neglect, has become sterile and barren. Grain, olives, figs, grapes, and pomegranates grow abundantly with but little labor, and the land would be literally a "land flowing with milk and honey," if its resources were developed.

The mountains of Lebanon are inhabited by two independent tribes: the Maronites, a kind of Christians; and the Druses, a brave and warlike race, with a religion peculiar to themselves.

*Damascus* (150,000) is the largest and most important city of Syria, and one of the oldest in the world, having been in existence in the time of Abraham. It lies on the route of the caravans to Mecca, and carries on a large trade in silks, jewellery, &c. *Beyrout* is the seaport of Damascus, and has also a large trade in silks, oil, and wine. *Aleppo* (100,000) is the capital of Syria, and carries on an extensive trade in cotton and silk manufactures. In 1822 it was nearly destroyed by an earthquake, and 20,000 persons lost their lives. *Antioch*, on the *Orontes*, was formerly a city of great importance. *Baalbec*, near Beyrout, and *Palmyra*, the *Tadmor* of the Old Testament, in the Syrian desert, 130 miles north-east of Damascus, are remarkable for the remains of their ancient temples and buildings. *Jerusalem*, (25,000,) the celebrated capital of ancient Judea, is now sadly fallen in importance. Only about one-fourth of its inhabitants are Christians, and the Mosque of Omar now occupies the site of the ancient Jewish temple. It is only half the size it was before its destruction by Titus. Most of the interesting spots memorable in the life of our Lord are still pointed out, and churches have been erected upon them. It is much visited by pilgrims and travellers. *Jaffa*, the port of Jerusalem, is the ancient *Joppa*. *Tyre* and *Sidon*, formerly important cities and seaports on the coast, are almost deserted; *Bethlehem*, the birthplace of our Lord, six miles south of Jerusalem, is now a straggling village. *Hebron* is ten miles farther south. *Nazareth* and *Tiberias* are miserable villages; while of *Bethsaida*, and *Capernaum* no ruins even

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—TURKEY IN ASIA.—What celebrated mountain is in Armenia? What celebrated river rises in Armenia? Where does it flow? Where is Erzeroum situated? Kars? How is Syria separated from Algieras? What country does it adjoin on the south?

What sea is on the west? What mountains are along the west coast? What celebrated river flows southwards? How is Damascus situated? Antioch? Aleppo? Jerusalem? What ports does Syria possess? In what direction from Jerusalem is Damascus? Jaffa? Tyre? Antioch?



remain, so great is the general desolation which has come over the land. *Nabblus* is the ancient Shechem or Sychar, near which was Jacob's Well. *Acre*, on the coast, near Mount Carmel, is famous in later times for the sieges it has withstood. *Gaza*, to the south-west of Jerusalem, is still an important town, carrying on trade between Palestine and Egypt.

How is Syria situated? How is it bounded? Describe the mountains of Syria. Trace them on the map. Describe the course of the Jordan. The Dead Sea. The mountains in the south. Point them out on the map. What is east and south of Syria? How was Palestine formerly named? Describe the climate. Soil and productions. Inhabitants of the mountains of Lebanon. Describe the principal towns and places of interest. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated and for what noted.

#### KURDISTAN, IRAK-ARABI, AND ALGEZIRAS.

These countries, representing the ancient Assyria, Chaldaea, and Mesopotamia, occupy the south-eastern part of Turkey. Kurdistan, on the borders of Armenia, is mountainous; but the greater part of the country is a level plain, through which the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* flow south-east into the Persian Gulf. These rivers overflow their banks when the snow melts on the mountains, and for a brief period the plains are covered with vegetation; but the hot sun soon scorches it all up. Along the course of the rivers, vines, rice, and date-palms flourish, but the rest of the country is desolate, and is infested by warlike tribes of plundering Arabs.

*Lake Van*, in the north, is 5500 feet above the sea, and about one-fourth the size of Lake Ontario.

*Bassora* or *Bussorah* (60,000), near the Persian Gulf, has a large trade with Persia and the East. *Bagdad* (100,000), on the Tigris, was long the capital of the Mohammedan Caliphs, and is an important starting-point for caravans. *Mosul* (40,000), on the Tigris, has fine cotton manufactures, and from it muslin derives its name. Opposite to it the interesting remains of ancient Nineveh were discovered by Layard. *Diarbekir* has copper-mines. *Hillah* occupies the site of ancient Babylon. Near it is the mound called *Birs Nimrod*, supposed to be the ruins of the famous Tower of Babel.

What ancient countries do Kurdistan, Irak-Arabi, and Algeziras represent? Describe their situation. How are they bounded? Describe the country. Trace the courses of the principal rivers. What is said of vegetation? Of the soil and people? What lake is in the north? Describe the principal towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

#### ARABIA.

Area, 1,200,000 square miles; population, about 5,000,000; persons to a square mile, about 4; three times the size of Ontario and Quebec.

Chief City, MECCA.

ARABIA is a peninsula bounded on the North by Turkey in Asia; on the West by the Isthmus of Suez and the Red Sea; on the South by the Indian Ocean; and on the East by the Persian Gulf and Irak-Arabi.

It is a vast sandy desert, rising in the interior into a high tableland, from 5000 to 8000 feet high, and sloping principally towards the Persian Gulf. It is most abrupt on the west and south coasts. Little is known of the interior of the country, but recent travellers have found considerable towns and a numerous population in the northern central parts. The Syrian desert is in the possession of wandering tribes of Arabs called Bedouins, who live by plundering the caravans and by pasture.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—TURKEY IN ASIA, ARABIA, &c.—What large river flows nearly parallel to the Euphrates? What cities are situated on it? What is Hillah situated? How is Arabia separated from Africa? What isthmus is on the north-west? How is Arabia separated

The Strait of *Babelmandeb* is at the entrance of the Red Sea, and the Strait of *Ormuz* at the entrance of the Persian Gulf. *Cape Ras el Had* is the south-eastern extremity. *Mounts Sinai* and *Horeb* are in the peninsula extending into the Red Sea at its northern extremity.

The climate is excessively hot, and the simoom, or burning wind of the desert, renders travelling very dangerous, as the sand sometimes moves like the waves of the sea, overwhelming everything. The soil on the coast is fertile, producing coffee, myrrh, frankincense, dates, and various other fruits. In the Persian Gulf are valuable pearl-fisheries. Arabia is celebrated for its horses. The camel is the only animal which can endure the fatigue of traversing the deserts.

Hedjaz and Yemen in the west and Hassa in the east are subject to Turkey; the south-east belongs to the Sultan of Muscat; in the interior is the kingdom of Nedjed.

*Mecca* (40,000), the birthplace of Mohammed, 60 miles from the Red Sea, and *Medina*, containing his tomb, farther north, are the holy cities of the Mohammedans, and are visited by vast numbers of pilgrims, as Mohammedans are enjoined to visit Mecca at least once in their lives. *Jeddah* is the seaport of Mecca.

*Sana* is the capital of Yemen, and *Mocha*, celebrated for its coffee, is the chief seaport. *Aden*, at the entrance of the Strait of Babelmandeb, has belonged to Britain since 1839, where steam navigation was opened to India.

*Muscat* (60,000), on the east coast, is the capital of the most enterprising and maritime country in Arabia, and even in Western Asia. It carries on an important trade in gums, myrrh, and frankincense, a large portion of which is brought from Africa.

*Riadh* (30,000), in the centre of the country, is the capital of the kingdom of Nedjed and the chief town of the Wahabees, a particularly strict sect of Mohammedans.

The ruins of *Petra*, the ancient capital of Edom, in the north, about midway between the Dead and the Red Seas, consist of a long street or narrow valley, in which houses, temples, and all the buildings are hewn out of the solid rock; and are amongst the most interesting ancient remains in existence.

What is the area of Arabia? Population? Size? Capital? How is Arabia bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. Describe the surface of Arabia. Describe the principal physical features. Point them out on the map. Describe the climate. Soil and productions. For what is Arabia famous? How is Arabia divided? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their situation. Describe the ruins of Petra.

#### PERSIA.

Area, 600,000 square miles; population, 5,000,000; persons to a square mile, 8; about one-third larger than Ontario, Quebec, and Newfoundland.

Capital, TEHERAN.

PERSIA is bounded on the North by Asiatic Russia, the Caspian Sea, and Turkestan; on the West by Turkey; on the South by the Persian Gulf; and on the East by Afghanistan and Baluchistan. It was formerly a nation of great importance, forming one of the most powerful empires of ancient history, but is now sadly reduced, and seems to be steadily decreasing in population. The area and population are variously estimated from 450 to 650 thousand square miles, and from 5 to 10 millions of souls.

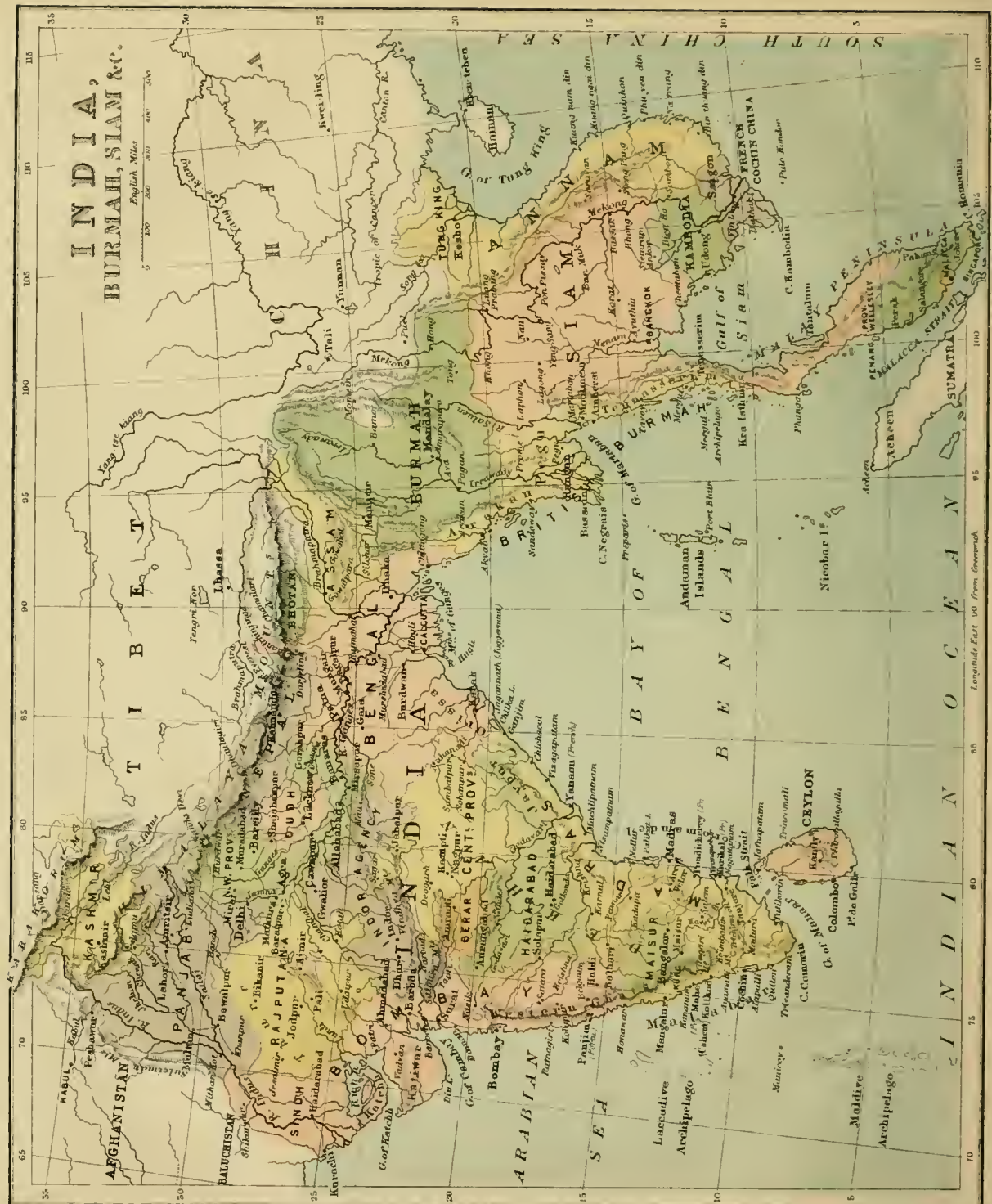
from Persia? From Balochistan? What cape is on the south-east? What famous mountain is at the head of the Red Sea? Where is Mocha situated? Indiaua? What large town is in the south-east? What part of Arabia belongs to Britain?





# INDIA, BURMAH,SIAM&C.

English Miles  
0 100 200 300 400



The surface is mountainous, especially in the north and west, where the *Elburz Mountains* extend from Afghanistan to the mountains of Armenia. The highest summit is Mount Demavend, 21,000 feet high. The interior is a high plateau about 3000 feet above the sea, forming part of the great *Desert of Iran*, which extends into Afghanistan. The rivers are few and small, and either lose themselves in the sand, or flow into lakes so salt that fish cannot live in them. Along the shore of the Caspian Sea, and wherever there is water, vegetation is luxuriant, and cotton, the sugar-cane, and mulberry, fig, and pomegranate trees abound. In the south it is hot, dry, and arid, and the date palm is the only tree that will grow.

The Persians are a gay, polite, and hospitable people, and carry on large manufactures in fine silks, carpets, and brocades. Two-thirds of the people are engaged in pastoral pursuits. The sheep of Persia are famous for their size. Trade is chiefly in the hands of the British and Russians, the latter having almost exclusive control of the navigation on the Caspian Sea. The government is a despotism, under a ruler called the Shah; and the religion is the Mohammedan.

*Ispahan*, (100,000,) the largest city, is situated on a high plain in a well-cultivated district. *Teheran*, (85,000,) the capital, is in the desert, where the climate is so hot and unhealthy, that in summer the city is almost deserted. *Shiraz*, near the Persian Gulf, is in the centre of a fertile and beautiful valley. North of it are the ruins of *Persepolis*, among which are supposed to be those of the palace of Darius, destroyed by Alexander the Great. *Bushire*, on the Persian Gulf, is the chief port. *Tabriz*, near the salt lake Urumiyah, *Yezd*, and *Hamadan*, the latter on the caravan route to Bagdad, are important towns. *Reshd* and *Astrabad* are ports on the Caspian.

What is the area of Persia? Population? Size? Capital? How is Persia bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. For what was Persia formerly celebrated? Describe the surface. The mountains and rivers. Trace them on the map. Describe the soil and products. What is said of the people? Of the sheep of Persia? Of the trade? Of the government and religion? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

### AFGHANISTAN.

Area, 250,000 square miles; population, about 5,000,000; persons to a square mile, 20; rather larger than the province of Quebec.

Capital, CABOOL.

AFGHANISTAN is situated between Persia and the northern part of India. It is mountainous in surface, and in the south-west the Persian desert extends into the country. In the north-east are the *Hindu Kush Mountains*, some of them rising 20,000 feet in height; and from these the *Sulciman Mountains* extend southwards into Baluchistan.

Owing to the elevated position of the country, it is subject to great extremes of heat and cold, but the mountains enclose many rich and fertile valleys. Two famous mountain-passes lead from the high plateaux of Afghanistan to the valley of

the Indus. They are the Khyber Pass and the Bolan Pass, and are on the great road between India and the West.

The towns are chiefly inhabited by Persians and Hindoos, who carry on the trade; while the Afghans are principally priests or soldiers, holding trade in contempt. They are divided into a number of independent tribes, but unite for the common defence of the country. They were formerly very powerful, and had possession of a large part of Western India. The British invaded the country in 1839 to restore a rightful heir to the throne; but in 1842, after heavy losses, retired, not however without inflicting a severe lesson on the Afghans.

*Cabool*, (60,000,) the capital, is situated 6400 feet above the sea, and is surrounded with gardens. It is the key of Hindostan on the west. *Candahar* and *Herat* are the principal towns. Herat carries on extensive manufactures, and is an important station on the caravan route between Persia, Tartary, and India. Its occupation by the Persians caused the war of 1856.

What is the area of Afghanistan? Population? Size? Capital? How is Afghanistan bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. Describe the surface and principal physical features. Trace the latter on the map. Describe the climate and soil. What is said of the inhabitants? Of the British invasions? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their situations.

### BALUCHISTAN.

Area, 165,000 square miles; population, about 2,000,000; persons to a square mile, 12; rather less than Ontario in size.

Capital, KELAT.

BALUCHISTAN lies to the south of Afghanistan, between it and the Arabian Sea.

It is mountainous and desert in the north, and along the coast is a dry arid tract, where nothing but the date-palm will grow. The country is divided between the Belooches in the west, and the Brahoes in the east. Both are pastoral, and profess Mohammedanism. The Hindoos carry on the trade.

*Kelat* (12,000), in the north-east, is the chief town. It is 6000 feet above the sea.

What is the area of Baluchistan? Population? Size? Capital? How is Baluchistan bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. What is said of the surface and soil? Of the people? Where is the capital situated? Point it out on the map.

### INDIA OR HINDOSTAN.\*

Area, 1,622,000 square miles; population, 240,000,000; persons to a square mile, 148; rather more than half the size of the Dominion of Canada.

Capital, CALCUTTA.

INDIA, or HINDOSTAN, is bounded on the North by the Himalaya Mountains; on the West by Afghanistan, Baluchistan, and the Arabian Sea; on the South by the Indian Ocean; and on the East by the Bay of Bengal and Burmah.

The greater part of India is now in the possession of the British, or tributary to them. It was formerly under the control of a large trading company called the East India Company, but since 1858 has been under the direct control of the British

\* The spelling of Indian names in the text is generally according to the popular method, while the map, which slightly differs, is intended to show the more correct system, which is coming more into use.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—TURKEY IN ASIA, PERSIA, &c.—What countries adjoin Persia on the east? On the north? On the west? What mountain is in the north? What sea is on the north? What port is on the Persian Gulf? What ports are on the Caspian Sea? How is Ispa-

han situated? Teheran? What mountains separate Afghanistan from India? What country is to the south of Afghanistan? What sea is on the south of Baluchistan? What mountains are in the north-east of Afghanistan? How is Cabool situated?



Government. The first factory of the East India Company was established in 1615.

The country is naturally divided into three parts: the basin of the Indus in the north-west; the basin of the Ganges in the north-east; and the southern peninsula between the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal, including the Deccan, an elevated tableland enclosed by the Eastern and Western Ghats and the Vindhya Mountains.

The enormous mass of the *Himalayas* extends along the north, rising to their greatest height in the eastern part of the range, where Mounts Everest and Kinchinjunga are over 28,000 feet in height, being the highest known mountains in the world. The *Western Ghats* extend along the western coast, and the *Eastern Ghats* along the eastern coast at a distance of about forty miles from the sea. The western are the highest, rising about 4000 feet, and their southern continuation, the Nilgherries, rise to about 7000 feet. The *Vindhya Mountains* and *Aravulli Hills* are in the west.

The general slope of the country is towards the east, as shown by the course of the rivers. India is well watered, but owing to the height of the sources of the principal rivers, they are not generally well adapted for navigation. The *Ganges* rises in the Himalayas at a height of about 14,000 feet, receiving the *Gogra*, *Jumna*, and other tributaries, and flows into the Bay of Bengal by a number of mouths, after a course of 1500 miles. It is navigable for steamers as far as Allahabad, and so is the Jumna as far as Delhi. The *Brahmapootra* and *Indus* rise on the north side of the Himalayas in Tibet, and flow east and west respectively, turning the ends of the Himalaya chain. The *Brahmapootra* joins the eastern mouth of the Ganges, and is a very rapid river, little useful for navigation. The Indus receives the *Satlaj* with its tributaries,—which give the name of the Panjab, or “Five Rivers,” to the country through which they flow,—and after a course of 1800 miles, falls into the Arabian Sea. The lower part of its course is through a desert composed of sandy plains and jungles. The other rivers are the *Nerbudda*, flowing west, and the *Mahanuddy*, *Godavery*, *Krishna*, and *Cauvery* flowing east.

The western coast is called the *Malabar Coast*, and the eastern the *Coromandel Coast*. *Cape Comorin* is the southern extremity of the continent.

The climate of India varies according to latitude and elevation above the sea. The great height of the Himalayas, and the highlands sloping from them towards the south, which are within the tropics, give every variety of climate, from that of perpetual snow to that of the torrid zone. Like other tropical countries, the seasons are divided into the wet and dry, and their changes coincide with the periodical monsoons or season winds. The monsoons blow from the south-west in summer, and from the north-east in winter; and the changes produce violent storms.

In Bengal the hot season is from March to the end of May, and the wet season from June to October. Between these the climate is temperate. On the south-west coast the fall of rain is very great owing to the prevalence of south-west winds, which bring the moisture from the ocean. On the east coast the fall of rain is not so great, as the north-east winds blow

chiefly overland, and instead of rain, bring great heat and drought. During the heavy rains, the rivers, especially the Ganges and Brahmapootra, overflow their banks to a great distance, rendering the soil very fertile. Rice is the great staple and general food of all classes. Various other grains are also produced according to the elevation. Opium, indigo, sugar, and cotton are largely cultivated and exported. The teak, banyan, bamboo, mangrove, and a variety of palms, are the principal trees. The teak is as valuable for shipbuilding as the oak. A single banyan tree covers a large space of ground, as each branch extends downwards to the ground, takes root, and produces other branches. The soil in many parts is not cultivated, and is covered with jungles, affording a refuge for tigers, elephants, and other wild animals. India is rich in minerals, and especially in precious stones. The diamond mines of Golconda and Orissa are famous. The Hindoos excel in manufactures of ivory, silks, fine muslins, and cottons. The shawls of Cashmere, made from the hair of the Cashmere goat, are unrivalled. Hindoos form the greater part of the population; and although the country belongs to Britain, it contains very few Europeans, and these are chiefly military. The native soldiers in the pay of the British are called Sepoys. The natives are mostly pagans, worshipping Brahma, Vishnu, the Ganges, and many animals. Widows were formerly burnt on the funeral piles of their dead husbands, and children thrown into the Ganges, but the Government has now prohibited these and many other excesses. In the north-west there are great numbers of Mohammedans. The most remarkable feature in Hindoo society is the division of the people into four castes—Brahmins or priests, soldiers, merchants, and laborers. None of these can intermarry, or even eat and drink together. Those who have been degraded from their caste are called pariahs, and are outcasts from society.

British India, with its dependencies, was formerly divided into three parts—the Bengal, Madras, and Bombay Presidencies, but now forms nine provinces, the whole being under the control of the Governor-General and Supreme Council of India.

These are—*Bengal Proper*, comprising the country watered by the lower courses of the Ganges and Brahmapootra, and extending from Patna on the west to Chittagong on the east and Cuttack on the south; the *North-West Provinces*, along the courses of the Ganges and Jumna, from Delhi to Patna; the *Panjab*, or “Five Rivers,” situated on the tributaries of the Indus in the north-west (these three provinces are under Lieutenant-governors); *Oudh*, between the North-West Provinces and Nepal; the *Central Provinces*, situated south-west of Bengal Proper (these two provinces are governed by Chief Commissioners); *Assam*, on the Brahmapootra, to the north-east; *British Burmah* in Further India; and the former presidencies of *Madras* and *Bombay*, comprising the east and west coasts respectively, presided over by governors and their councils.

What is the area of India? them on the map. How does the Population? Size? Capital? How surface slope? Describe the principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Point out the boundaries on the map. To whom does the greater part of India belong? How is it divided by its physical features? Describe the principal mountain chains. Trace

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—INDIA.—How is India separated from Tibet? What sea is on the west? What bay is on the east? What large river flows into the Arabian Sea? What two large rivers flow into the Bay of Bengal? Which Presidency is in the north? Which in the south-

east? Which in the south-west? What is the southern extremity of India called? What island is off the southern point? How is it separated from the mainland? What is the eastern coast called? What the western coast? What desert is in the north-west?

In Bengal? What do the different winds cause? What happens during the rainy season? Describe the products of India. The vegetation. Animals. Minerals. Manufactures. What is said of the in-

habitants? Of the native soldiers? Of the religion and religious rites? What is a remarkable feature of Hindoo society? How is British India divided?

#### DENGAL.

The BENGAL PRESIDENCY was the largest and most populous of the three divisions, and included all the northern and north-eastern parts of Hindostan, and part of the Eastern Peninsula, or India beyond the Ganges. It is well watered by the largest rivers in India. Rice, opium, indigo, silk, cotton, and spices are largely exported. Railways are now being built between the most important cities, and telegraphic communication extends across the continent.

At the mouth of the Ganges, and extending about 200 miles up, is a swampy district, called the Sunderbunds, overgrown with forests and jungles, and full of wild animals, such as the tiger, rhinoceros, crocodile, &c.

Calcutta (\$92,000), the largest city and capital of India, is situated on the Hoogly branch of the Ganges, about 100 miles from its mouth. The river is there about a mile broad, and is generally full of shipping. The citadel, apices, minarets, temples, and villas, extending for a distance of five miles, give it an air of great magnificence; but the native part of the city is low, dirty, and ill-built. A railway extends from it to Delhi, nearly 1400 miles. The European population is about 8000. On the Ganges are—*Moorsheadabad*, the former Mohammedan capital of Bengal; *Patna*, with large exports of rice and indigo; *Benares* (173,000), the holy city of the Hindoos; *Allahabad*, at the confluence of the Jumna; and *Cawnpore*, where the Europeans were massacred in 1857. On the Jumna are *Agra* (142,000), the ancient capital of the Mogul Empire, containing the magnificent structure, the Tajmahal; *Delhi* (154,000), the capital after Agra. *Lucknow* (284,000) is celebrated for its defence against the Sepoys in the Indian Mutiny; at *Meerut* the Indian mutiny commenced. In the Punjab are—*Lahore* (120,000), the capital, near the Ravee, one of the five rivers; *Amritsir*, with the chief trade; *Peshawur*, an important fortified town; *Mooltan*, with manufactures of silk.

*Nagpur* is the chief town of Nagpore, and *Cuttack* of the state of the same name. About 42 miles south of Cuttack is the famous temple of *Jagannath*, formerly the scene of fearful rites.

What is said of the Bengal Presidency? What is said of the Sunderbunds? Where is it situated? Describe the chief cities. Point out the principal products? them out on the map, and state where they are situated. What is said of the railways, &c.?

#### MADRAS.

The PROVINCE of MADRAS includes the eastern coast of India, from Lake Chilka to the Krishna River, called the Circars, and the whole of the southern part of the continent south of the Krishna, except the native tributary states of Mysore, Cochin, and Travancore.

As the mountains on the west coast are the highest, the slope of the country is towards the east; and all the rivers flow in that direction. This is the hottest part of the continent, as the Western Ghats intercept the rain and the sea-breezes from the south-west. The forests of the Ghats furnish vast quantities

of valuable timber, teak, sandalwood, and other trees; and abound with tigers, elephants, the boa, and other wild animals and reptiles. The chief exports are timber and cotton.

*Madras* (395,000), the only large city, is situated on the coast, and is the capital. It has no harbor, and passengers and goods have to be conveyed through the surf on rafts. Its commerce is very large. *Arcot* is in the interior of the Carnatic, seventy miles from Madras. On the Cauvery are *Trichinopoly* and *Tanjore*, the latter with manufactures of cottons and silks. *Calicut*, the first port visited by Vasco da Gama, is on the Malabar coast.

What territories does the Madras Presidency comprise? Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the surface of the country. The mountains and rivers. Trace them on the map. What is said of the climate? What do the forests furnish? What is said of the animals? Of the exports? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

#### BOMBAY.

The PROVINCE of BOMBAY occupies the western part of India, including the extensive territory round Bombay, separated from the Presidency of Madras by the Portuguese settlement of Goa; it includes also the province of Scinde, on the Lower Indus. Gujerat and Cutch or Katchh are native states dependent on Britain.

The climate, owing to the prevailing sea-breezes, is more healthy and cool than in the other parts of India.

*Bombay* (646,000), the capital, is situated on an island adjoining the coast. It has a fine harbor, large trade, and much shipbuilding. It is the station for the East India steamships, and railways have been constructed to Madras, Calcutta, and the north. *Poonah*, east of the Ghats, is an important military station. At *Surat*, on the Taptée, was established the first British factory in 1615.

*Hyderabad*, on the Indus, the capital, and *Kurrachee*, on the coast to the west, the chief seaport, are the principal towns of Scinde.

Where is the Presidency of Bombay situated? What territories does it comprise? Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. What is said of the climate? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

#### NATIVE STATES.

These are either independent, or governed by native princes dependent on the British Government, and more or less subject to its control.

The INDEPENDENT STATES are:—

*Nepal* and *Bhotan*,—all occupying the southern slope of the Himalayas.

*Nepaul* extends along the slope of the Himalayas at the part where they reach their highest elevation. The lower part is densely covered with forests. *Katmandu*, situated in a valley, is the capital.

*Bhotan* lies east of Nepaul, and north of the valley of the Brahmapootra. It is separated from Nepaul by the small tributary state *Sikim*. The Ghoorkas are the ruling race, and are excellent soldiers. The capital is *Tassisudon*.

The DEPENDENT STATES are:—

*Kashmir*, lies north of the Punjab, and contains many fer-

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—INDIA.—What islands are off the south-west coast? What gulfs are on the north-west coast? How is Calcutta situated? Bombay? Madras? What large cities are on the Ganges? On the Jumna? On the Indus? What large cities are in the Punjab? (in

the north-west). In what direction from Calcutta is Delhi? Madras? Bombay? Lucknow? In what direction from Bombay is Adee? (see Asia). Suez? In what direction from Madras are Pondicherry? Tanjore? Hyderabad? Where is Allahabad? Benares?



tile valleys. The famous shawls are manufactured there. *Cashmere* (or *Serinagur*), the capital, is situated on the *Jhelum*, 5000 feet above the sea.

The *Rajpoot States*, or *Rajputana*, a number of small states occupying both sides of the *Aravulli Hills* in the west, with the British territory of *Ajmer* in the centre.

*Scindia's Dominions*, or *Gwalior*, are situated along the *Chambul*. *Gwalior*, with a famous hill-fort, is the capital.

The *Indore*, or *Holcar States*, are along the *Vindhya Mountains*.

*Haidarabad*, or the *Nizam's Dominions*, is between the British territory of *Nagpore* and the *Krishna River*. *Haidarabad* is the capital. Near it is *Golconda*, famous for its diamonds. *Aurangabad* is the chief town in the north. Near it are the cave-temples of *Elora*.

*Gujerat* and *Katchh* are small territories on the west coast. *Baroda* is the capital of *Gujerat*. In *Katchh* is the *Runn*, a district into which the ocean breaks during the south-west monsoon, but which at other seasons is dry.

*Mysore*, the territory of the celebrated *Hyder Ali*, occupies the south of the *Deccan*. The Christians form one-eighth of the population, a larger proportion than in any other part. *Mysore* is the capital. *Seringapatam*, on the *Cauvery*, is strongly fortified. *Bangalore* (60,000) is the largest town.

*Cochin* and *Travancore* are small states on the south-west coast. *Cochin* is the capital of the first, and *Trivandrum* of *Travancore*.

The foreign possessions in India, besides the British, are:—

Belonging to the Portuguese, *Goa*, on the *Malabar coast*, with a capital of the same name; *Diu* and *Damao* in *Gujerat*.

The French possess—*Chandernagore*, above *Calcutta*; *Yanaon*, at the mouth of the *Godavery*; *Pondicherry*, the capital, on the *Coromandel coast*; and *Mahe*, on the *Malabar coast*, near *Calicut*.

What is said of the native states? Describe the independent states and their chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Describe the dependent states and their chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

What possessions have the Portuguese in India? Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. What possessions have the French? Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

#### ISLANDS.

*Ceylon* is rather less than *New Brunswick* in size, and is situated at the south-eastern extremity of *India*, with which it is almost connected by a chain of shoals called *Adam's Bridge*. The *Gulf of Manaar* and *Palk Strait* are between it and the mainland.

It is mountainous in surface, and possesses a much more healthy climate than the mainland. It abounds with precious stones. In the *Gulf of Manaar* are valuable pearl-fisheries.

*Colombo* (100,000) is the capital and chief seaport, exporting large quantities of cinnamon. *Trincomalee* possesses a magnificent harbor. *Candy* is the ancient capital.

The *Laccadive* and *Maldivé Islands*, on the west, are coral islands. They are low, and of little importance. The *Anda-*

man and *Nicobar Islands*, in the *Bay of Bengal*, are mountainous, and yield valuable timber.

What is the size of *Ceylon*? Where is it situated? How is it separated from the mainland? Describe its surface, climate, &c. Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Describe the other islands belonging to India. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Have they any products?

#### THE EASTERN PENINSULA, OR INDIA BEYOND THE GANGES.

Area, about 800,000 square miles; population, 25,000,000; persons to a square mile, 30; one-fourth the size of *British North America*.

The *EASTERN PENINSULA* includes the countries lying between the *Bay of Bengal* and the *China Sea*. It comprises *Burmah*, *Siam*, *Laos*, *Annam*, the *Malay Peninsula*, and *British Burmah*.

Mountain ranges extend north and south through the Peninsula, and between them flow large and important rivers; the *Irrawady* and *Saluen* into the *Gulf of Martaban*, the *Meinam* into the *Gulf of Siam*, and the *Mekong* or *Camboja* into the *China Sea*. From the south-west the narrow *Malay Peninsula* stretches southwards, and is separated from the island of *Sumatra* by the *Strait of Malacca*. Very little is known of the interior. The climate resembles that of *India*, and the soil is fertile, producing rice, cotton, sugar, and indigo. The forests are very extensive, and the trees, growing to an enormous size, include teak, sandalwood, rosewood, cinnamon, and sago and other palms. *Laos* produces benzoin and gumlac; gamboge is peculiar to *Camboja*. The forests are the haunts of vast numbers of monkeys: tigers and elephants also abound. Gold, silver, copper, and tin are found, especially in the eastern parts.

The inhabitants are chiefly Buddhists, except the Malays, who are Mohammedans. In *Annam* they assimilate more to the Chinese. All the native governments are very despotic.

*BURMAH*, or *AVA*, lies to the north-east of the British provinces. The hills are low, but densely covered with forests of teak and other valuable timber. Rice is the chief production and food. *Burmah* contains about 4,000,000 inhabitants.

*Ava* (50,000), the former capital, is situated on the *Irrawady*, about 400 miles from its mouth. Near it are large wells of petroleum. *Mandalay*, a little north-west of *Ava*, is the capital. *Bhamo*, in the north, carries on the principal trade with *China*.

*SIAM* lies to the south-east of *Burmah*, and is watered by the *Meinam River*. It includes also the northern part of the peninsula of *Malacca*. The country is very fertile, producing rice, sugar, cocoa, and other palms and fruits in great abundance. It exports gamboge and gumlac. It is inhabited by a mixed population of about 7,000,000, consisting of Siamese, Chinese, Malayese. They are mostly Buddhists. The Siamese portion is about 4,000,000.

*Bangkok* (400,000), the capital, is situated on the *Meinam*, about 20 miles from its mouth. A great part of the city is on the river, and is built upon bamboo rafts, each supporting

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—INDIA.—Describe the position of the following independent states:—*Nepaul*, the country of the *Ghoorkas*. Describe from the map the country of the *Sikhs*. Point out the following dependent states:—*Mysore*, *Gujerat*, *Katchh*, *Gwalior*, *Travancore*,

*Rajputana*. Where is *Scinde*? Where *Scindia*? Where is *Cochin*? Where *Cochin-China*? Where *Trichinopoly*? *Seringapatam*? *Golconda mines*? *Kurrachee* (port)? *Agra*? *Nooltan*? In what direction do the *Aravulli Hills* run? The *Vindhya Mountains*?







# CHINESE EMPIRE JAPAN & EASTERN TURKISTAN.

English Miles

0 100 200 300 400 500

Longitude East of Greenwich

100

110

120

130

Latitude North

20

30

40

50

60

70

80

90

100

110

120

130

140

150

160

170

180

190

200

210

several houses, and arranged into streets. *Yuthia*, the former capital, is situated on an island formed by the Meinam.

**LAOS** and the *Shan States* occupy the country watered by the upper part of the Meinam, north of Siam. They consist of a number of independent states. The country is fertile but little known. Most of the trade is with Siam.

**ANNAM** comprises three provinces—*Tonquin* on the north, *Cochin-China* on the east coast, and *Camboja* in the south. It is watered by the Mekon. In the north and west are vast alluvial plains, very fertile and well cultivated. *Cochin-China* is more mountainous. It produces rice, sugar, cinnamon, and gamboge. Annam is nominally subject to China, but is practically independent: The population is about 12,000,000.

*Hue* (100,000), the capital, is situated about ten miles from the east coast, on a navigable river, and is strongly fortified. *Saigon*, in the south-east, has lately been taken possession of by the French, with the adjoining territory. *Kesho*, in the north, has a considerable trade.

**British Burmah** comprises *Aracon* and *Tenasserim*, taken from Burmah in 1826, and *Pegu*, in 1853, forming part of the Presidency of Bengal; and the *Eastern States Settlements*, including *Penang*, or Prince of Wales Island, *Province Wellesley*, *Malacca*, and the Island of *Singapore*. The population is about 3,000,000.

*Rangoon*, near the mouth of the Irrawady, and *Moulmein*, at the mouth of the Saluen, are important seaports. *Martaban* is opposite Moulmein. *Mergui* is the capital of Tenasserim. The islands opposite it supply timber and coal. *Singapore* (90,000), on the island of the same name, is now the seat of a large amount of commerce. *Georgetown*, on Prince of Wales Island, is the capital of the Straits Settlements.

The *Malay Peninsula* is traversed by mountains from north to south. It is divided amongst a number of petty states. The inhabitants are Mohammedans, and are the parent stock of one of the five great families or races into which mankind is generally divided. They formerly lived by piracy, but the influence of Britain has in a great measure put an end to it. The forests supply timber and gutta-percha, but trade and industry are altogether neglected.

What is the area of the Eastern Peninsula? Population? Size? How is it bounded? What countries does it comprise? Describe the surface. Trace the courses of the rivers on the map. What is said of the interior of the country? Of the climate? Of the soil and products? Of the forests? Of the peculiar productions? Of the animals? Of the minerals? Of the inhabitants? Describe Burmah. How is it situated? Describe its chief towns. Point them out on the map. Describe Siam. How is it situated? Describe its chief towns. Point them out on the map. Describe Laos and the Shan States. How are they situated? Describe Annam. How is it situated? Describe its chief towns. Point them out on the map. Name the British provinces. How are they situated? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map. Describe the Malay Peninsula, its inhabitants, &c.

### CHINESE EMPIRE.

Area, 4,600,000 square miles; population, about 450,000,000; one and a half times the size of the Dominion of Canada.

Capital, *PEKIN*.

The **CHINESE EMPIRE** consists of *China Proper* in the South-east; *Tibet* in the South-west; *Mongolia*

in the North; and *Manchooria* and *Corea* in the North-east.

It occupies the great central and eastern slope of Asia, is enclosed on three sides by the highest mountains, and watered by the three greatest rivers of Asia. On the north are the *Altai Mountains*, on the south the *Himalayas*, on the west the *Pamir Plateau* or "*Roof of the World*." From the west the *Kuenlun* and *Thian Shan Mountains* extend eastward in two parallel chains through the centre of the country; and in China Proper the *Peling* and *Nanling Mountains* extend also in the same direction. Between these mountain chains flow the *Amur* in the north, the *Hoangho* in the middle, and the *Yan-tse-kiang* and *Chukiang* in the south.

In the west are high tablelands, from 4000 to 10,000 feet above the sea. The centre is an extensive elevated sandy plain, called the desert of *Shamo* or *Gobi*. Towards the sea-coast the land is lower and more level.

What is the area of the Chinese Empire? Population? Size? Capital? How is it bounded? Of what territories is it composed? Point them out on the map. What part of Asia does the Chinese Empire occupy? Name the principal mountains and rivers. Trace them on the map. Describe the surface.

### CHINA PROPER.

Area, 1,300,000 square miles; population, estimated at about 400,000,000; persons to a square mile, 300; nearly half the size of British North America.

**CHINA PROPER** is the most important part of the country, and lies in the south-east, north of Burmah and Annam. In the west it is mountainous, but more level towards the coast. Between *Pekin* and *Nankin* is a vast level plain, which is the most densely populated part of the empire. The country is watered by the *Peiho*, *Hoangho*, *Yan-tse-kiang*, *Chukiang*, and other rivers; and the cultivation of the ground is much assisted by numerous large canals. The great canal extends from *Hangchow* to a branch of the *Peiho*, and is over 700 miles long. It is 200 feet broad at the top, with varying depth, and is carried over all obstructions, making the deepest and largest canal in the world. The coast is washed on the south by the *China Sea*, and on the east by the *Yellow Sea* and *Gulf of Pechili*. In the south the climate is hot, and is subject in summer to typhoons, or terrific hurricanes; but in the north it is milder, although the extremes of heat and cold are great. The soil is fertile, and is most carefully cultivated, no part being allowed to lie idle, in order to be able to support the vast number of inhabitants. China supplies the world with tea, exporting 152,000,000 pounds to Britain alone in 1872. Rice forms the principal food of the inhabitants; but wheat and other grains are also cultivated. The mulberry, tallow, and camphor trees—the two latter peculiar to China—are cultivated. Opium is used by all classes, and is imported chiefly from India. Gold, copper, coal, and other minerals are found in various parts. The Chinese are celebrated for their manufactures of silks, porcelain, cotton, ivory, and paper. The manufacture of paper and gunpowder, the art of printing, and the mariner's compass, were known in China long be-

**EXERCISES ON THE MAP**—INDIA, &c.—What sea is on the east of the Eastern Indian Peninsula? What bay on the west? What gulf on the south? What country on the north? What peninsula extends to the south? How is it separated from Sumatra? What British posses-

sion is on the south of it? What large rivers flow southwards through the Eastern Peninsula? How is Ava situated? Bangkok? Rangoon? Martaban? Prince of Wales Island? In what direction from Calcutta is Rangoon? Singapore? What islands are west of Tenasserim?



fore they were discovered in Europe, and great advancement had been made in astronomy; but for centuries the Chinese have been at a stand-still, and making no further progress.

Trade with foreigners was formerly confined to the port of Canton; in 1842 several additional ports were opened to foreign commerce, but it was not till 1860, when Peking was taken and occupied for a time by the British, that the country began to be opened up. Iron, steel, woollens, and other goods are imported from Europe, and cotton and opium from India.

China is the most densely-peopled country of its size in the world, although England, Belgium, and other small countries contain a greater number of persons to the square mile. According to the highest estimates, it contains nearly one-third of the whole population on the globe, although less than one-half the size of the United States in extent.

For two centuries China has been governed by a Tartar dynasty. The Great Wall on the northern frontier, 1400 miles long, is supposed to have been built 200 years before the Christian era, and is carried over hills and valleys. It was intended to protect the country from the invasions of the Tartars.

Learning and parental authority are held in high esteem by the Chinese; and the chief men, or mandarins, are selected for their proficiency in learning. The language is monosyllabic, and requires a distinct written character for every word, rendering it the most remarkable, as well as the most difficult, in the world. The government is a despotism; the religion of the people is chiefly Buddhism, and that of the learned men the system of Confucius, who flourished about 500 years before Christ.

Peking (2,000,000), the capital, on the Peiho, is about 50 miles south of the Great Wall. It is divided into two separate towns, the Tartar and Chinese—the former containing the imperial palace and gardens. In 1860 it was captured by an allied English and French force; and the British ambassador now resides there. Nankin (500,000) is on the Yan-tse-kiang, about 100 miles from its mouth. Nankin contained a famous porcelain tower, which was destroyed by the rebels a few years ago. It is the chief seat of learning, and is noted for its manufactures.

Canton (1,000,000) until lately was the only port with which Europeans could trade. It is situated on the Chu-kiang River, about 70 miles from its mouth. A large part of the population live in boats on the river. In 1842 there were opened to foreigners, Amoy, situated on the coast opposite the Island of Formosa, with a magnificent harbor; Foochow, farther north; Ningpo, with silk manufactures; and Shanghai, near the mouth of the Yan-tse-kiang, with the principal foreign trade. In 1858 a large number of other ports were opened.

ISLANDS.—Hainan (1,500,000), to the south, is a large island at the eastern extremity of the Gulf of Tonquin. It is mountainous, and exports timber, rice, sugar, pearls, and coral.

Formosa, separated from China by the strait of the same name, is a large and fertile island, with numerous volcanic mountains. It exports rice, camphor, salt, &c.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—CHINA, &c.—What countries adjoin China Proper on the south? On the west? What two seas are on the east? What gulf is on the south-east? In the north-east? What large rivers flow through China? What large island is to the east? How is it

The Lu-tchu Islands, a group lying 400 miles to the east of the mainland, belong to China.

Hong-Kong, a small island at the mouth of the Canton River, 37 miles from Macao, and 100 from Canton, became a British settlement in 1842. The chief town is Victoria.

Macao is a Portuguese settlement, at the mouth of the Canton River.

What is the area of China? Population? Size? Where is it situated? How is it bounded? Describe its surface. Name its principal rivers. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the great canal. Describe the chief features of the coast. Point them out on the map. Describe the climate. The soil. The chief products. What is brought from India? What is said of the minerals of China? Of the manufactures? For what are the Chinese remarkable? What is said of trade with foreigners?

Of the population? Of the political state of the country? Of the Great Wall? Of learning, &c.? Of the language? Of the government? Of the religion? Describe the chief cities. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? What ports are open to foreigners? Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Describe the islands belonging to China. Point them out on the map, and describe where they are situated.

## TIBET.

TIBET lies between the Kueulun and Himalaya Mountains. It consists of high tablelands, from 10,000 to 14,000 feet high.

Many of the large rivers take their rise in Tibet, as the Indus, Sutlej, Brahmapootra, or Sampoo, and Yan-tse-kiang. Lake Palte is a remarkable ring of water round an island 100 miles in circumference.

The climate, owing to the great elevation, is in winter cold and dry, but in summer hot; and owing to the refraction of the heat from the plains, the snow-line on the Tibet side of the Himalayas is nearly 3000 feet higher than on the south side. The country is well adapted for pasturage, and large flocks of the yak, sheep, deer, and Cashmere goat are reared. Part of the west is subject to Cashmere.

Tibet is the chief seat of Buddhism, and the Grand Lama, or Dalai Lama, supposed to be an incarnation of Buddha, lives at Lassa in great splendor. The government is in the hands of the Chinese, and the Viceroy also lives at Lassa, which is the capital, and only city of importance.

Where is Tibet situated? Point it out on the map. How is it bounded? Describe its surface. Name the rivers rising in Tibet. Trace their courses on the map.

Describe Lake Palte. What is said of the climate? Of the soil and animals? For what is Tibet famous? What is said of the government, &c.

## MONGOLIA.

MONGOLIA extends from the Kingan Mountains, which separate it from Manchuria to Dzungaria; and from the Altai Mountains to Tibet. The country is an elevated tableland, bordered by mountains, and a great part of it is covered by the desert of Gobi. The people are pastoral, possessing numerous herds of horses, oxen, and camels. They are chiefly Mongols, descendants of the fierce warriors who, under Zenghis Khan, overran and conquered a great part of Asia. The trade is principally with China.

Urga (50,000), south of Lake Baikal, is the capital. South-west of Urga are the ruins of Karakorum, the former capital of Zenghis Khan.

separated from China? What mountains are in the south of China Proper? In the west? Where is Hong-Kong? Canton? Peking? Nankin? Foochow? In what direction from Hong-Kong is Peking? Nankin? Calcutta? What ocean is between America and China?

Where is Mongolia situated? The trade. The chief towns. Point How is it bounded? Describe the latter out on the map, and the surface of the country. The people. state where they are situated.

#### MANCHOORIA AND COREA.

MANCHOORIA and the Peninsula of Corea slope towards the Sea of Japan. The surface is mountainous, and covered with forests. The *Amur* flows through Manchoooria. The climate is cold, and wheat will scarcely grow. Oats and millet are the chief produce. The Manchoes conquered China in 1644, and still hold the imperial crown.

*Moukden* is the chief town, and the former capital of the Manchoo dynasty. *Kingkitao* is the capital of Corea, and exports rice, furs, and coal to Japan.

Where are Manchoooria and Corea situated? How are they bounded? Describe the surface. The principal river. The climate and products. towns. Point the latter out on the map, and state where they are situated.

#### EASTERN TURKESTAN (FORMERLY CHINESE TARTARY).

Area, 270,000 square miles; population, 3,000,000.

CHINESE TARTARY, or LITTLE BUCHARIA, lies between the Kuenlun and Thian Shan Mountains. The whole of the country forms part of the elevated tablelands of Asia, and in the east is the vast desert of Gobi or Shamo, extending into Mongolia. The country is cold, owing to its elevation, and only adapted for pasturage. The inhabitants are Tartars, and were formerly subject to China, but since 1864 have been entirely independent.

*Yarkand* (150,000), the capital, is situated in a fertile plain, and is the chief centre of the caravan trade between China and Western Asia. *Cashgar*, in the north-west, was the former capital.

*Dzungaria* lies to the north of the Thian Shan Mountains. It is mountainous in surface, and is peopled by the Mongol Tartars.

Where is Eastern Turkestan situated? How is it bounded? Describe its surface. Climate, &c. Inhabitants. Chief towns. Point the latter out on the map, and state where they are situated. What is said of Dzungaria?

#### TURKESTAN, OR WESTERN TARTARY.

Area, 640,000 square miles; population, about 7,500,000; persons to a square mile, 12; about three times the size of Quebec.

TURKESTAN is situated between the Caspian Sea and Eastern Turkestan, from which it is separated by the Pamir Plateau. The Hindoo Koosh Mountains form the southern boundary, separating it from Afghanistan. The greater part of the country consists of sandy steppes or plains, except in the east, which is very elevated. The Rivers *Sir* and *Amu* flow westward into the Sea of Aral, an inland salt lake about the size of Lake Superior, but very shallow, and said to be decreasing in area.

The extremes of heat and cold are great, and the only fertile parts of the country are those along the courses of the rivers. The most fertile districts are Kokan on the *Sir*, and

Bokhara and Khiva on the *Amu*, where rice, silk, and cotton are produced.

Turkestan forms part of ancient Scythia. In the north, round Lake Aral, the inhabitants are of the Kirghis tribe, and are wandering and nomadic. The country is divided into a number of petty independent states, the principal of which are the Khanates of Khiva, Bokhara, and Kokan. The inhabitants are fierce and treacherous, the governments despotic, and the religion Mohammedan. The trade is chiefly carried on by caravans with Russia, China, and Persia.

*Bokhara* (100,000) is the centre of the caravan trade, and manufactures cottons and silks. *Samarcand*, to the east of Bokhara, was the capital of the famous conqueror Timour, or Tamerlane, and contains his tomb. *Kokan* and *Tashkend*, on the *Sir*, are the centres of fertile districts. *Balkh*, in the parts belonging to Afghanistan, was the ancient Bactria, supposed to have been built by Cyrus, the founder of the Persian Empire. It is now a mere village. *Samarcand*, *Kokan*, and *Tashkend* are in districts taken by Russia.

What is the area of Turkestan? Is said of Turkestan? Of the population? Size? Where is it situated? How is it bounded? Describe its surface. The rivers. of the people? Government and Trace their courses on the map. religion? Of the trade? Describe the Sea of Aral. Where the chief towns. Point them out is it situated? Describe the climate on the map, and state where they mate. Soil and products. What are situated?

#### RUSSIA IN ASIA.

Area, 5,500,000 square miles; population, 8,500,000; rather more than three persons to two square miles; nearly twice the size of the Dominion of Canada.

RUSSIA IN ASIA is bounded on the North by the Arctic Ocean; on the West by the Ural Mountains and Ural River; on the South by Turkey, Persia, Western and Eastern Turkestan, and the Chinese Empire; and on the East by the Pacific Ocean.

It is divided into Eastern and Western Siberia, and the Trans-Caucasian provinces, or those south of the Caucasus Mountains. It is rather larger than Europe in extent, but owing to the severity of the climate, by far the larger portion is but thinly peopled.

The north of Siberia consists of vast, frozen, treeless steppes, but in the south it is mountainous, and covered with forests. The slope of the country is northwards. In the south are the *Caucasus Mountains*, between the Black and Caspian Seas; and the *Altai Mountains*, extending from Turkestan in a north-easterly direction, and continued to the Pacific under the names of the *Yablonio* and *Stanovoi Mountains*. The rivers are large, but slow, owing to the level nature of the country, and all flow north into the Arctic Ocean. They are unfit for navigation, as in the lower part of their courses they are continually covered with ice. The principal are the *Obi*, *Yenisei*, and *Lena*. The principal lakes are *Aral*, *Balkash*, and *Baikal*, all in the south. The peninsula of *Kamschatka* extends from the north-east into the Pacific, and encloses the *Sea of Okhotsk*. In the Arctic Ocean are the *Liakhov Islands*, which are unin-

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—CHINESE EMPIRE.—How is Tibet separated from Hindostan? From Eastern Turkestan? How is Mongolia separated from Eastern Turkestan? From Russia in Asia? How is Manchoooria separated from Russia in Asia? (see ASIA). How is Turkestan separated

from Eastern Turkestan? What sea is on the west of it? What peninsula is on the east of the Chinese Empire? What large islands are near the eastern coast? How are they separated from the mainland? Where is Yarkand situated? Where Urga? Where Bokhara? Gobi desert?



habited, but contain remarkable fossil remains of elephants. The Island of *Saghalien* belongs also to Russia.

The climate is intensely cold, becoming more so towards the east. East of the Lena is the coldest inhabited region in the world, being much more so than any part of the American continent. In the south the mountains are covered with forests; and in the valleys are fertile tracts, especially along the Amoor, which forms the boundary between the Russian and Chinese Empires.

The country derives its importance from its valuable mines of gold, silver, platinum, copper, and iron, which are found in the Ural and Altai Mountains, and from its trade in furs. The mines are under Government control, and are worked by political exiles and criminals. Fur-bearing animals abound—such as the ermine, sable, beaver, marten, and others. Bears, wolves, wild boars, and the argali, or wild sheep, are numerous. The inhabitants are chiefly of Tartar origin in the south, and Samoieds, resembling the Esquimaux, in the north; the Kirghis tribes roam over the country north of the Sea of Aral; the people of Kamschatka are of short stature, and use the dog for drawing their sledges. The towns are principally inhabited by European Russians, who carry on the trade of the country. Political and other criminals are banished from Russia in Europe to Siberia.

In Western Siberia, *Tobolsk* (20,000) is the chief town and centre of commerce. It is situated at the junction of the Tobol and Irtysh, tributaries of the Obi. *Omsk* (26,000) and *Toms* (23,000) are capitals of provinces of the same names, and considerable towns. *Ekaterrinburg* has valuable mines.

In Eastern Siberia, *Irkutsk* (27,000) on Lake Baikal, is the capital, and *Kiakta* the chief station on the route between Russia and China. *Nertchinsk*, on the Amoor, has valuable mines. *Yakutsk*, on the Leno, and *Okotsk*, on the river of the same name, are considerable towns. *Petropaulovsk* is a port in Kamschatka.

The Trans-Caucasian provinces consist of *Georgia* and part of *Armenia*, lying to the south of the Caucasus Mountains, between the Black and Caspian Seas, and were taken possession of in 1802. The Circassians inhabit the Caucasus Mountains, and until lately were continually at war with Russia for their liberty. They are generally Mohammedans, while the Georgians belong to the Greek Church.

South of the Caucasus are *Tiflis* (60,000), on the Kur, the capital; *Erivan*, on a branch of the Aras; and *Baku*, on the Caspian Sea.

What is the area of Russia in Asia? Population? Size? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. How is it divided? What is said of its extent, &c.? Describe the surface of Siberia. Describe the principal mountains and rivers. Where are they situated? Trace them on the map. Name the principal lakes. Point them out on the map, and describe their situation. What notable physical feature does Siberia possess on the east? Point it out on the map. Describe the principal islands belonging to

Russia in Asia. Point them out on the map, and describe their situation. What is said of the climate of Siberia? Of the soil? From what does Siberia derive its importance? What animals are found in the country? What is said of the inhabitants? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

Describe the Trans-Caucasian provinces. What is said of the Circassians and Georgians? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map.

## JAPAN.

Area, 150,000 square miles; population, estimated at 35,000,000; persons to a square mile, 233; one-fifth less than Ontario in else.

Capital, *Yedo*.

The EMPIRE OF JAPAN consists of the *Islands of Yezo* (or *Jesso*), *Hondo* or *Nippon*, *Shikoku* (also written *Sikok* and *Sikopf*), and *Kiusiu*, with numerous small islands, dependencies of the larger ones. The *Kurile* and *Loo-choo* Islands belong also to Japan.

The Japan Islands are separated from Corea and Manchuria by *Corea Strait* and the *Sea of Japan*. The main islands are traversed by lofty mountains, rising to the height of 12,000 feet, and covered with perpetual snow. Some of them are volcanoes.

Yesso and the northern islands are cold, and not very productive; but in the southern islands the land is very carefully cultivated, and produces rice, tea, cotton, and silk. As in China, the country is densely peopled; and even every mountain is cultivated as far as possible, in order to supply the wants of the large population. The Japanese are famous for their japanned and lacquered wares; porcelain and silk are also extensively manufactured. Gold, silver, copper, and tin are found in considerable quantities.

Like the Chinese, the Japanese are highly civilized, and have made great progress in manufactures and science. They were very exclusive, and up to 1854 only a few Chinese and two Dutch vessels were allowed annually to trade at *Nangasaki*. Since then, the Americans in 1854, and the British in 1858, concluded treaties with them, by which several other ports were opened for foreign trade. Within the last few years, no country in the world has made such rapid progress as Japan. Railways and steamships have been built, education has been greatly encouraged, and European institutions generally adopted.

The government is a despotism, and consisted formerly of two sovereigns—a spiritual emperor, called the *Dairi*, or *Mikado*, who was looked upon as semi-divine, was invisible to the people, and who resided at *Miako*; and the temporal emperor, called the *Tycoon*, who resided at *Jeddo*, both in the island of *Nippon*. The nobles, or *Daimios*, were very powerful, and almost independent princes. In 1868, after six months' war, this divided sovereignty was terminated, and the *Mikado* now reigns supreme.

*Yedo* or *Tokio* (780,000) is the largest town and capital. *Miako*, the sacred capital, where dwells the *Mikado*, is the principal manufacturing and commercial town in *Hondo*. *Matsmai* is the chief town of *Yezo*. *Yokohama*, *Simoda*, and *Kanagawa*, in *Hondo*, *Nagasaki* in *Kiusiu*, and *Hakodadi*, in *Yezo*, are the principal ports now open to foreigners.

What is the area of Japan? Population? Size? Of what is the Empire of Japan composed? Point out the principal islands on the map. Describe their position and their surface. The climate. The soil and products. What is said of the people? For what are the Japanese famous? What minerals are found? What is said of civilization in Japan? Of the exclusiveness of the people? Of the government? Of the emperors and nobles? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—ASIA.—What ocean is on the north of Siberia? What seas on the east? How is it separated from Russia in Europe? From the Chinese Empire? What large rivers flow northwards through Siberia? What peninsula is in the east? What large island

is on the eastern coast? What seas are in the south-west? How is *Irkutsk* situated? *Petropaulovsk*? *Tobolsk*? (see *CHINA*, &c.) Which is the largest of the Japanese Islands? From what countries does the Sea of Japan separate them? On what island is *Yedo*? *Simoda*? *Hakodadi*?







## AFRICA.

Area, 11,500,000 square miles, comprising about one-fifth part of the land surface of the globe; greatest length from north to south, 5000 miles, and from east to west, 4650 miles; population estimated at about 100,000,000.

AFRICA forms a vast compact peninsula of a triangular form, almost entirely surrounded by water, and connected only with Asia by the Isthmus of Suez.

It is bounded on the North by the Mediterranean Sea; on the West by the Atlantic Ocean; on the South by the Southern Ocean; and on the East by the Indian Ocean and the Red Sea.

It may be divided into—

*Northern Africa*, or the Barbary States, comprising Morocco, Algeria, Tunis, Tripoli, and Barca.

The *Nile Region*, comprising Egypt, Nubia, and Abyssinia.

*Central Africa*, or Nigritia.

*Equatorial Africa*, or the Great Central Lake region.

*Western Africa*.

*Southern Africa*, including Cape Colony, Natal, &c.

*Eastern Africa*.

Less is known of Africa than of any other of the great divisions of the earth; but as many enterprising travellers, such as Livingstone, Barth, Burton, Grant, Speke, Baker, Stanley, Cameron, and others, have lately made it the subject of their explorations, our knowledge of the country is rapidly extending.

The mountains of Africa generally occur, as far as is known, in detached ranges but a short distance from the sea-coast, and do not extend inland, but partially enclose a vast plain or level land in the interior, much of which, especially in the northern parts, is desert, and unfit for cultivation or habitation, while the equatorial region is well watered and fertile.

The *Atlas Mountains*, in the Barbary States, extend eastward from the Atlantic parallel to the Mediterranean Sea, rising to their greatest height in Morocco, over 11,000 feet; and smaller ranges extend from them nearly to the borders of Egypt, but do not rise higher than 3000 feet. The mountains of *Abyssinia*, in the east, rise in irregular groups from a high tableland, some of them reaching 15,000 feet in height. They are more abrupt in the south than in the north. Parallel to the Gulf of Guinea, and about 150 miles inland, rise the *Kong Mountains*, and farther south, on the shores of the Bight of Biafra, are the *Cameroons*. The *Nieuwveld Mountains* and some other smaller chains extend from east to west across the central part of Cape Colony, rising in Compass Berg 10,000 feet high. On the east coast of Africa are several chains of mountains, some of which rise to a great height, but are yet little known. *Mounts Kilimandjaro* and *Kenia*, a little south of the equator, are about 20,000 feet high. Owing to the general proximity of the mountains to the coast, the rivers are not as numerous, nor, with few exceptions, as important as in the other great continents. The principal is the *Nile*, which has two sources—the Blue Nile, rising in Abyssinia, and the White Nile, the sources of which have lately been explored by Captains Speke and Grant, and Mr (now Sir) S. W. Baker. In 1858 Captain Speke discovered the *Victoria Nyanza Lake*, and issuing from it a river which he called the *Somerset*, and supposed to be directly continuous with

the White Nile. In 1862, he, in company with Captain Grant, still farther explored the lake. In 1864 Mr Baker discovered, farther westward, another lake, which he called the *Albert Nyanza*. He found that the Somerset, or the portion of the Nile so called, empties, with many other waters, into the Albert Nyanza, and that from it the White Nile proper flows. The White and Blue Niles unite in Nubia, and flow north through Nubia and Egypt, into the Mediterranean Sea. The sources of the Nile are not yet absolutely ascertained, but the river is at least 3000 miles long, and receives several tributaries, but none lower than 1400 miles from its mouth. The *Niger*, or *Quorra*, rises on the north side of the Kong Mountains, receives a large tributary, the *Bénue*, and flows round the eastern end of that range into the Gulf of Guinea. The *Senegal* flows into the North Atlantic Ocean; the *Zaire*, or *Congo*, and the *Orange*, or *Gariiep*, into the South Atlantic; and the *Zambesi* into the Mozambique Channel.

The principal lakes of Africa, as far as are yet known, are—*Dembea*, in Abyssinia; *Chad*, in the interior; *Albert* and *Victoria Nyanzas*, under the equator; and *Tanganyika*, *Bangweolo*, on the shore of which Livingstone died, *Nyassa*, or *Nyinyesi*, and *Shirwa*, with *Ngami*, farther south. With the exception of the first, they are but imperfectly known.

The coast-line of Africa is very even and unbroken, with but few indentations.

*The principal Bays, Gulfs, &c., are:—*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| On the north, the <i>Gulfs of Sidra</i>  | On the south, <i>Table Bay</i> and      |
| and <i>Cabes</i> .                       | <i>Algoa Bay</i> .                      |
| On the west, the <i>Gulf of Guinea</i> , | On the east, <i>Sofala Bay, Gulf of</i> |
| including the <i>Bights of Benin</i> and | <i>Aden</i> , and the <i>Red Sea</i> .  |
| <i>Biafra</i> .                          |   |

*The principal Straits are:—*

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>Gibraltar</i> , between Morocco and | <i>Strait of Babelmandeb</i> , be- |
| Spain; <i>Mozambique Channel</i> , be- | tween Abyssinia and Arabia.        |
| tween Madagascar and the main-         |                                    |

*The principal Capes are:—*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| On the north, <i>Bon. Blanco, Ceuta</i> . | On the east, <i>Corrientes, Delgado</i> ,     |
| On the west, <i>Blanco, Verde</i> ,       | and <i>Guardafui</i> ; and <i>Capes Amber</i> |
| <i>Palmas, Lopez</i> , and <i>Frio</i> .  | and <i>St Mary</i> , the north and south      |
| On the south, <i>Good Hope</i> and        | points of Madagascar.                         |
| <i>Agulhas</i> .                          |   |

The climate of Africa is in general hot and dry, more than three-fourths of the continent being within the tropics. Towards the middle and south the seasons are alternately dry and wet, as in other tropical countries; but in the vast sandy deserts no rain ever falls. The Great Desert of Sahara extends from the Atlantic Ocean to Egypt, and occupies an area equal to five-sixths of the Dominion of Canada. It is here and there diversified by fertile spots or oases, which are inhabited by a few wandering tribes of Moors and negroes. The western portion is the most desolate, and scorching winds, called the *Harmattan* and *Samiel*, blow across it into the neighboring countries. Along the shore of the Mediterranean the climate

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—AFRICA.—What ocean is on the west of Africa? What ocean on the east? How is Africa separated from Europe? From Asia? What is the southern point of Africa called? What is the most westerly point called? What is the most easterly

point called? What large island is off the east coast? How is it separated from Africa? In what zone is the greater part of Africa? What countries or states are on the Mediterranean? On the Atlantic? On the Indian Ocean? On the Red Sea? Around Lake Chad?



and productions resemble those of Southern Europe; but in the interior it becomes hotter, and the products vary. South of the Great Desert, both on the coast and the great central lake region, vegetation is rank, and the climate most unhealthy for Europeans. Cape Colony being within the southern temperate zone, is cooler and more healthy. The soil of Africa along the courses of the rivers is fertile, producing trees of great size, many of them indigenous to the country, and many valuable plants. There are the shea, or butter-tree, baobab, or monkey-bread tree, (a gigantic tree sometimes thirty feet in diameter,) oil-palm and other trees. Cotton, indigo, maize, rice, and yams, grow in abundance; south of Abyssinia is the native country of the coffee plant.

Africa possesses a large number and variety of wild animals, such as the lion, leopard, hyena, giraffe, elephant, hippopotamus, rhinoceros, crocodile, monkey, &c., besides a great variety of entelopes.

The inhabitants of Africa consist of different races, varying in complexion from the tawny Moor to the blackest negro. The negroes are the most numerous, constituting almost the entire population of Eastern, Western, and Central Africa. In the Barbary States the Moors belong to the Caucasian race, while the Egyptians and Abyssinians in the Nile region, with the Kaffirs in Southern Africa, seem to form the connecting links between the negro and Caucasian races. In the south are also the Hottentots, a stunted, degraded race. The inhabitants in the north are chiefly Mohammedans; and, except where settlements of Europeans have been made, all the rest are pagans or heathens.

The trade and products of the country are trifling, owing to the ignorance and generally degraded state of the inhabitants. The Barbary States export grain and leather; Egypt exports cotton and grain; and the west and south yield palm oil, ivory, and a little gold dust. On the south-west and east coasts the inhuman trade in slaves is still carried on to some extent, notwithstanding the vigilant efforts of the British to put it down.

What is the area of Africa? Extent? Population? What is the form of Africa? How is it bounded? Point out the boundaries on the map. How may it be divided? What is said of Africa? Of the mountains? Describe the principal mountains. Point them out on the map. Where are they situated? Name the principal rivers of Africa. Trace their courses on the map. Describe the course of the Nile and recent discoveries connected with it. Name the principal lakes of Africa. Point them out on the map. Describe their situation. Describe the coast-line of Africa. Name the prin-

cipal bays, gulfs, &c. Point them out on the map, and state where they are situated. Name the principal straits. Point them out on the map, and describe their position. Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map, and describe their situation. Describe the climate of Africa. The Desert of Sahara. What is said of the winds from the desert? Of the climate in the north? In the south? In Cape Colony? Describe the soil and vegetation. The animals, &c. The inhabitants. The trade and exports of the country.

## NORTHERN OR BARBARY STATES.

### MOROCCO.

Area, 220,000 square miles; population, about 3,500,000; a little larger than Quebec.  
Capital, Morocco.

The EMPIRE OF Morocco occupies the north-western corner of Africa, between the Desert of Sahara, the Atlantic Ocean, Mediterranean Sea, and Algeria. It is the most important of the Bar-

bary States in power and population. These states were celebrated in ancient history under the name of Mauritania, but have now been long sunk under tyranny and oppression. Their power has declined, and their naval force, long used for piratical purposes, has been destroyed by the British and other European Powers since the beginning of the present century.

The *Atlas Mountains* traverse the country in a direction nearly parallel to the coast. They attain their greatest height in Morocco, and several of their peaks are covered with snow. *Mt. Miltin*, near the city of Morocco, is over 11,000 feet high. In the mountains are many beautiful and fertile valleys, and between them and the coast grain grows abundantly, as well as olives, grapes, dates, cotton, and tobacco. Beyond the mountains all the country is barren and desolate, covered for some distance with coarse grass, which gradually disappears in the sand. The ridges of the Atlas Mountains yield silver, copper, iron, and antimony. The climate is in general warm, but healthy, resembling the south of Europe.

The people are chiefly Moors and Berbers, professing Mohammedanism. Jews are numerous in the seaports.

The government is an absolute monarchy, the emperor having unlimited power over his subjects.

Spain possesses four ports on the north coast, the principal of which is *Ceuta*, opposite Gibraltar.

*Morocco* (60,000), situated in a fertile plain, is the capital; *Mequinez* (50,000) is an imperial residence; *Fez* (90,000), celebrated under the ancient Saracen monarchy, is now considered a holy city, and contains 100 mosques. *Megadore* and *Tangier* are small seaports; *Taflet* is situated in a fertile district in the interior.

What is the area of Morocco? Population? Size? Capital? How is Morocco situated? Point out the boundaries on the map. What is said of the importance of Morocco? Of the former position of the Barbary States? Of their present position and their navy? Describe the mountains. Trace them

on the map. Describe the valleys and their productions. The country beyond the mountains. The minerals. The climate. The people. The government. What possessions are held by Spain in Morocco? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their position.

### ALGERIA.

Area, 173,000 square miles; population, about 3,000,000; rather less than Ontario in size.

Capital, ALGERS.

ALGERIA lies to the east of Morocco, along the shore of the Mediterranean Sea. It has been in the possession of the French since 1830, but requires a large army to keep it in subjection. About 150,000 of the inhabitants are French, but great efforts have been made within the last few years to colonize it more extensively.

It is divided by the French into three provinces—*Algiers*, *Constantine*, and *Oran*.

It is traversed by the continuation of the Atlas Mountains, the northern slope of which is very fertile. Between them and the coast is a narrow strip of rich land, called the

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—AFRICA.—Which is the principal river of Africa? Where does it flow? What rivers flow into the Atlantic? What river into the Indian Ocean? What lakes are in the interior? How is Morocco separated from the Great Desert? How from Spain?

What point is opposite Gibraltar? What country adjoins Morocco on the east? What islands are to the east of Morocco? Where is Morocco situated? Where Fez? Where Tangier? In what zone are the French possessions on the north coast of Africa? Cape Colony?

"Tell," or grain country, where large quantities of wheat are grown for export. In the south, in soil and climate, it resembles Morocco, and the chief occupation of the inhabitants is pasturage.

*Algiers*, (60,000,) on the Mediterranean, the capital, is strongly fortified, and was long a formidable nest of pirates. It was bombarded and taken by the British under Lord Exmouth in 1816. *Constantine*, *Oran*, and *Bona* are also considerable towns.

What is the area of Algeria? Population? Size? Capital? Where is Algeria situated? How is it bounded? To whom does it belong? How is it divided? By what mountains is it traversed? What is said of the "Tell"? Of the climate, soil, &c.? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their position.

### TUNIS.

Area, 75,000 square miles; population, about 2,000,000; twice the size of Newfoundland.

Capital, *Tunis*.

TUNIS is situated to the east of Algeria. It is governed by an hereditary Bey, and is tributary to Turkey. It is the most important of the Barbary States for commerce. In ancient times it was one of the granaries of the Roman Empire, and now exports wool and olive oil largely. In climate, soil, and production it resembles Algeria. Caravans from the interior visit it regularly with ivory, gold dust, &c.

*Tunis* (130,000) is an important commercial city on the Lake of Tunis, which is connected with the Mediterranean. 30,000 of the inhabitants are Jews. About ten miles to the north-east are the ruins of ancient *Carthage*, the once formidable rival of Rome. *Cairwan*, about seventy miles south of Tunis, is the centre of the inland trade.

What is the area of Tunisia? Population? Size? Capital? How is Tunisia situated? How is it bounded? What is said of its commerce? Of its climate, soil, &c.? Of the caravans? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their position.

### TRIPOLI AND BARCA.

Area, 200,000 square miles; population, about 1,500,000; about the size of Quebec.

Capital, *Tripoli*.

TRIPOLI lies to the south-east of Tunis, along the shore of the Mediterranean, between the Gulfs of Sidra and Cabes. BARCA lies between it and Egypt. Both are tributary to the Sultan of Turkey.

The desert here approaches very close to the coast, so that there is only a narrow strip of fertile land between them.

*Tripoli*, (24,000,) the capital, is regularly visited by the caravans from the interior. There are two great routes,—one by *Ghadamis*, 200 miles to the south-west; and the other by *Mourzook*, 500 miles to the south.

What is the area of Tripoli and Barca? Population? Size? Capital? Where are they situated? How are they bounded? To whom do they belong? Describe the surface of the country. The chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their position.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—AFRICA.—What European countries are directly north of Algeria? Of Tripoli? What island belonging to Britain lies between Tripoli and Sicily? What gulfs are on the north of Tripoli? What are the most northerly points of Africa called? What

### NILE REGION.

The NILE REGION comprises Egypt, Nubia, Abyssinia, and a number of petty states round the sources, and along the upper part of the White Nile.

It is over 2000 miles in length, with a varying breadth of from 150 to 600 miles. The *Nile Proper* is formed in Nubia, by the junction of the *White* and *Blue Niles*. It is of the greatest importance to the country, on account of its annual inundations, caused by the tropical rains at its sources. These inundations last from June to the end of November, and render the surrounding country luxuriantly fertile. On account of the great drought, they are annually looked forward to by the inhabitants with great anxiety; and defect or excess are alike disastrous. Above the southern frontier of Egypt, the high banks of the river prevent its overflowing; and as it does not receive a single affluent during the last 1400 miles of its course, its volume gradually decreases, on account of the evaporation, and the quantity of water drawn off for the irrigation of the land.

What states are comprised in the Nile Region? What is the extent of the region? Describe the Nile. Trace its course on the map. For what is the river valuable? What is said of the inundations? Describe the course of the river above Egypt. What is said of its volume?

### EGYPT.

Area, 75,800 square miles; population, 5,000,000; rather less than half the size of Ontario; or, including Nubia and the countries on the White Nile subject to the Khedive, an area of 600,000 square miles, and a population of about 8,000,000.

Capital, *Cairo*.

EGYPT PROPER is bounded on the North by the Mediterranean Sea; on the West by Barca and the Great Desert of Sahara; on the South by Nubia; on the East by the Red Sea and Isthmus of Suez.

The great feature of Egypt is the Nile. Its course is through a long narrow valley enclosed by hills on each side, beyond which are sandy deserts. About 100 miles from the Mediterranean, it divides into two branches, forming a delta or triangle, each side of which is from 100 to 150 miles in length.

The climate is the driest in the world, rain seldom falling, and in summer the heat is excessive. The soil is very fertile where it is overflowed by the Nile, producing wheat, rice, cotton, barley, and sugar-cane in great abundance. Great efforts have lately been made by the Pacha to improve agriculture and manufactures, but hitherto without much success.

The country is governed by a hereditary Pacha or Khedive, nominally tributary to Turkey. The inhabitants are composed of native Egyptians (called Copts), Turks, Arabs, and a few Europeans, and are much oppressed by the rulers. The prevailing religion is the Mohammedan.

The Isthmus of Suez, connecting Egypt with Asia, is on the great overland route between Britain and India. It is a sandy tract about 60 miles wide, with several depressions, forming shallow lakes of brackish water. French engineers

Islands lie between them and France? How is Algiers situated? Tunis? Tripoli? What towns are in the interior? What large river gives a name to the eastern part of Northern Africa? Through what countries does it flow? Where does it rise? Where does it empty?



have succeeded in constructing a canal to connect the two seas. A railway extends from Alexandria to Cairo, 131 miles, and from Cairo to Suez on the Red Sea, 91 miles.

Egypt is one of the most interesting countries in the world, from its connexion with sacred history, and from its early civilization. Its pyramids, temples, obelisks, and hieroglyphics, which, owing to the extreme dryness of the climate, are admirably preserved, render it a favorite resort of travellers from all parts of the world.

Cairo, (350,000,) the capital, situated on the Nile, about five miles above the head of the Delta, is the largest city in Africa. It is poorly built, but its numerous and elegant mesques give it a very magnificent appearance. Near it are the celebrated pyramids. Alexandria (240,000), on the coast, is an ancient city, originally founded by Alexander the Great, through which all the trade with Europe passes. Near it are Pompey's Pillar and Cleopatra's Needle. Here Euclid taught 320 years before the birth of Christ. Here, also, Abercromby fell in 1801; and at Aboukir, 15 miles to the east, Nelson gained the famous battle of the Nile in 1798. Rosetta and Damietta are considerable towns to the east of Alexandria. Siout, Kenneh, Esneh, and Assouan, in Upper Egypt, are principally trading stations for the caravans. South of Kenneh are the ruins of Thebes, the ancient capital of Egypt, and the temples of Karnac, Luxor, and Denderah. In the oasis of Siwah, 320 miles west of Cairo, are the ruins of the temple of Jupiter Ammon.

What is the area of Egypt? Population? Size? Capital? How is Egypt bounded? Point out its boundaries on the map. What is said of the Nile? Describe the climate. Soil and products. What has been done by the Pacha? What is said of the government?

Of the people? Of the religion? Describe the Isthmus of Suez. How is it traversed? For what is Egypt interesting? Describe the chief cities and places. Point them out on the map, and describe their position.

### NUBIA, OR EGYPTIAN SOUDAN.

Area, 250,000 square miles; population, about 400,000; less than the provinces of Quebec and New Brunswick.

NUBIA lies to the south of Egypt, between it and Abyssinia, and extends from the Great Desert to the Red Sea.

The northern part resembles Egypt, being very dry, with only a narrow strip on each side of the Nile fit for cultivation. In the south, where the tropical rains fall, it is more fertile, and wild animals abound. It was conquered by Egypt in 1820-22, but many of the tribes are still independent.

Khartoum, (64,000,) at the confluence of the two branches of the Nile, is the capital. Sennaar, the former capital, from which the caravan route lies westward through the Desert to Darfour and the east of Lake Chad, was destroyed by the Egyptians. Ipsambul is famous for temples cut out of the solid rock. New Dongola is a considerable town on the Nile, and Massowah is the principal port on the Red Sea. At Souakin, Mohammedan pilgrims usually embark for Mecca.

What is the area of Nubia? Population? Size? Capital? How is Nubia situated? How is it bounded? What is said of the northern part of Nubia? Of the

southern part? To whom does it belong? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their position.

### ABYSSINIA.

Area, about 100,000 square miles; population, 4,500,000; about half the size of the province of Quebec.

ABYSSINIA lies to the south of Nubia, also on the shore of the Red Sea. It is a mountainous country, sloping towards the north. Like Nubia, it is subject to the tropical rains, but from its great elevation it possesses almost every variety of climate and productions.

The Blue Nile rises in the mountains, and takes its name from the color of its mud. The most fertile part of the country is on the shores of Lake Dembea, a large inland lake.

It is divided into a number of petty independent states, the principal of which are—Tigre in the north, Amhara in the centre, and Shoa in the south. The people are an ignorant and savage race, professing a form of Christianity analogous to the Greek, but intermingled with many Jewish rites and many superstitions.

Abyssinia has recently been brought into notice by the British expedition of 1867-68 for the release of a few British subjects imprisoned by King Theodore, at which time Magdala, Theodore's capital, was destroyed, the king himself slain, and the kingdom broken up. Antalo, the old capital, is half-way between Magdala and the coast.

None of the towns contain 10,000 inhabitants. Gondar is the capital of Amhara, Adowa of Tigre, and Ankobar (situated 8000 feet above the sea) of Shoa.

What is the area of Abyssinia? Population? Size? Where is it situated? How is it bounded? Describe its surface. Its climate, &c. Describe the Blue Nile. What is said of Lake Dembea? Point it

out on the map. How is Abyssinia divided? Name the states and chief towns, and describe their positions. What recent event has brought Abyssinia into notice?

### CENTRAL AFRICA.

#### SOUDAN, OR NIGRITIA.

That part of the continent of Africa lying to the south of Sahara, and north of the Gulf of Guinea, is called Soudan, or Nigritia, the country of the blacks. It is composed of a large number of independent states, but little is yet known either of their extent or population, or of the physical features of the country.

The principal states known are—Borgou, Boussa, Yarrifa, and Nyfi, on the Lower Niger; Dambarra and Timbuctoo, on the Upper Niger; Houssa and Bornou, between the Niger and Lake Chad; and Kanem, Beghermeh, Bergou, Darfour, and Kordofan, between Lake Chad and Abyssinia. These states contain many towns of considerable size. The two last named now belong to Egypt.

The Niger is the principal river of the country. It rises to the north of the Kong Mountains, and, after a circuitous course, falls into the Gulf of Guinea. It receives, on the east bank, the Chadda, a large river rising south of Lake Chad. Lake Chad is nearly twice the size of Lake Erie. It is shallow, studded with islands, and receives several rivers. A number of towns of considerable size are situated on its shores.

The countries on the upper part of the Niger, and on the Senegal (a river flowing into the Atlantic, and forming the

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—AFRICA.—What sea is on the north of Egypt? What on the east of Egypt, Nubia, and Abyssinia? How is this sea connected with the Indian Ocean? How is Egypt joined to Asia? What countries of Asia does it adjoin? Name the principal cities on

the Nile in Egypt. In Nubia. What seaport is in Nubia? What city of Arabia is opposite to it? What seaport is in Abyssinia? What lake is in the centre of Africa? What rivers are in the west of Africa? Into what ocean do they flow? What mountains are in the west?



northern boundary of Senegambia,) are luxuriant in vegetation, and densely peopled; wherever there is water the soil is fertile, and the people numerous.

The inhabitants are chiefly negroes, and trade with the Barbary States and countries of the Nile by caravans of camels, which are conducted across the desert by the Arabs. The trade is chiefly in slaves, cotton, grain, indigo, ivory, and gold-dust. *Timbuctoo* is the most important town on the caravan route between Guinea, Senegambia, and Barbary.

South of Nigritia and Abyssinia, under the equator, is a high table-land, or mountain range, containing a lake about as large as Lake Michigan, which has been called *Victoria Nyanza*, and a still larger one, the *Albert Nyanza*, in which lakes the White Nile takes its rise. South of this is another lake, *Tanganyika*, 330 miles long, and from 30 to 40 miles broad. Still farther south are *Lakes Bangweulu, Nyassa* or *Nyinyesi*, and *Shirwa*, none of which have as yet been thoroughly explored.

What part of Africa is called Soudan? How is it composed? Name the principal states. Point them out on the map, and describe their position. Describe the course of the Niger. Trace it on the map. Describe Lake Chad. Where is it situated? Describe the countries watered by the Niger

and Senegal. Describe the inhabitants. The manner of trading. Products. What is the most important town on the caravan route? Describe the country south of Nigritia and Abyssinia. The mountains and lakes. Point them out on the map, and describe their position. What interest attaches to them?

## WESTERN AFRICA.

### SENEGAMBIA.

SENEGAMBIA comprises the country watered by the *Senegal, Gambia*, and *Rio Grande*, which flow westward from the Kong Mountains.

The climate is hot, and very unhealthy for Europeans. The Harmattan, a scorching sandy wind, blows at intervals from the Desert. The soil is fertile, and on the banks of the rivers vegetation is rank and luxuriant. Palms, baobab or monkey bread-fruit, caoutchouc trees, and other tropical trees and plants, abound. The Senegal and Gambia are navigable into the interior.

The British possess *Bathurst*, and other forts on the Gambia; the French, *Goree*, with *St Louis* and other forts on the Senegal; and the Portuguese, *Bissao*, and other forts near the mouth of the Rio Grande.

How is Senegambia situated? Trace the courses of the principal rivers. Describe the climate. Soil

and products. The rivers. What possessions are held by European countries, and where?

### UPPER GUINEA.

UPPER GUINEA lies to the south-east of Senegambia, between the Kong Mountains and the northern shore of the Gulf of Guinea.

In climate, soil, and productions it resembles Senegambia.

It comprises *Sierra Leone, Liberia, Ashantee, Grain Coast, Ivory Coast, Gold Coast, Slave Coast, Dahomey, Benin*, and *Calabar*. The exports are indigo, ivory, palm oil, and pepper.

*Sierra Leone* is a British settlement, founded in 1787 as a station for the suppression of the slave trade, which was largely

carried on between the native chiefs of Guinea, and the Portuguese and others; but which is now much reduced, owing to the vigilance of the British war vessels. *Freetown* is the capital.

*Liberia* was originally founded by the United States for free negroes and emancipated slaves. It was formed into an independent republic in 1847. *Monrovia* is the capital.

The British possess most of the Gold Coast, and have four settlements, of which *Cape Coast Castle* is the chief.

Where is Upper Guinea situated? Describe its climate, &c. What states does it comprise? Describe

Sierra Leone. Liberia. Point out their capitals on the map. What possessions are held by the British?

## LOWER GUINEA.

LOWER GUINEA extends from the Bight of Biafra to more than 1000 miles south of the equator.

It comprises *Biafra, Loango, Congo, Angola*, and *Benguela*. The last two countries belong to Portugal. The slave trade is carried on along the coast, but not nearly to the same extent as formerly. The country is well watered, and resembles Upper Guinea in climate and production. The *Cameroon Mountains* are immediately north of the equator, on the shores of the Bight of Biafra, and rise to the height of 13,000 feet above the sea. Wild animals, such as the lion, leopard, elephant, and hippopotamus, abound; as well as the gorilla, monkeys, and numerous birds of brilliant plumage.

Where is Lower Guinea situated? What countries does it comprise? Which belong to Portugal? What is said of the slave trade? Of the

country? Describe the Cameroon Mountains. Trace them on the map. What is said of the animals of the country?

## SOUTHERN AFRICA.

SOUTHERN AFRICA comprises the British possessions of *Cape Colony*, including *British Caffraria* and *Natal*; the *Trans Vaal* and *Orange Republics*; *Caffraria* and the countries of the *Hottentots, Bechuanas*, and *Namaquas*.

In the south and east it is mountainous, and in the north and west are vast level plateaux, almost destitute of water. In these plateaux the rivers do not reach the sea during the dry season. Three parallel ranges of mountains extend in a north-easterly direction, rising one above the other from the south upwards; the first being from 20 to 60 miles from the coast. The most northerly is that of the *Nieuweld Mountains*, whose summits are generally covered with snow. Mount Compass rises to the height of over 10,000 feet. The *Orange*, or *Garipe*, is the principal river, rising in the *Drakenberg* Mountains west of Natal, and flowing through level plains into the Atlantic 450 miles from the Cape of Good Hope. It receives a number of small tributary streams.

What countries are comprised in Southern Africa? Point them out on the map. Describe the surface. The mountains. Name the principal chain. What is their height? Trace them on the map. Describe the principal river. Trace its course on the map.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—AFRICA.—What states are on the west coast of Africa? What is the most westerly point of Senegambia called? How is Sierra Leone situated? Liberia? Into what gulf does the Niger flow? What island is opposite its mouth? In what direction is St

Helena from Cape Verde? From the Cape of Good Hope? What state occupies the most southern part of Africa? What British colonies are situated to the north-east of it? What river forms its northern boundary? How is Cape Town situated? Grahamstown? Port Natal?

## BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

Area, 230,000 square miles; population, 1,070,000; larger than Quebec.

The BRITISH POSSESSIONS form the southern extremity of the African continent, and extend about 900 miles from east to west, and from 100 to 400 miles in breadth.

The country was originally colonized by the Dutch, but since 1806 has been in the possession of the British. About one-half of the population are Europeans, or their descendants; consisting of British settlers and Dutch boers or farmers. The remainder are Hottentots, the most degraded race on the continent; and in the east, Caffres.

The climate is dry, but not unhealthy, and European grains and fruits have been successfully introduced. Wine, wool, and hides are exported.

*Cape Colony* comprises an area of over 200,000 square miles, or nearly as large as Quebec, and has a population of about 718,000.

*Cape Town*, (30,000,) on the south-west shore of Table Bay, is the capital and seat of the colonial Parliament. Table Mountain, 3580 feet high, rises immediately south of the town, and is so called from its flat summit. Vines are extensively cultivated on its slopes. The only other town of importance is *Graham's Town*, 500 miles to the east of Cape Town.

*Natal* was formed into a colony in 1845. It lies to the north of Caffraria. Coal and iron are abundant, and cotton, indigo, and sugar are easily cultivated. The population is about 280,000.

*Port Natal* is the seaport, and *Pietermaritzburg*, 50 miles inland, the capital.

*British Caffraria* was formerly a separate colony, but was formed into a district of Cape Colony in 1855. It is separated by the Great Kei River from native Caffraria. The Caffres are a fierce and restless people, and are often at war with the British.

To the north of Cape Colony are the Dutch republics, *Transvaal* and *Orange River*. These are peopled chiefly by Dutch boers or farmers, who have formed them into independent republics. The country is chiefly a level plateau, 5000 feet high.

Between the Dutch republics and the Atlantic is the country of the Bechuanas and Namaquas, an inoffensive, pastoral people.

What is the area of the British possessions? Population? Size? How are they situated? What is said of the country? Of the people? Of the climate and productions? Describe Cape Colony. How is it bounded? Describe its chief towns. Point them out on the map. Describe Natal and its chief towns. How is it bounded? Describe British Caffraria. Describe the Dutch republics. Point them out on the map. What countries are to the west of them?

## EASTERN AFRICA.

The countries on the eastern coast of Africa are still very little known, although somewhat opened up by recent enterprise.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—AFRICA.—What ocean washes the eastern shores of Africa? What large river flows into it? What large lakes are in the interior? What great river flows from them? What is the most easterly point of Africa called? What large island is to the east

Add or Somali, between the Strait of Eabelmandeb and Cape Guardafui, is celebrated for its myrrh and odoriferous spices, which are exported through Arabia. *Ajan* is barren and desolate along the coast, but fertile in the interior. *Zanguebar* or *Zanzibar* is low and marshy, and very unhealthy towards the sea. To the west of it are the ranges of mountains which enclose the table-lands of Central Africa, with the peaks of *Kilimandjaro* and *Kenia*, rising, it is said, 20,000 feet high. The Sultan of Zanzibar claims sovereignty over the countries as far south as Cape Delgado. From there to Cape Delagoa, including *Mozambique* and *Sofala*, the Portuguese hold authority. They formerly possessed the whole eastern coast, but have been gradually driven away. Their principal ports are *Sena* and *Tete*, on the Zambezi river.

What is said of the countries on the eastern coast of Africa? Describe the principal mountains. Point them out on the map. What is said of *Ajan*, *Zanguebar*, *Zanzibar*? What part of the country belongs to the Portuguese? What are their ports? Point them out on the map.

## ISLANDS OF AFRICA.

## MADAGASCAR.

Area, 220,000 square miles; population, 4,000,000; rather larger than the province of Quebec.

MADAGASCAR is the largest of the African Islands, and is separated from the East coast of Africa by the Mozambique Channel. Its Northern and Southern points are called *Capes Amber* and *St Mary*.

Lofty mountains traverse it from north to south, approaching nearest to the eastern shore. The climate is hot, and the soil fertile, producing rice and sugar abundantly. Iron is found in the mountains. The government is despotic. Converts to Christianity were formerly greatly persecuted, but are favoured by the present monarch. *Tananarivo*, the capital, is situated on a lofty tableland, near the centre of the island. *Tamatave*, on the east coast, is the principal seaport.

## BRITISH ISLANDS.

*Ascension*, a small island in the Atlantic, frequented by ships as a place of refreshment. *St Helena*, 800 miles south-east of Ascension, is famous as the place of exile of the Emperor Napoleon Bonaparte, where he died in 1821. *Mauritius*, (318,000,) a considerable island, formerly called the Isle of France, about one-third the size of Prince Edward Island, 480 miles to the east of Madagascar. It makes large exports of sugar and coffee. Port Louis (65,000) is the capital and seaport. *Rodriguez*, east of Mauritius, the *Seychelles* and *Amirante Islands*, north-east of Madagascar, and the *Chagres* group, farther east, are of little importance, and are dependencies of Mauritius.

## FRENCH ISLANDS.

*Reunion*, or *Bourbon*, (172,000,) rather larger than Mauritius.

What is said of the islands of Africa? How is it separated from Africa? What islands lie to the east of it? What islands lie to the north-east of it? What islands lie to the north-west of Africa? How is Socotra situated? Ascension? Cape Verde Islands? What celebrated gulfs north of Tripoli?

thus, lies 90 miles south-west of it. It is of volcanic formation, and contains one active volcano in the south. It produces coffee and sugar largely. *Mount Piton des Neiges* is 10,000 feet high. France also possesses some small islands in the *Comoro* group, in the north of the Mozambique Channel, and some on the coast of Madagascar, which are dependencies of Reunion.

#### PORTUGUESE ISLANDS.

*Madeira*, (115,000,) a beautiful island, rising abruptly from the Atlantic, 360 miles west of Morocco. It consists of a mass of volcanic rocks, the highest summit being about 6000 feet high. It is celebrated for its wines and its salubrious climate. *Funchal* is the chief town. The *Cape Verde Islands*, (85,000,) about 320 miles west of Cape Verde, are also of volcanic formation. A volcano in *Fogo*, one of the islands, is about 9200 feet high. *St Iago* is the principal island. *St Thomas* and *Prince's Islands*, in the Gulf of Guinea, also belong to Portugal.

#### SPANISH ISLANDS.

The *Canaries*, (270,000,) off the north-west coast of Africa, seven in number, contain lofty volcanic mountains. The Peak of Teneriffe rises about 12,200 feet high. Their chief product is wine. *Santa Cruz*, in Teneriffe, is the capital, but *Palma* is the largest town. *Fernando Po* and *Annabon* are small islands in the Gulf of Guinea.

*Socotra*, in the Indian Ocean, about 120 miles east of Cape Guardafui, is a large island belonging to Oman in Arabia, and producing the finest aloes.

What is the size of Madagascar? Population? How is it situated? Describe it. Describe the climate. Soil and products. Minerals. Government. What is said of converts to Christianity? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map.

Describe Ascension. St Helena. Mauritius. Where are they situated? What other islands belong

to Britain? Describe their position.

Describe the islands belonging to France. Where are they situated?

Describe the Portuguese islands.

Where are they situated?

Describe the Spanish islands.

Where are they situated?

Describe Socotra. How is it situated?

## OCEANIA.

Area, 4,500,000 square miles, or one-twelfth part of the land surface of the globe; population, about 30,000,000.

OCEANIA is the name usually given to a fifth great division of the globe. It includes the vast number of islands lying to the south-east of Asia, and those in the Pacific Ocean. They are generally small, but very numerous, and comprise an area one-fifth larger than the whole of Europe. These islands are divided into *Malaysia*, or the East Indian Archipelago, *Australasia*, and *Polynesia*.

What is the extent of Oceania? In Oceania? Describe the islands. Population? What is comprised? How are they divided?

#### MALAYSIA.

MALAYSIA, or the East Indian Archipelago, comprises the numerous islands lying to the south-east of Asia. The principal are—*Sumatra*, *Java*, *Borneo*, *Celebes*, the *Philippine Islands*, the *Moluccas*, or *Spice Islands*, *Flores*, *Timor*, &c.

These islands are volcanic in their formation, and are all within the torrid zone. They are within the range of the monsoons; and, owing to the sea breezes, the climate is not so hot as on the adjacent continent. The soil is rich and fertile, and large quantities of spices, sugar, coffee, and other tropical productions are exported.

They are peopled chiefly by Malays—an active, but fierce and treacherous race, much addicted to piracy. The natives of some of the islands are negroes, a savage and very degraded race.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—ASIA.—What division of the world are the Islands of the Malay Archipelago nearest to? What sea separates them from the mainland? How is Sumatra separated from the mainland? Which is the largest island? Which are the most northerly? What

The whole population is estimated at 26,000,000. Most of the islands belong to European nations. The Dutch possess *Java*, with portions of *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, and *Celebes*, besides a number of the smaller islands. The Spaniards possess the greater part of the *Philippines*. The British have possessed the small island of *Labuan*, off the coast of *Borneo*, since 1846. The Dutch possessions were captured by the British in the beginning of this century, but were restored at the peace of 1814.

*Sumatra* is a long narrow island, upwards of 1000 miles in length, lying to the south-west and south of the Malay Peninsula, from which it is separated by the Strait of Malacca. It is about the size of Quebec, and is directly under the equator. It is traversed by chains of lofty mountains, some of their summits rising nearly 14,000 feet in height. Most of the surface is covered with dense forests, affording a retreat to numerous wild animals. Between the mountain ranges are large and fertile plains, producing coffee, pepper, rice, and camphor, which are largely exported. The Dutch possess all that part of the island lying south of the equator; the remainder is occupied by native states. The principal Dutch towns are *Palembang*, *Padang*, and the seaport of *Bencoolen*. The islands of *Banca* and *Billiton*, off the east coast, belong to the Dutch, and contain valuable tin mines.

*Java* lies to the south-east of *Sumatra*, from which it is separated by the Strait of Sunda. It is about one and a half times the size of Newfoundland, and is the most populous and fertile of the Malaysian Islands. It is traversed by a lofty chain of volcanic mountains, and has numerous fine harbors

island lies to the south of Sumatra? To the east of Borneo? What islands between Java and Australia? What sea is between Celebes and the Philippines? What ocean is on the west of the Archipelago? What ocean on the east? What large city is on the Island of Luzon?



and bays. Large quantities of coffee, rice, sugar, and cinnamon are exported; and in the interior are extensive forests of teak. The population is about 17,000,000, consisting chiefly of Malays. It belongs to the Dutch, whose settlements are mostly on the north coast. The chief town is *Batavia*, (50,000,) the capital of the Dutch East India possessions.

The smaller islands lying to the east of Java, as *Bali*, *Lombok*, *Sumbawa*, (with a remarkable active volcano,) *Sandalwood*, *Floris*, *Timor*, &c., belong to the Dutch, with the exception of a small settlement in Timor belonging to the Portuguese.

*Borneo* is the largest island in the world, with the exception of Australia, and is about twice the size of Ontario. It is separated from Java by the *Java Sea*, from Celebes by the *Strait of Macassar*, and lies directly under the equator. The heat on the coast is moderated by the sea breezes, and the soil is fertile; but a great part of the island is covered with dense forests. The interior is but little known, but is said to be mountainous. It possesses several large navigable rivers. The western and southern, with part of the eastern coast, belongs to the Dutch. The district of *Sarawak*, in the north-west, was ruled from 1841 to 1858 by Sir James Brooke, a British subject, as rajah, appointed by the Sultan of Borneo. There are valuable mines of diamonds, gold, tin, iron, copper, lead, and coal in the island. The population is variously estimated at from 2,000,000 to 5,000,000, consisting of Malays, Chinese, and Europeans on the coast, and Dyaks, the native race, in the interior. *Borneo*, (22,000,) on the north-west coast, is the capital, and carries on considerable trade with Singapore, China, and the Philippine Islands.

*Labuan Island*, belonging to Britain, is at the mouth of the river on which the town of Borneo is situated.

*Celebes* lies to the east of Borneo, from which it is separated by the Strait of Macassar, and between it and the Philippine Islands is the Sea of Celebes. It is so deeply indented by bays as to form four long peninsulas. It is rather larger than Newfoundland. The surface is hilly, and the soil fertile, yielding rice, sugar, and sago. It also supplies trypan or sea-slugs, and edible birds' nests, considered great delicacies by the Chinese. The south-western part of the island is held by the Dutch, including the settlement of Macassar, with a town of the same name.

The *Philippine Islands* lie to the north-east of Borneo. They are estimated at about 1200 in number, and are traversed by a chain of mountains. The climate is hot, but moist, and the soil fertile. Violent hurricanes and earthquakes often devastate them. The chief exports are rice, sugar, tobacco, and Manila hemp. They were taken possession of by the Spaniards in 1565, and still form one of the most important of the Spanish colonies. The largest island is *Lucón*, with *Manilla*, (230,000,) the capital. The other islands of importance are—*Mindoro*, *Palawan*, *Mindanao*, *Samar*, &c.

The *Moluccas*, or Spice Islands, lie to the north-east of Celebes, and are famous for their spices, nutmegs, cloves, &c. The principal are *Gilolo*, *Amboyna*, *Ceram*, *Booroo*, and the *Banda Islands*. They belong chiefly to the Dutch. Still farther south are some smaller islands of little importance.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—AUSTRALIA.—How is Australia separated from New Guinea? From Tasmania? What sea is on the north-east? What ocean on the east? What ocean on the west? What large Gulf on the north? What large river flows into the ocean on the south?

What islands are comprised to Malaysia? How are they situated? Point them out on the map. Describe the islands. Climate. Soil and products. People. To whom do they belong? What is said of the Dutch possessions?

Describe Sumatra. How is it situated? Describe its size. Surface. Products. To whom does it belong? Point out the chief towns on the map.

How is Java situated? Describe its size. Surface. Products. People. To whom does it belong? What is the chief town?

What islands lie to the east of Java? To whom do they belong?

Describe Borneo. How is it situated? Describe the climate. Soil.

Surface. What possessions are held by the Dutch? What is said of the district of Sarawak? Of the mines? Of the people? Describe the chief towns. What island belongs to Britain?

How is Celebes situated? What is its form and size? Describe its surface. Soil and products. What possession is held by the Dutch?

How are the Philippine Islands situated? Describe them. The climate. Exports. To whom do they belong? Name the principal.

How are the Moluccas situated? For what are they famous? Name the principal. To whom do they belong? What other islands are there?

## AUSTRALASIA.

AUSTRALASIA comprises the large islands of *Australia*, *Tasmania*, or Van Diemen's Land, *New Zealand*, and *New Guinea*, with a large number of smaller islands lying to the east of New Guinea and Australia.

What islands are comprised in Australasia? Point them out on the map, (the World.)

## AUSTRALIA.

Area, 3,000,000 square miles; population, 1,500,000; about the same size as the Dominion of Canada.

AUSTRALIA is the largest island in the world, being about four-fifths the size of Europe. It belongs to Britain, and is divided into five colonies—*Victoria*, *New South Wales*, *Queensland*, *South Australia*, and *Western Australia*, besides North Australia, which is not yet settled.

The surface consists chiefly of vast level plains, covered with grass or thickly wooded, and arid sandy deserts; the latter, however, have been found, by the dear-bought discoveries of Burke and Wills in 1860, to be less numerous and extensive than was formerly supposed. There are several detached chains of mountains near the coast. The principal is in the south-east, where the *Australian Alps* extend northwards from Bass Strait, at about 40 miles from the shore. Some of the peaks, as *Mounts Hotham* and *Kosciusko*, rise about 7300 feet high, and are covered with snow for a great part of the year. Farther north the chain continues, under the name of the *Blue Mountains* and *Liverpool Range*. In Western Australia, near the coast, are ranges of low mountains, extending inland about 300 miles, and forming an elevated table-land. The highest summit is about 5000 feet high. Other small chains occur in South Australia.

Australia, considering its great extent, possesses fewer navigable rivers than any other part of the world. The principal and only river of any size is the *Murray River*, rising in the Australian Alps, and flowing west into Encounter Bay. It is about 1100 miles long, and is navigable for a considerable distance. It receives, on the north bank, the *Darling*, and the *Murrumbidgee*, with its affluent the *Lachlan*. On the eastern coast are numerous small rivers, rising in the mountains and

In what zone is the northern part of Australia? In what zone is the southern part? What large islands lie to the south-east? What islands lie to the north-west? What colonies are in the east of Australia? In the south? In the west? Between what colonies is Bass Straits?



# AUSTRALIA & NEW ZEALAND

English Miles  
0 100 200 300 400 500

120 130 140 150 160 170 180  
10 20 30 40 50  
100 200 300 400 500  
J. Bartholomew, Edin.





flowing east; but they are naturally small, and of little importance, owing to the proximity of the mountains to the coast. In South Australia are several large lakes—*Torrens*, *Gairdner*, *Gregory*, *Eyre*, and *Amadeus*.

Australia is very compact in form, the only great indentations being the *Gulf of Carpentaria*, on the north, and almost opposite, on the south, the *Great Australian Bight*. Besides these are—on the east, *Hervey Bay*, opposite Great Sandy Island, *Moreton Bay*, and *Port Jackson*; on the south, *Port Phillip*, *Encounter Bay*, and *St Vincent and Spencer Gulfs*; on the west, *Geographe and Shark Bays*, and *Cambridge Gulf*; and on the north, *Gulf of Van Diemen*, opposite Melville Island, and *Melville and Castlereagh Bays*.

Along the north-eastern coast, at a distance of about 40 miles from the shore, the *Great Barrier Reef*, a submarine wall of coral, extends for a distance of 1200 miles. Australia is separated from New Guinea by *Torres Strait*, and from Tasmania by *Bass Strait*.

The principal capes are—*York*, *Howe*, *Wilson*, *Leeuwin*, and *Steep Point*. *Cape York Peninsula* forms the eastern side of the Gulf of Carpentaria.

The principal islands are—*Melville and Bathurst*, in the north-west; *Groote Eiland*, in the Gulf of Carpentaria; *Great Sandy Island*, in the west; *King Island*, in Bass Straits; and *Kangaroo Island*, near St Vincent Gulf.

The climate of Australia is various. The northern part of the island is within the tropics, and is subject to the tropical rains; while the southern part, in the temperate zone, is very dry and warm, but healthy. The seasons are exactly opposite to those in North America—midsummer being in December, and midwinter in June. Almost all the European fruits and grains grow in abundance; but the greater part of the country is better adapted for pasturage. Vast herds of sheep are reared, and wool forms one of the great staple exports of the country. Australia also abounds in minerals, as iron, coal, copper, lead, and tin; but the most important of all are the extremely rich gold mines or diggings, in Victoria and New South Wales. They were only discovered in 1851, and have since surpassed the richest previously known in the world.

The native animals and vegetation are altogether different from those of any other part of the world. Gum trees and acacias are the principal trees, and yield valuable timber; and among the plants there is scarcely one useful for food. The animals are peculiar, being nearly all marsupial, or provided with pouches, in which to carry their young, as the kangaroo and the opossum. The emu, or moa, a large bird like an ostrich, and other remarkable birds peculiar to Australia, are now rapidly becoming extinct.

The native population belong to the Papuan or Austral-negro race. They are very degraded, are nearly black, short in stature, and repulsive in appearance. They live on roots, shell-fish, and other similar substances. They have also been in the habit of attacking the "runs" or pasturages of the colonists, and have thus come into conflict with them; but are otherwise inoffensive. They are now rapidly disappearing.

Australia, formerly called New Holland, was discovered by the Spaniards and Dutch in 1606. The first British settlement

was made at Sydney in 1788, and was originally a penal settlement. Since then all the island has belonged to Britain; and especially since the discovery of the gold-fields it has advanced very rapidly in population, wealth, and commerce. The imports now amount to about 160,000,000 dols., and exports to 180,000,000 yearly.

The government of each of the colonies is the same as in the provinces of the Dominion of Canada, and consists of a governor and executive council, with a legislative council and assembly elected by the people. The governor of New South Wales takes the precedence.

NEW SOUTH WALES (519,000) is the oldest colony, having been founded in 1787. It is traversed on the east by the Blue Mountains and Liverpool Range. Most of the largest rivers rise in these mountains; and around their sources, on the west side of the mountains, are the valuable gold-fields.

*Sydney* (134,000), on Port Jackson, is the capital. It exports large quantities of gold and wool, and was the first British settlement in Australia. Five miles to the south is *Botany Bay*, formerly a penal settlement. *Bathurst* and *Goulburn* are centres of the mining districts. *Newcastle*, on the Hunter River, is a seaport.

VICTORIA (730,000), founded in 1836, occupies the south-eastern part of the island, and is traversed on the east by the Australian Alps, and some small ranges of hills on the west. The remainder is level, and well adapted for pasturage. It possesses also rich gold-fields.

*Melbourne* (190,000), on the Bay of Port Phillip, at the mouth of the Yarra River, is the capital. It was only founded in 1837, has risen rapidly, and now has very extensive commerce. *Geelong* (25,000) is also on Port Phillip, 45 miles from Melbourne. *Ballarat* and *Castlemaine* are considerable towns in the mining districts.

QUEENSLAND (120,000) is a large colony to the north of New South Wales, but is yet thinly peopled. It was formerly the Moreton Bay district of New South Wales, but was made a separate colony in 1859.

*Brisbane* (20,000), the capital, is at the mouth of the Brisbane River, flowing into Moreton Bay.

SOUTH AUSTRALIA (197,000) is an important agricultural country, and possesses very valuable copper-mines. A range of hills extends northwards along the eastern shore of St Vincent Gulf, and several smaller detached ranges occur in the south. It contains also several large lakes, *Torrens*, *Gairdner*, *Gregory*, and *Amadeus*. Grain is exported to the neighboring colonies, besides large quantities of copper and wool to Europe.

*Adelaide* (77,000), the capital, is near the eastern shore of St Vincent Gulf. The chief copper-mines are the *Burra Burra*, 35 miles north-east of the Gulf of St Vincent, and *Kapunda*, 40 miles to the north-west.

WESTERN AUSTRALIA is the largest colony in the island, but is yet unexplored, except along the coast, and contains only about 25,000 inhabitants. *Perth*, the capital, is on the Swan River, on the west coast.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—AUSTRALIA, &c.—How is New South Wales bounded? What river separates it from Victoria? What rivers flow through it? How is Sydney situated? How is Victoria bounded? How is Melbourne situated? In what direction from Melbourne is

Sydney? What part of the island does Queensland occupy? How is Brisbane situated? In what direction from it is Sydney? What colonies does South Australia adjoin on the east? In what direction from Melbourne? How is Hobart Town situated?

What is the area of Australia? Population? Size? Describe Australia. To whom does it belong? How is it divided? Point out the divisions on the map. Describe the surface. The principal mountains. Trace them on the map. What is said of the rivers of Australia? Describe the principal. Trace its course on the map. What lakes are in Australia? Point them out on the map. Describe the outline of Australia. Name the principal bays, &c. Point them out on the map. What is on the north-western coast? Name the principal straits. Point them out on the map. Name the principal capes. Point them out on the map. Name the principal islands. Point them out on the map. Describe the climate of Australia. The seasons. The soil and products. The minerals. What is said of the gold mines? Describe

the native vegetation. The animals. The people. What historical account of Australia is given? What is said of the progress of the country? Describe the government.

Describe New South Wales. How is it situated? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map and describe their positions.

Describe Victoria. How is it situated? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their positions.

Describe Queensland. How is it situated? Describe the chief town, and point it out on the map.

Describe South Australia. How is it situated? Describe the chief towns. Point them out on the map, and describe their positions.

Describe Western Australia. How is it situated? Describe the capital, and point it out on the map.

### TASMANIA.

TASMANIA, or VAN DIEMAN'S LAND (103,000), is an island lying to the south-east of Australia, from which it is separated by Bass Strait. It is nearly as large as New Brunswick. The surface is hilly, and the coast indented with fine bays and harbors. The climate is mild and healthy, and the soil fruitful.

*Hobart Town* (25,000), the capital, is on the River Derwent, flowing into Storm Bay, on the south-east of the island. It is beautifully situated, being surrounded by hills.

*Launceston* is on the north side of the island, on the River Tamar, which flows into Bass Strait.

How is Tasmania situated? the chief towns, and point them out on the map. What is its size? Describe the surface. Climate, &c. Describe

### NEW ZEALAND.

NEW ZEALAND consists of two large islands and several smaller ones, lying about 1100 miles south-east of Australia. The larger islands are called *North Island* or *New Ulster*, and *South Island* or *New Munster*, and are separated by Cook's Strait. *Steward Island* is small, and is separated from South Island by Foveaux Strait. The area is about the same as that of Great Britain and Ireland. Along the west coast of both of the large islands extends an elevated chain of mountains, many of their peaks covered with perpetual snow. *Mount Egmont*, in North Island, is nearly 9000 feet high, and other peaks rise still higher. There are a number of small rivers, some of them navigable. The climate is mild and healthy, and the soil fertile, producing most of the grains and fruits of Southern Europe. There is scarcely any native vegetation, and there are very few animals. The taro, sweet potato, and flax are cultivated, and sheep are extensively reared for their wool.

The population is about 256,000, of which 55,000 are natives. These are called Maories, and are of the Malay race—a tall, well-formed, intelligent race, brave and determined in war, in which they are often engaged with the British colonists.

New Zealand is divided into nine provinces. In North Island are *Auckland*, with a capital of the same name; *Taran-*

*naki*, with *New Plymouth*, the capital; *Hawke's Bay*, capital, *Napier*; and *Wellington*, with a capital of the same name. In South Island are *Marlborough*, with *Blenheim* and *Pictou*; *Nelson*, with *Nelson*, the chief place; *Canterbury* with *Christchurch*; *Otago*, with *Dunedin*, near which are valuable gold-fields; *Riverton* and *Invercargill*; and *Westland*.

Norfolk Island, to the north of New Zealand, was formerly a penal settlement, but now belongs to the Pitcairn Islanders.

*Chatham*, *Antipodes* (so called from being the land most nearly opposite to Great Britain in the southern hemisphere), *Auckland*, and other islands to the south-east of New Zealand, are stations for the South-Sea whale and seal fishery.

Of what does New Zealand consist? Name the provinces and their capitals. Point them out on the map, and describe where they are situated. Describe Norfolk Island. What other islands are mentioned? Where are they situated? For what are they useful? How is New Zealand divided?

### PAPUA, OR NEW GUINEA.

PAPUA, or NEW GUINEA, is a large island, about half the size of Canada, situated to the north of Australia, from which it is separated by Torres Strait. It lies directly under the equator.

On some parts of the coast it is mountainous, but the interior is still unexplored. It is not possessed by any civilized nation, and is visited only by the Chinese and Malays for trypang and edible birds'-nests. The beautiful bird of paradise is a native of the island.

The numerous groups of islands lying to the east of New Guinea and Australia are but little known. The principal are *Admiralty Islands*, *New Ireland*, *New Britain*, *Louisade Archipelago*, *Solomon Islands*, *Queen Charlotte Islands*, *New Hebrides*, and *New Caledonia*.

The French have possessed New Caledonia since 1854.

Describe New Guinea. Where is it situated? Describe the surface, &c. its productions. What bird is a native of the country? What other islands belong to Australasia? Point them out on the map. Which island do the French possess?

### POLYNESIA.

POLYNESIA is the name given to the vast number of islands scattered over the Pacific Ocean, chiefly within 30° north and south of the equator. The larger islands are volcanic, but most of the smaller ones have been produced by the labors of the coral insect.

The principal groups north of the equator are—the *Ladrone*, or *Marianne*, *Pelew*, *Caroline*, *Marshall*, *Gilbert*, and *Sandwich Islands*. South of the equator are the *Feejee*, *Friendly*, or *Tonga*, *Navigator's* or *Samoa*, *Cook's* or *Harvey*, and *Society Islands*, the *Low Archipelago*, and *Marquesas Islands*.

The coral islands are generally very small, and are raised but a few feet above the level of the ocean. They are often semicircular in shape, with a lagoon of still water between the land and the reefs. Those of volcanic formation are mountainous, covered with luxuriant verdure, and with rich and fertile valleys, as the *Marquesas*, *Society*, and *Sandwich*

EXERCISES ON THE MAP—AUSTRALIA, &c.—How many large islands are comprised in New Zealand? How are North and Middle Island separated? How is Auckland situated? In what direction from New Zealand is Norfolk Island? What island is half-way between Norfolk

Island and Sydney? Where is Foveaux Strait? Where is Wellington? Dunedin? Bay of Plenty? New Plymouth? Three Kings Islands? Mount Egmont? In what direction from New Zealand are the Chatham Islands? New Hebrides?

islands. In *Hawaii*, one of the latter group, there are two volcanic mountains, rising upwards of 13,000 feet in height. Although these islands are nearly all within the torrid zones the climate is delightful and healthy, being tempered by the sea breezes. The soil is remarkable for its fertility, and produces the cocoa-palm, bread-fruit, plantains, bananas, yams, and other tropical trees and fruits.

The natives are chiefly of the Malay race, and are well-made, and active; differing greatly, however, in disposition, being mild and hospitable in some islands, and in others fierce and treacherous. The Feejee Islands, as well as the Papuan Archipelago, are inhabited by the Austral-negro race, who are among the lowest and most degraded inhabitants of the world. In the Feejee Islands they are still addicted to cannibalism.

The *Sandwich* and *Society* Islands are the most important groups in Polynesia, and their inhabitants have made the greatest advances in civilization. The *Sandwich* Islands have a population of over 67,000. They are greatly under the influence of the United States. They are regularly visited by whaling and other vessels, and trade in their own ships with America and China. *Owhyhee*, or *Hawaii*, is the largest island, and it was there that Captain Cook, the discoverer, was killed. *Honolulu*, (7000,) on one of the smaller islands, is the capital.

The largest of the *Society* Islands is *Tahiti*, or *Otaheite*. It contains a population of 10,000, and is memorable as the place where the mutiny of the *Bounty* occurred. *Pitcairn Island*, where the mutineers settled, is south-east of the *Low Archipelago*. The *Society* Islands are now under the control of France.

What is comprised in Polynesia? Describe the islands. Name the principal. Point them out on the map, and state how they are situated. Describe the coral islands. The volcanic islands. What is said of *Hawaii*? Describe the climate. The soil and products. The natives. What is said of the

Feejee Islands and others? Which are the most important groups? Describe the *Sandwich* Islands. Point them out on the map. Name the principal island and the capital. Describe the latter. Describe the principal of the *Society* Islands. Describe *Pitcairn Island*. Point them out on the map.

**EXERCISES ON THE MAP.—THE WORLD.**—In what ocean are the Polynesian Islands situated? In what zone do they lie? Point out the principal groups north of the Equator. South of it? Which is the principal of the *Sandwich* Islands? In what direction from San Fran-

## ANTARCTICA.

This name is given to several extensive tracts of land supposed to form part of a Southern Continent, and a number of islands which of late years have been discovered in the Antarctic Ocean.

The principal tract of land is *South Victoria*, lying to the south of New Zealand; discovered in 1840 by Sir James Ross. It is covered with glaciers and perpetual snow, and has lofty mountains along the coast. Its most striking feature is the great volcano, *Mount Erebus*, 12,400 feet high, the flames of which rise high above its crater, and throw a fearful light over these desolate regions, presenting a grand and awe-inspiring spectacle. Farther east is *Mount Terror*, another volcano, nearly 11,000 feet high. Both are named from the exploring ships, *Erebus* and *Terror*. West of these is the south magnetic pole.

The other principal tracts are *Adelia* and *Salrina Lands*, south of Australia; farther west, *Enderby* and *Kemp Lands*, south of Madagascar; and *Graham Land*, 600 miles south of Cape Horn. Round the coast of *Graham Land* are numerous islands—the *South Shetland*, *South Orkney*, *South Georgian Islands*, and others. Besides these, there is also a large number of small islands lying much farther north, but partaking of the same cold, barren, and desolate character. They are chiefly volcanic in formation. Their shores are frequented by the albatross and vast numbers of penguins; and seals and whales abound in the neighboring seas. The principal are—*Tristan da Cunha*, *Prince Edward*, *Marion*, *Crozet's*, *Kerguelen*, *Amsterdam*, *St Paul's*, and *Macquarie Islands*.

What is comprised under the name Antarctica? Describe the principal tract of land. Point it out on the map, (the World.) What are its most striking features? What is situated in this tract?

Name the other tracts of land. Point them out on the map. Name the principal islands near these tracts of land. Describe them. Point them out on the map, and describe their situations.

cisco are they? In what direction from them is New Zealand? Japan? What is the most southern land called? In what ocean is it situated? Point out two volcanoes in Antarctica. Describe them. In what zone is Antarctica principally situated?







21/10/1911





TORONTO:

JAMES CAMPBELL & SON.